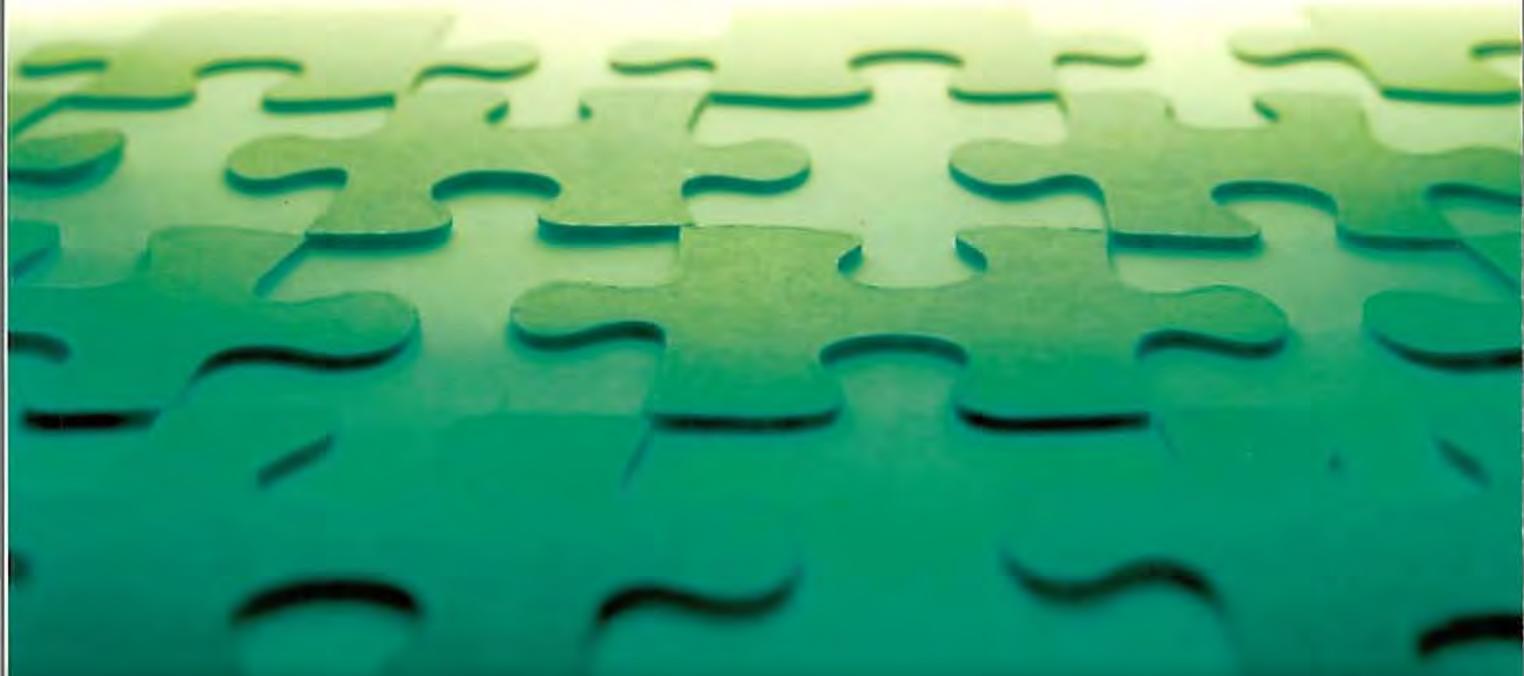


PRACTICAL GRAMMAR

David Riley and John Hughes



vk.com/englishlibrary

Contents

Introduction

page 8

Units

1	am, is, are (to be) <i>I'm from Brazil.</i>	12
2	to be (negative) a/an + occupation <i>She isn't a nurse.</i>	14
3	to be (questions) <i>Are you eighteen?</i>	16
4	am, is, are + adjective a/an or no article <i>They're expensive cars.</i>	18
5	Review of units 1 to 4 Pronunciation: contractions	20
6	Where is/are ...? Prepositions of place (<i>in, on, next to, under</i>) <i>Where are the car keys? They're on the table.</i>	22
7	There is/are ... Prepositions of place (<i>in the corner, in the middle, in front of, behind</i>) <i>There's a table in the corner of the room.</i>	24
8	Is there ...? Prepositions of place (<i>opposite, in front of, between, behind</i>) <i>Is there a cash machine near here? Yes, it's opposite the cinema.</i>	26
9	There is/are + some/any Countable and uncountable nouns <i>There's some milk in the fridge.</i>	28
10	Review of units 6 to 9 Pronunciation: <i>is/are</i>	30
11	have got <i>She's got dark hair.</i>	32
12	Possessive adjectives <i>Have you got your passport?</i>	34
13	this, that, these, those (demonstrative pronouns) The pronoun <i>one</i> <i>Is this your coat?</i>	36
14	Possessive 's and possessive pronouns <i>whose</i> <i>It isn't Karen's mobile. It's mine.</i>	38
15	Review of units 11 to 14 Pronunciation: /s/ or /z/	40
16	Present simple 1 Conjunctions: <i>and/but</i> <i>He works in a hospital and he lives in London.</i>	42
17	Present simple 2 Subject and object pronouns <i>I don't like them.</i>	44
18	Adverbs of frequency <i>I never go to the opera.</i>	46
19	Wh- questions <i>Where do tigers live?</i>	48
20	Review of units 16 to 19 Pronunciation: /s/, /z/ or /ɪz/	50

Contents

21	can (ability) Adverbs of manner <i>I can play the piano.</i>	page 52
22	can (offers and requests) <i>Can I help you? / Can you help me?</i>	54
23	would like + noun (requests and offers) <i>We'd like a table for two.</i>	56
24	Imperative <i>Turn left at the traffic lights. / Print this map.</i>	58
25	Review of units 21 to 24 Pronunciation: strong and weak forms of <i>can</i>	60
26	Comparatives <i>My brother is older than me.</i>	62
27	Superlatives <i>The blue whale is the loudest animal in the world.</i>	64
28	Adverbs <i>They play beautifully.</i>	66
29	Comparative adverbs <i>Pierre starts work earlier than Paolo.</i>	68
30	Review of units 26 to 29 Pronunciation: sentence stress	70
31	Present continuous <i>They're playing chess.</i>	72
32	Present simple and present continuous State verbs <i>I usually walk to work but today I'm taking a bus.</i>	74
33	Present continuous (for future arrangements) <i>We're playing tennis on Saturday afternoon.</i>	76
34	going to <i>I'm going to travel around the USA in August.</i>	78
35	Review of units 31 to 34 Pronunciation: contractions	80
36	was/were <i>I wasn't at home on Saturday.</i>	82
37	There was/were <i>When I was a child, there was a park and a river here.</i>	84
38	could (past ability) <i>When he was at school he couldn't read very well.</i>	86
39	Could ...? and Would you like ...? (polite requests and offers) <i>Could you spell that? / Would you like to leave a message?</i>	88
40	Review of units 36 to 39 Pronunciation: strong and weak forms of <i>was</i>	90

41	Past simple (regular verbs) <i>I studied medicine for six years.</i>	page 92
42	Past simple (irregular verbs) <i>We went to the beach on Saturday.</i>	94
43	did/didn't (negative and questions) <i>They didn't get married. / Did you go to university?</i>	96
44	Past simple questions Object and subject questions <i>Where did you study? / Who organised your accommodation?</i>	98
45	Review of units 41 to 44 Pronunciation: syllables	100
46	must/mustn't <i>You must be home by ten-thirty. / You mustn't be late.</i>	102
47	have to, have got to, don't have to, must and mustn't <i>You have to wash your hands. / You don't have to wear a uniform.</i>	104
48	should/shouldn't <i>You should buy the red dress.</i>	106
49	had to / didn't have to (past obligation) <i>I had to study for a Maths exam.</i>	108
50	Review of units 46 to 49 Pronunciation: n't	110
51	Present perfect <i>Have you cleaned the car?</i>	112
52	Present perfect with just, already and yet <i>She's just passed her driving test. / I've already tidied my room. / Have you talked to Mark yet?</i>	114
53	Present perfect with for and since How long ...? <i>I've had this business for two years.</i>	116
54	Have you ever ...? been and gone <i>Have you ever been to the USA?</i>	118
55	Review of units 51 to 54 Pronunciation: have	120
56	Past continuous <i>Children were going to school.</i>	122
57	Past simple and past continuous while, when and suddenly <i>I was waiting at the train station when I saw my brother.</i>	124
58	Conjunctions and, or, but, before, after, while, when, because and so <i>After we reached Barcelona, we took a boat to Italy.</i>	126
59	used to <i>I used to have long hair.</i>	128
60	Review of units 56 to 59 Pronunciation: /s/ or /z/	130

Contents

61	all, most, some, none	Most of the students are European.	page 132
62	any-, every-, no-, some- / -thing, -where, -one, -body	Did anyone call for me while I was at lunch?	134
63	both, neither and either	Neither of them is happy.	136
64	much, many and a lot	Countable and uncountable nouns We haven't got much rice.	138
65	Review of units 61 to 64	Pronunciation: <i>of</i>	140
66	a/an (indefinite article)	I'm going to be a pop star.	142
67	the (definite article)	The sun is at the centre of our solar system.	144
68	a/an and the	Can I borrow a pen? / The next football match is on the 25th.	146
69	No article	Peruvians are friendly people.	148
70	Review of units 66 to 69	Pronunciation: <i>the</i>	150
71	will (for future and predictions)	There will be cities on the moon.	152
72	will (for offers, promises and requests)	I'll be there in twenty minutes.	154
73	will and going to (for decisions)	What are you going to have? I'm not sure. I think I'll have the fish.	156
74	going to, will and the present continuous		158
75	Review of units 71 to 74	Pronunciation: ' <i>ll</i>	160
76	Prepositions of time (<i>in, on, at</i>)	They're coming on Friday at 8.30 p.m.	162
77	Prepositions of place	The bar is at the top of the stairs.	164
78	Relative clauses 1 (<i>who, which, that</i>)	I like films which make me laugh.	166
79	Relative clauses 2	This is the woman (<i>who</i>) Jack was talking about.	168
80	Review of units 76 to 79	Pronunciation: sentence stress	170

81	If/When + present simple, present simple <i>If a mosquito bites you, it's usually a female.</i>	page 172
82	If/Unless + present simple, imperative <i>If you hear the fire alarm, leave the building.</i>	174
83	If/When + present simple, will <i>If we go this way, we'll get to the campsite.</i>	176
84	If + present simple, modal verb <i>If the bus is late, you should take a taxi.</i>	178
85	Review of units 81 to 84 Pronunciation: intonation	180
86	-ed and -ing adjectives <i>I was surprised. / We have 1,000 exciting new jobs.</i>	182
87	looks, sounds, tastes, smells and feels Sense verb + adjective <i>She looks young. / This tastes delicious.</i>	184
88	Order of adjectives <i>two small, old, English oil paintings</i>	186
89	Adjectives with prepositions <i>I'm good at snowboarding.</i>	188
90	Review of units 86 to 89 Pronunciation: syllables and word stress	190
91	Verb + to-infinitive <i>I've decided to leave my job.</i>	192
92	Verb + -ing / -ing nouns <i>I don't like driving at night. / Driving at night is dangerous.</i>	194
93	Verb + -ing or verb + to-infinitive? <i>I'd like to help old people and children.</i>	196
94	stop + -ing or stop + to-infinitive? <i>She's stopped feeling sick. / We've just stopped to have something to eat.</i>	198
95	Review of units 91 to 94 Pronunciation: intrusive /w/	200
96	Verb + object + to-infinitive <i>Tell Jim to photocopy this report.</i>	202
97	Infinitive of purpose <i>I'm going to Florida to meet some friends.</i>	204
98	The passive: present simple <i>Tea is served by the host.</i>	206
99	The passive: past simple The agent by <i>Cacao beans were used as a form of money.</i>	208
100	Review of units 96 to 99 Pronunciation: past participles	210
Progress tests		212
Appendices 1 Punctuation 2 Spelling rules 3 Irregular verbs 4 Summary of main verb forms		232
Index		238

Introduction

Welcome to *Practical Grammar* Level 1. This is the first in a series of grammar books for students of English. Level 1 introduces grammar to students at beginner to pre-intermediate level. It aims to:

- teach all the key grammar at elementary level.
- improve accuracy with grammar.
- help students use grammar in real-life situations, including conversations.

Organisation of the book

Practical Grammar Level 1 has 100 units, organised into blocks of five units. Each block is made up of four main units about an area of grammar and a fifth review unit. After every ten units, there is a progress test at the back of the book to check understanding. You'll also find extra useful information in the appendices (pages 232–237) and an index (pages 266–270) for quick reference. A key feature of the book is the CDs which you can use to listen to the conversations in the book and improve your pronunciation of grammar items.

Using *Practical Grammar* Level 1

Practical Grammar Level 1 is ideal for use as self study or in the classroom with a teacher. We present basic elementary grammar in the early units and then increase the difficulty in later units. Most students can begin at unit 1 and work through the rest of the units in order. Other students who are already familiar with some English grammar can choose different units and work on a specific area of grammar. (Use the contents or the index to do this.) If you want to use *Practical Grammar* Level 1 as a supplementary study book with your classroom course, you can also select particular units to match the lessons.

Grammar in real contexts

The rules of grammar are important but it's also important to see the grammar being used in a real-life situation. For this reason, each unit introduces the grammar through a short conversation or text. After the presentation of the grammar, there are exercises that practise the new language in authentic contexts with recordings on the CDs to hear the language in use.

Study at home (to the student)

This book helps you understand the basic grammar of English. Here are some ideas for using *Practical Grammar* Level 1:

- Study the grammar regularly. For example, do one unit every day. Read the introductory conversation or text and study the presentation of the grammar. Then complete the exercises and listen to the CDs.
- Complete the review unit and check you understand the grammar with the progress tests (pages 212–231).
- Study with a friend. Do the units together and read some of the conversations aloud.
- Repeat some of the units. If you find some of the grammar in a unit especially difficult, it's a good idea to repeat the unit.

-
- Remember that grammar isn't the only part of English. If you find new words in *Practical Grammar* Level 1, check them in your dictionary and write them down.
 - Use the online component *MyPG*. The activities allow you to continue working with all the grammar in new contexts. There is a gradebook where you can build up a picture of your progress.
-

In the classroom (to the teacher)

Students can use *Practical Grammar* Level 1 for self study but you can also use it in class. It is aimed at students at beginner level, from elementary to pre-intermediate level.

If you are using a course book, *Practical Grammar* Level 1 will be a useful supplementary grammar book. The grammar becomes progressively harder over the 100 units and it reflects the order of the grammar often taught on courses.

Ask students to read the conversation or text at the beginning of the unit. If there is a conversation, you could ask two students to read it aloud to the class. Then read through the presentation of the grammar and deal with any questions the students might have.

As students work through the exercises, monitor their progress and help out with any questions they have. Students could also work in pairs or small groups for some exercises and compare their answers. In some units, the final exercise asks students to personalise the grammar and write their own sentences. Afterwards, ask some students to read theirs aloud or to compare with a partner.

If you have done the first four units of a section in class, you could set the review unit for homework. However, the review unit also includes help with pronunciation, vocabulary and listening linked to the grammar so sometimes you might want to work on these as a class.

The progress tests (pages 212–231) check students' progress after every ten units. You can use these in class to monitor how much students have learnt. If students have particular difficulties with certain parts of the test, you will be able to see if they need to work on any of the units again. Also note that for further practice you can use the online component *MyPG*. This component has a Content Management System, which allows you to set specific exercises to be completed in a set time. When students 'submit' the exercises, their scores appear in the gradebook allowing you to see how each student is progressing.

There are two CDs at the back of the book. They contain all the listening and pronunciation activities. Use them to help students hear the grammar in use and also for revision of the forms.

Overview of Practical Grammar Level 1

The units

Every unit is made up of two pages and has a similar format so it's easy to follow.

Title

The title tells you the main grammar area. Some units also have subtitles to give extra information.

Context

Practical Grammar teaches you how to use grammar in real situations. Each unit starts with a conversation or a short text to show the grammar in context. Read this first.

Presentation

The presentation explains the rules of the grammar and has information on the form, meaning and use of the grammar with example sentences. Use the presentation to help you complete the exercises.

Key vocabulary

When you use grammar, you also need words. Some units give you extra information about useful vocabulary in the unit.

Review units

At the end of every block of four units, there is a review unit.

Grammar

This section gives extra practice of all the grammar in the four units. It's also a good way to check progress.

Pronunciation

It's important to know the rules of grammar but you also need to be able to say the grammatical forms correctly. *Practical Grammar* includes a pronunciation practice section with recordings.

Vocabulary

Practical Grammar teaches you the rules of grammar but it also contains lots of useful vocabulary in the units. The review units have exercises to help you remember the new words.

Listen again

A key feature of *Practical Grammar* is the listening practice. Listening is a great way to learn a new language. Here you listen again to one of the recordings from the four units and become more confident with the grammar in context.

3 to be (questions)



Presentation

Yes/No questions

Am I?	he	British?
Is she/he/it?	she/he/it	eighteen?/married?
Are you/we/they?	you/we/they	

Short answers

I	he/she/it	am	I'm
You	you/we/they	is	isn't
No		No	aren't

Say Yes, I am. Yes, he is... (don't say Yes, I'm. Yes, he's.)



16

Key vocabulary

Telling the time



It's one o'clock. It's quarter past two. It's half past three. It's quarter to four. It's five past five. It's ten to six.

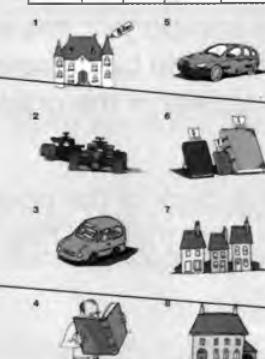
16

5 Review of units 1 to 4

Grammar

- 1 Look at the pictures and write sentences. Use the words in the table.

pronouns	verbs	articles	adjectives	nouns
it They	is are	a an the	big small expensive cheap fast slow	book(s) car(s) house(s)



1 It's an expensive house.

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

- 2 Question or statement? Add question marks (?) or full stops (.)

- 1 Is she English? ?
2 I'm a teacher. .
3 Is it six o'clock? ?
4 They aren't nurses. .
5 Are you a doctor? ?
6 It isn't a small car.
7 We're Russian.
8 Are they expensive?

3 Combine the sentences.

- 1 He's from Russia. He's a doctor.
He's a Russian doctor.
2 She's from Britain. She's a teacher.
She's an engineer. She's from Poland.

- 3 We're engineers. We're from Spain.

- 4 I'm a musician. I'm from Italy.

- 5 They're from Japan. They're students.

- 6 She's an engineer. She's from Poland.

- 7 He's an artist. He's from Brazil.

- 8 They're from the USA. They're nurses.

4 Write questions and answers.

- 1 Madonna – from the USA? = yes
Is Madonna from the USA?
Yes, she is.
2 Tom Cruise – tall? = no

- 3 Bill Gates – rich? = yes

- 4 Julia Roberts – a musician? = no

20

Exercises

1 Complete the questions with **Is** or **Are**.

- | | |
|---------------------|---------------------------|
| 1 Are you a doctor? | 6 Tom and Anna married? |
| 2 he twenty-five? | 7 he Italian? |
| 3 they Brazilian? | 8 they from France? |
| 4 it two o'clock? | 9 Jack and Suzy teachers? |
| 5 he from New York? | 10 it half past four? |

2 Complete the short answers.

- | | |
|---|------------------------------------|
| 1 Is it eight o'clock?
No, it isn't. | 6 Is she from Canada?
Yes. |
| 2 Are you British?
Yes. | 7 Are they students?
No. |
| 3 Is she married?
No. | 8 Is it a quarter to nine?
Yes. |
| 4 Are you eighteen?
No. | 9 Are they married?
Yes. |
| 5 Are you and Rosaria Italian?
Yes. | 10 Is he thirty-four?
No. |

3 Answer for you with short answers.

- | | |
|------------------------|----------------------|
| 1 Are you a student? | 4 Are you American? |
| 2 Are you single? | 5 Is it six o'clock? |
| 3 Are you twenty-five? | 6 Are you Polish? |

4 Write the conversations. Then listen and check.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1 you + Italian? → no; Spanish.
A: Are you Italian?
B: No, I'm not, I'm Spanish. | 6 they + married? → yes
A:
B: |
| 2 he + Japanese? → yes
A: Is he Japanese?
B: Yes, he is. | 7 you and Jack = American? → no; British
A:
B: |
| 3 she + Brazilian? → yes
A:
B: | 8 it + 6:00? → no; 5:30
A:
B: |
| 4 he + Polish? → no; Russian
A:
B: | 9 she + single? → no; married
A:
B: |
| 5 they + doctors? → no; teachers
A:
B: | 10 he + musician? → no; engineer
A:
B: |

17

Exercises

Every unit gives lots of practice with the grammar. Always start with exercise 1 because it helps with learning the form of the grammar. Later exercises help you to understand its meaning.

Listening

A really useful feature in *Practical Grammar* is the recordings. Most units include a listening activity so you can listen to the completed exercise and hear the grammar in a real situation.

Tip

This gives you extra information about the grammar in real situations.

Progress tests

After every ten units, there is a progress test (see pages 212–231).

Appendices

These have more useful information on spelling and punctuation. There are also summaries of the key grammar areas, including verb forms (see pages 232–237).

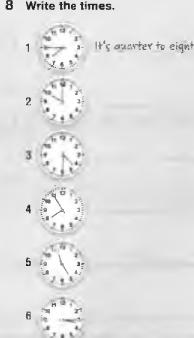
Index

Use the index to find items of grammar quickly and help with terminology (see pages 266–270).

My PG

This online component provides extra practice of all the language covered in the book through a wide range of exercise types.

- 5 the Rolling Stones – American? → no
6 Ferraris – expensive? → yes



5 Write negative sentences. Use contractions.

- 1 Tom Cruise – tall
Tom Cruise isn't tall.
2 Bill Gates – poor
Bill Gates isn't poor.
3 The Rolling Stones – American
The Rolling Stones aren't American.
4 Madonna – from Italy
Madonna isn't from Italy.
5 Ferraris – cheap
Ferraris aren't cheap.
6 Julia Roberts – a musician
Julia Roberts isn't a musician.

Pronunciation: contractions

6 Listen and tick what you hear.

- 1 He is not He isn't ✓
2 I am I'm
3 She is She's
4 They are They're
5 We are not We aren't
6 It is not It isn't
7 You are You're

- 9 Write the opposite adjectives.
- | | |
|-------------|--------|
| 1 tall | short |
| 2 rich | poor |
| 3 old | young |
| 4 big | small |
| 5 fast | slow |
| 6 expensive | cheap |
| 7 married | single |
| 8 hot | cold |

Listen again

10 Listen. Are the sentences true (T) or false (F)?

- 1 Andrea is Polish.
2 Andrea is married.
3 Bruno is thirty.
4 Bruno is married.
5 Marisol is Mexican.
6 Marisol is nineteen.

Vocabulary

7 Match to make six occupations.

- | | | |
|------------|-----|--------|
| 1 art | ent | artist |
| 2 doctor | er | |
| 3 engineer | ian | |
| 4 music | ist | |
| 5 teacher | or | |
| 6 student | eer | |

1 am, is, are (to be)

http://www.friends.net

FRIENDS-NET

Find friend

BACK MORE CONTACT HOME

Hello. I'm Ernesto.
I'm from Brazil.
I'm twenty-three
and I'm single.

Presentation

Affirmative

I	am		I'm	
He She	is	from Brazil. eighteen. married.	He's She's	from Brazil. eighteen. married.
You We They	are		You're We're They're	

TIP Use *I'm*, *he's*, *you're* for speaking.

Key vocabulary Personal details: married, single (= not married)

Exercises

1 Match the sentences in the box to the pictures.

- a She's twenty-five. b He's fifty. c She's two. d They're sixteen. e He's twelve.



1 _____



2 _____



3 _____



4 _____



5 _____

2 Write sentences with the words in the box.

Brazil Egypt Italy Japan Russia the USA



1 I'm from Brazil.



2 _____



3 _____



4 _____



5 _____



6 _____

3 Put the words in order. Use contractions.

- 1 are from Spain they
- 2 are married we
- 3 am I from Russia
- 4 is single he
- 5 are twenty-one you
- 6 am I single
- 7 are from Japan they
- 8 is from she the UK
- 9 are from Poland we
- 10 are China from you

They're from Spain.

4 1.02 Write sentences. Then listen and check.

- 1 Andrea / Poland / 21 + single

Hi. I'm Andrea. I'm from Poland. I'm twenty-one and I'm single.

- 2 Bruno / Germany / 32 + married

- 3 Marisol / Mexico / 18 + single

5 Complete sentences 1–4 for you and write sentences 5–8 for a friend. Use *He* and *She*.

- 1 I'm _____. (name)

- 5 _____ . (name)

- 2 I'm from _____. (country)

- 6 _____ . (country)

- 3 I'm _____. (age)

- 7 _____ . (age)

- 4 I'm _____. (married or single)

- 8 _____ . (married or single)

2 to be (negative)

a/an + occupation



**She isn't Mexican.
She's from Argentina.**

**She isn't thirty-five.
She's thirty.**

**She isn't married. She's single.
She isn't a nurse. She's a doctor.**

Presentation

Negative

I	am not		I'm not	
he she	is not	Mexican. from Mexico. thirty-five. married.	He isn't She isn't	Mexican. from Mexico. thirty-five. married.
you we they	are not		You aren't We aren't They aren't	

TIP These negative forms are also possible:
he's not, we're not ...

a/an + occupation

Use *a/an* (indefinite article) with a person's occupation.

- Use *a* before words that start with a consonant sound: *a doctor, a teacher ...*
- Use *an* before words that start with a vowel sound: *an artist, an engineer ...*
- Don't use *a/an* with plurals.
Say *doctors* (don't say *a-doctors*).

I'm You're He's She's	a doctor. an artist.
We're You're They're	doctors. artists.

TIP Most plurals are formed by adding *-s* to the singular: *doctors, teachers, artists, engineers ...*

See page 233: Spelling rules

Key vocabulary Occupations: artist, doctor, engineer, musician, nurse, student, teacher

Exercises

1 Complete the sentences with *a*, *an* or *Ø* (no article).

- | | |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1 She's <u>a</u> doctor. | 7 She isn't <u> </u> artist. |
| 2 He's <u> </u> artist. | 8 I'm not <u> </u> student. |
| 3 They're <u> </u> engineers. | 9 You aren't <u> </u> teacher. |
| 4 I'm <u> </u> teacher. | 10 He isn't <u> </u> engineer. |
| 5 We're <u> </u> doctors. | 11 They aren't <u> </u> nurses. |
| 6 You're <u> </u> musician. | 12 You aren't <u> </u> artist. |

2 Write negative sentences.

- 1 She's a doctor, not a nurse.
- 2 I'm a student, not a teacher.
- 3 You're an engineer, not an artist.
- 4 They're Polish, not Russian.
- 5 We're musicians, not engineers.
- 6 She's Japanese, not Chinese.
- 7 He's single, not married.
- 8 I'm twenty, not twenty-one.
- 9 She's an artist, not a musician.
- 10 They're from Brazil, not Peru.
- 11 We're teachers, not students.
- 12 She's twenty-eight, not twenty-nine.

She isn't a nurse.

3 Correct the sentences. Use the words in the box.

Australia France India Peru the USA



- 1 The Taj Mahal is in Pakistan.

The Taj Mahal isn't in Pakistan. It's in India.

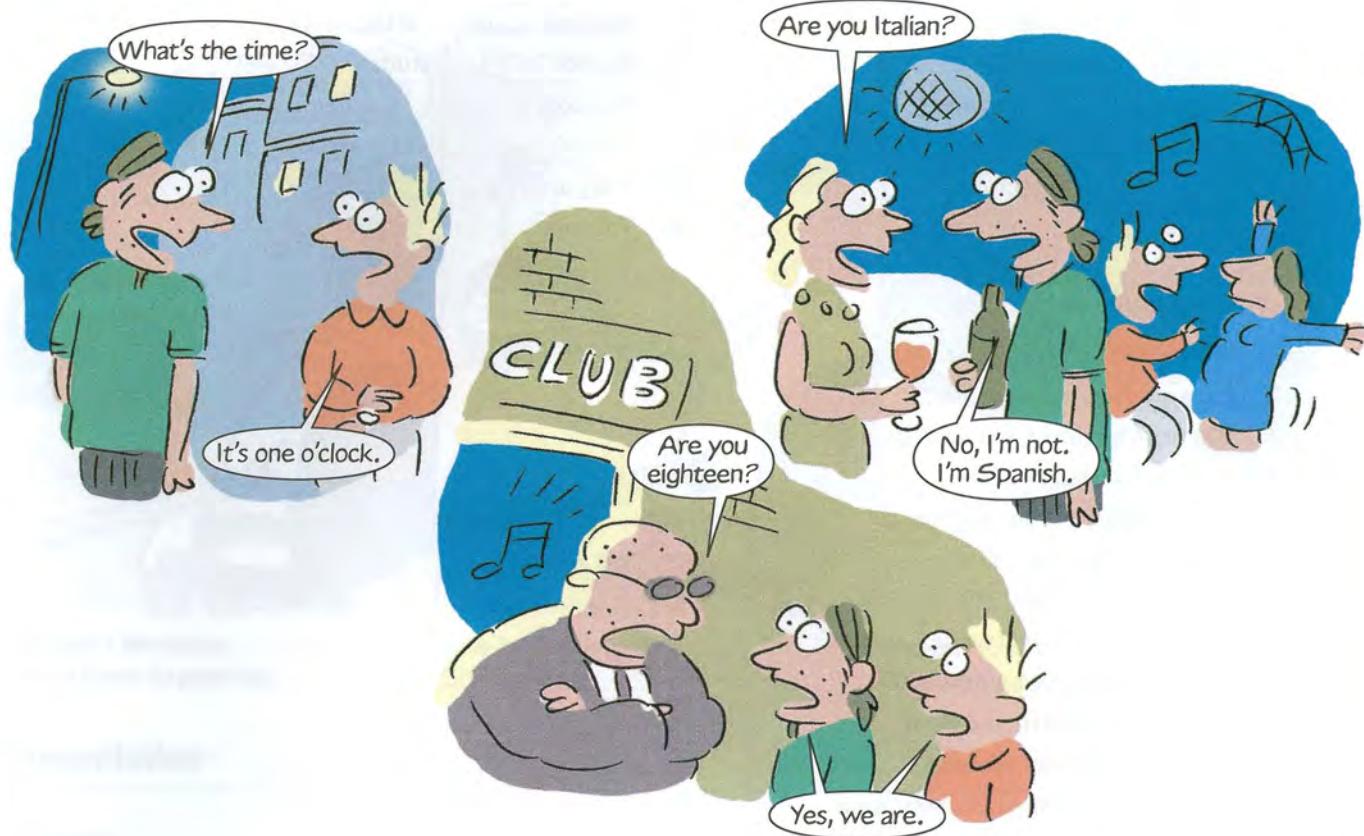
- 2 The Statue of Liberty is in Canada.

- 3 Machu Picchu is in Mexico.

- 4 The Eiffel Tower is in Italy.

- 5 The Sydney Opera House is in the UK.

3 to be (questions)



Presentation

Yes/No questions

Am	I	
Is	he she it	British? eighteen? married?
Are	you we they	

Short answers

Yes,	I	am.	I	'm not.
	he she it	is.	he she it	isn't.
	you we they	are.	you we they	aren't.

Say Yes, I am. Yes, he is ... (don't say Yes, I'm. Yes, he's.)

Key vocabulary

Telling the time:



It's one o'clock.



It's quarter past two.



It's half past three.



It's quarter to four.



It's five past five.



It's ten to six.

TIP it's = it is

Exercises

1 Complete the questions with *Is* or *Are*.

- 1 Are you a doctor?
- 2 Is he twenty-five?
- 3 Are they Brazilian?
- 4 Is it two o'clock?
- 5 Is he from New York?

- 6 Are Tom and Anna married?
- 7 Is he Italian?
- 8 Are they from France?
- 9 Are Jack and Suzy teachers?
- 10 Is it half past four?

2 Complete the short answers.

1 Is it eight o'clock?

No, it isn't.

2 Are you British?

Yes,

3 Is she married?

No,

4 Are you eighteen?

No,

5 Are you and Rosaria Italian?

Yes,

6 Is she from Canada?

Yes,

7 Are they students?

No,

8 Is it quarter to nine?

Yes,

9 Are they married?

Yes,

10 Is he thirty-four?

No,

3 Answer for you with short answers.

1 Are you a student?

.....

2 Are you single?

.....

3 Are you twenty-five?

.....

4 Are you American?

.....

5 Is it six o'clock?

.....

6 Are you Polish?

.....

4 1.03 Write the conversations. Then listen and check.

1 you + Italian? → no: Spanish.

A: Are you Italian?

B: No, I'm not. I'm Spanish.

2 he + Japanese? → yes

A: Is he Japanese?

B: Yes, he is.

3 she + Brazilian? → yes

A:

B:

4 he + Polish? → no: Russian

A:

B:

5 they + doctors? → no: teachers

A:

B:

6 they + married? → yes

A:

B:

7 you and Jack + American? → no: British

A:

B:

8 it + six o'clock? → no: half past five

A:

B:

9 she + single? → no: married

A:

B:

10 he + musician? → no: engineer

A:

B:

4 am, is, are + adjective

a/an or no article



Presentation

Singular

I'm You're She's He's	hungry. young.
It's	expensive. an expensive car.

Plural

We're You're They're	hungry. young. young students.
They're	expensive. expensive cars.

a/an or no article

Use *a/an* (indefinite article) with adjective + singular noun: *It's an expensive car.*

Don't use *a/an* with plural nouns: *They're expensive cars.*

TIP Say *an expensive car*, *a young student* ... (don't say ~~a car expensive~~, ~~a student young~~ ...)
Say *expensive cars*, *young students* ... (don't say ~~expensives cars~~, ~~youngs students~~ ...)

Key vocabulary Adjectives: angry, beautiful, thirsty, hungry, tired, cheap/expensive, slow/fast, happy/unhappy, cold/hot, poor/rich, short/tall, small/big, old/young

Exercises

1 Write affirmative sentences.

- 1 Charles isn't tall.
- 2 Elizabeth isn't young.
- 3 The USA isn't small.
- 4 Michael isn't short.
- 5 David and Victoria aren't poor.
- 6 iPods aren't big.
- 7 I'm not old.
- 8 We aren't rich.

He's short. _____

2 ①.04 Complete the sentences with a, an or Ø (no article). Then listen and check.

- | | |
|------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1 It's _____ cheap car. | 7 We're _____ poor students. |
| 2 They're _____ fast cars. | 8 I'm _____ poor student. |
| 3 She's _____ young teacher. | 9 They're _____ Italian teachers. |
| 4 He's _____ rich. | 10 It's _____ expensive house. |
| 5 It's _____ beautiful. | 11 She's _____ young engineer. |
| 6 It's _____ beautiful book. | 12 You're _____ American. |

3 Write sentences. Use the adjectives in the box.

cold hot hungry thirsty tired



4 Correct the sentences.



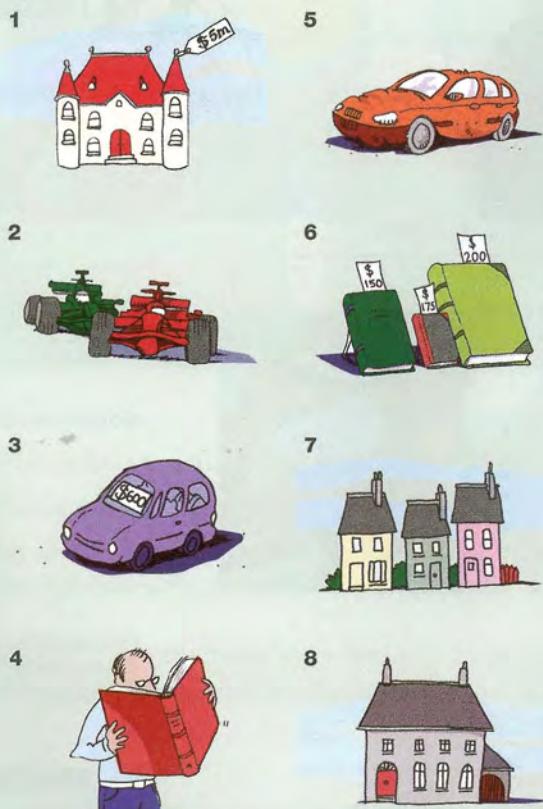
- 1 John's happy. John isn't happy. He's unhappy.
- 2 Sue's angry. _____
- 3 Lee's unhappy. _____

5 Review of units 1 to 4

Grammar

1 Look at the pictures and write sentences. Use the words in the table.

pronouns	verbs	articles	adjectives	nouns
It	's	a	big	book(s)
They	're	an Ø	small expensive cheap fast slow	car(s) house(s)



1 It's an expensive house.

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

2 Is it a question or a statement? Add a question mark (?) or a full stop (.)

- | | |
|----------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1 Is she English ? | 5 Are you a doctor |
| 2 I'm a teacher . | 6 It isn't a small car |
| 3 Is it six o'clock | 7 We're Russian |
| 4 They aren't nurses | 8 Are they expensive |

3 Combine the sentences.

- 1 He's from Russia. He's a doctor.
He's a Russian doctor.
- 2 She's from Britain. She's a teacher.
- 3 We're engineers. We're from Spain.
- 4 I'm a musician. I'm from Italy.
- 5 They're from Japan. They're students.
- 6 She's an engineer. She's from Poland.
- 7 He's an artist. He's from Brazil.
- 8 They're from the USA. They're nurses.

4 Write questions and answers.

- 1 Madonna – from the USA? → yes
Is Madonna from the USA?
Yes, she is.
- 2 Tom Cruise – tall? → no
- 3 Bill Gates – rich? → yes
- 4 Julia Roberts – a musician? → no

5 the Rolling Stones – American? → no

6 Ferraris – expensive? → yes

5 Write negative sentences. Use contractions.

1 Tom Cruise – tall

Tom Cruise isn't tall.

2 Bill Gates – poor

3 The Rolling Stones – American

4 Madonna – from Italy

5 Ferraris – cheap

6 Julia Roberts – a musician

Pronunciation: contractions

6 1.05 Listen and tick what you hear.

- | | | |
|--------------|-----------|---|
| 1 He is not | He isn't | ✓ |
| 2 I am | I'm | |
| 3 She is | She's | |
| 4 They are | They're | |
| 5 We are not | We aren't | |
| 6 It is not | It isn't | |
| 7 You are | You're | |

Vocabulary

7 Match to make six occupations.

1 art	ent	artist
2 doct	er	
3 engin	ian	
4 music	ist	
5 teach	or	
6 stud	eer	

8 Write the times.



It's quarter to eight.



9 Write the opposite adjectives.

- | | |
|-------------|--------|
| 1 tall | short |
| 2 rich | poor |
| 3 old | young |
| 4 big | small |
| 5 fast | slow |
| 6 expensive | cheap |
| 7 married | single |
| 8 hot | cold |

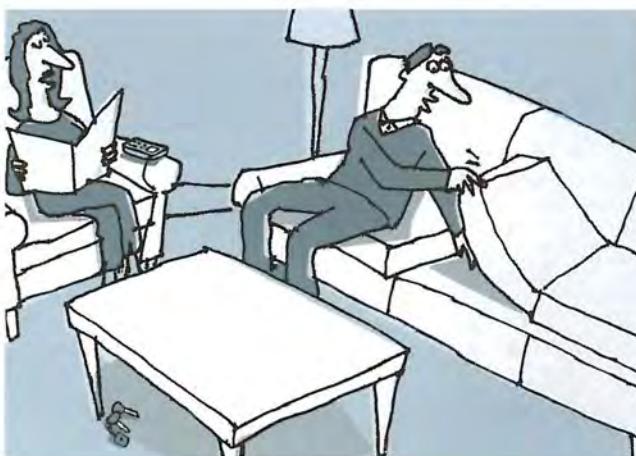
Listen again

10 1.06 Listen. Are the sentences true (T) or false (F)?

- | | |
|------------------------|---|
| 1 Andrea is Polish. | T |
| 2 Andrea is married. | |
| 3 Bruno is thirty. | |
| 4 Bruno is married. | |
| 5 Marisol is Mexican. | |
| 6 Marisol is nineteen. | |

6 Where is/are ...?

Prepositions of place (*in, on, next to, under*)



Man: Where's the phone?
Woman: It's on the chair.
Man: Oh, thanks. Where are the car keys?
Woman: I don't know. Are they on the table?
Man: No, they aren't.

Presentation

Yes/No questions

Is it	on	the chair?
Are they	on	the table?

Where questions

Where	's	the phone?
are	the car keys?	

Affirmative + preposition

It's	on	the chair.
They're	on	the table.

TIP Use *the* (definite article) with both singular and plural nouns: *the phone, the keys*.

Prepositions of place



in



on



next to

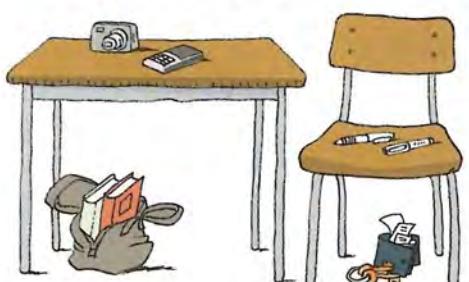


under

Key vocabulary Everyday objects: bag, book, camera, chair, keys, phone, pen, table, wallet

Exercises

- 1 Read the answers and look at the picture. Write the questions. Use *Where's the ...?* or *Where are the ...?*



- 1 Where's the phone? _____
2 _____
3 _____
4 _____
5 _____
6 _____
7 _____
8 _____

It's on the table.
It's next to the chair.
They're under the chair.
It's next to the phone.
They're on the chair.
It's under the chair.
It's under the table.
They're in the bag.

2 Look at the picture in exercise 1 again. Correct the prepositions in the sentences.

Two are correct.

- 1 Two pens are in the chair. on
- 2 The keys and the wallet are under the chair.
- 3 The books are under the bag.
- 4 The bag is next to the table.
- 5 The camera is next to the phone.
- 6 The phone is under the table.

3  1.07 Complete the sentences. Use *It's* or *They're* and *in*, *on*, *next to* or *under*. Then listen and check.



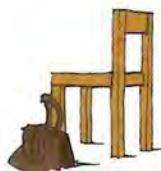
1 It's under the chair.



6 under the bag.



2 They're in in the bag.



7 next to the chair.



3 under the book.



8 under the wallet.



4 between the camera.



9 between the phone.



5 near the table.



10 near the bag.

7 There is/are ...

Prepositions of place (*in the corner, in the middle, in front of, behind*)

The computer screen displays a blog post with the following content:

My new apartment

There are four rooms in the apartment. There's a living room, a kitchen, a bedroom and a bathroom.

There's a big window in the living room. There are two sofas. There's a table in the middle of the room and there's a television in the corner.

The bedroom is small. There's a bed, a desk and a chair. The desk is next to the bed and in front of the window.

There's no window in the bathroom and there's no bath. There's a shower.

The 3D floor plan shows the layout of the apartment with labeled rooms: bathroom, kitchen, living room, and bedroom. It also shows furniture like sofas, a television, a desk, and a chair.

Presentation

Affirmative

There's	a one	sofa.
There are	two three four	sofas.

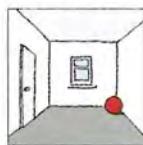
TIP there's = there + is

Negative

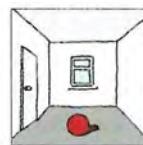
There isn't	a	sofa.
There aren't	two	sofas.

TIP there isn't = there is not
there aren't = there are not
There's no sofa. = There isn't a sofa.

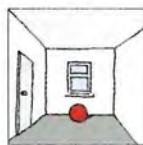
Prepositions of place



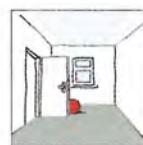
in the corner / in the corner of the room



in the middle / in the middle of the room



in front of the window



behind the door

Key vocabulary Rooms and furniture: living room, kitchen, bedroom, bathroom, bath, bed, chair, desk, door, shower, sofa, table, television, window

Exercises

1 Complete the sentences with **There's** or **There are**.

- 1 There's a table in the kitchen.
- 2 _____ four chairs in the corner.
- 3 _____ no television in the bedroom.

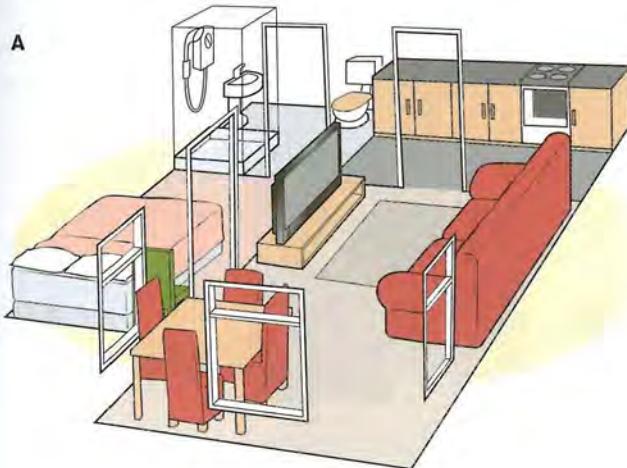
- 4 _____ a table next to the sofa.
- 5 _____ a sofa between the windows.
- 6 _____ two bathrooms.

2 Match the sentences to the apartments.

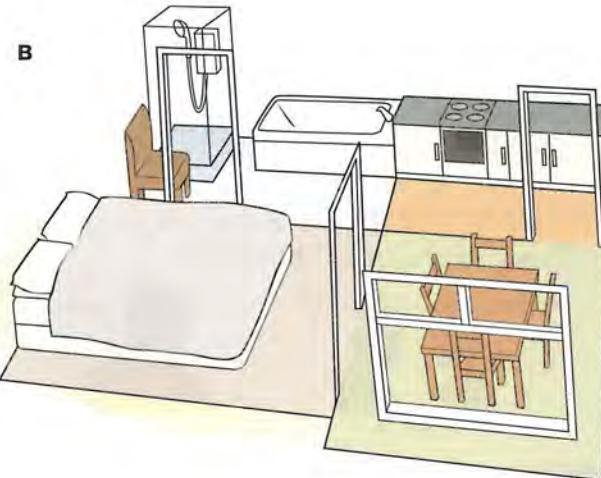
- 1 The bedroom's big.
- 2 The bedroom's small.
- 3 The chair's behind the door in the bathroom.
- 4 The television's in front of the sofa.
- 5 There are four chairs and a table in the middle of room.
- 6 There are three windows in the living room.
- 7 There's a bath and there's a shower.

- 8 There's a chair next to the bed.
- 9 There's a big bed in the middle of the room.
- 10 There's a big sofa.
- 11 There's a big window in the living room.
- 12 There's a shower – there's no bath.
- 13 There's a table and four chairs in the corner.
- 14 There's no sofa.

A



B



3 ①.08 Look at the picture and write sentences. Use the words in brackets. Then listen and check.

- 1 (two windows)

There are two windows in the room.

- 2 (a big sofa)

There's a big sofa in the middle of the room.

- 3 (two chairs)

- 4 (desk)

- 5 (computer)

- 6 (television)



8 Is there ...?

Prepositions of place (*opposite, in front of, between, behind*)



Woman: Is there a cash machine near here?

Man: Yes, there is. It's in Marlowe Street,
opposite the supermarket.

Woman: Thank you.

Man: You're welcome.



Guest: Excuse me.

Receptionist: Yes?

Guest: Is there a restaurant in the hotel?

Receptionist: Yes, there is. It's on the first floor.

Guest: Is there a lift?

Receptionist: No, there isn't. Sorry.

Presentation

Yes/No questions

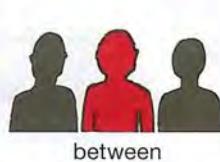
Is there a	cash machine restaurant	near here? in the hotel?
------------	----------------------------	-----------------------------

Short answers

Yes, there is. No, there isn't.

Prepositions of place

in (Marlow Street), on the (third) floor



Key vocabulary | Places in town: café, cash machine, cinema, gym, hotel, office, restaurant, swimming pool, supermarket, taxi rank

In a hotel: reception, lift, the ground/first/second/third floor

Exercises

1 Put the conversations in order.

Conversation 1

- Yes?
- Yes, there is. It's behind the supermarket.
- Thank you.
- Is there a taxi rank near here?
- Excuse me.
- You're welcome.

Conversation 2

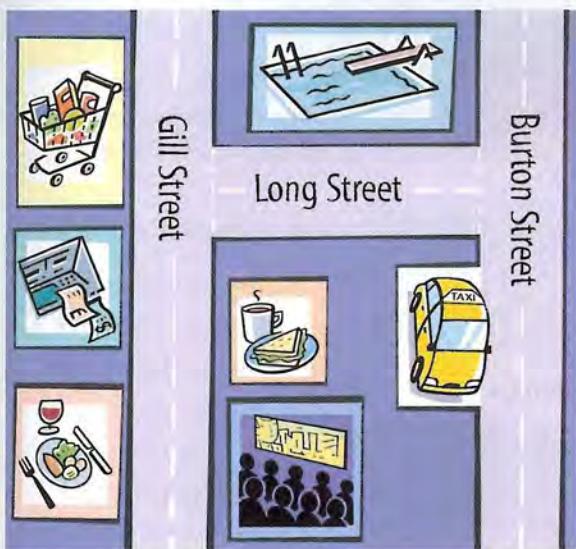
- Yes?
- Thank you.
- No, there isn't. But there's a swimming pool on the third floor.
- Excuse me.
- You're welcome.
- Is there a gym in the hotel?

2 Look at the hotel lift and the questions. Write the answers.



- 1 Is there a restaurant in the hotel? Yes, there is. It's on the first floor.
- 2 Is there a gym? No, there isn't.
- 3 Is there a swimming pool?
- 4 Is there a café?
- 5 Is there a cash machine?
- 6 Where's reception?

3 1.09 Read the answers and look at the map. Write the questions. Then listen and check.



- 1 Is there a cinema near here?
Yes, there is. It's in Gill Street, next to the café.
- 2 _____
Yes, there is. It's next to the cinema.
- 3 _____
Yes, there is. It's in Burton Street, behind the café.
- 4 _____
Yes, there is. It's in Long Street.
- 5 _____
Yes, there is. It's opposite the cinema.
- 6 _____
Yes, there is. It's between the supermarket and the restaurant.

4 Answer these questions about your town.

- 1 Is there a cinema? Where is it?

Yes, there is. It's in Union Street opposite the pizza restaurant.

- 2 Is there a cash machine? Where is it?

- 3 Is there a supermarket? Where is it?

- 4 Is there a swimming pool? Where is it?

- 5 Is there a taxi rank? Where is it?

- 6 Is there an Italian restaurant? Where is it?

9 There is/are + some/any

Countable and uncountable nouns



Woman: There's some coffee.
 Man: Good. Is there any sugar?
 Woman: Yes, there is.
 Man: Are there any biscuits?
 Woman: No, there aren't. And there isn't any milk.

Presentation

Affirmative + a/an/some

There's	a	biscuit. banana.
	an	apple. egg.
	some	bread. butter. coffee. milk. sugar.
There are	some	apples. bananas. biscuits. eggs. oranges.

Negative + any

There isn't	any	bread. butter.
There aren't	any	apples. bananas.

Yes/No questions + any

Is there	any	coffee? sugar?
Are there	any	biscuits? eggs?

Short answers

Yes,	there is. there are.	No,	there isn't. there aren't.
------	-------------------------	-----	-------------------------------

Countable and uncountable nouns: some and any

Some nouns are countable: *one egg, two eggs, three eggs ...*

Some nouns are uncountable: *bread, milk, sugar ...*

Use *some* in affirmative statements ...

- with plural countable nouns: *There are some eggs.*
- with uncountable nouns: *There is some bread.*

Use *any* with countable and uncountable nouns ...

- in negative statements: *There aren't any eggs. There isn't any bread.*
- in questions: *Are there any eggs? Is there any bread?*

Key vocabulary Food and drink: apples, bananas, biscuits, bread, butter, coffee, eggs, milk, oranges, sugar

Exercises

1 1.10 Look at the picture. Complete the text with the words in the box. Then listen and check.

apples banana biscuits bread butter coffee eggs ~~milk~~ sugar



There's some ¹ milk and some ² _____ in the fridge and there are some ³ _____. There are some ⁴ _____ under the table. There's some ⁵ _____ on the table and there's a ⁶ _____. There's some ⁷ _____ on the shelf. There isn't any ⁸ _____ and there aren't any ⁹ _____.

2 Look at the picture in exercise 1 again. Match the answers to the questions.

- | | | |
|---------------------------|----------------------------|--|
| 1 Is there any milk? | <input type="checkbox"/> e | a No, there isn't. |
| 2 Are there any apples? | <input type="checkbox"/> | b Yes, there are. They're in the fridge. |
| 3 Is there any bread? | <input type="checkbox"/> | c Yes, there is. It's on the shelf. |
| 4 Is there any sugar? | <input type="checkbox"/> | d Yes, there is. It's on the table. |
| 5 Are there any biscuits? | <input type="checkbox"/> | e Yes, there is. It's in the fridge. |
| 6 Are there any eggs? | <input type="checkbox"/> | f No, there aren't. |
| 7 Is there any butter? | <input type="checkbox"/> | g Yes, there are. They're under the table. |

3 Look at the picture. Complete the sentences with *a*, *an*, *some* or *any*.



- 1 There isn't any bread.
- 2 There's an orange.
- 3 There aren't any biscuits.
- 4 There are some eggs.
- 5 There's an banana.
- 6 There isn't any butter.
- 7 There's some coffee.

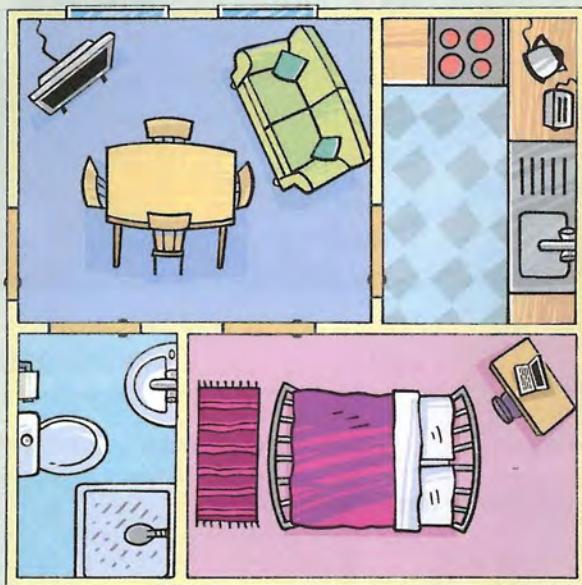
4 Look at the picture in exercise 3 again. Write questions and answers.

- 1 coffee Is there any coffee? Yes, there is.
- 2 biscuits
- 3 sugar
- 4 eggs

10 Review of units 6 to 9

Grammar

- 1 Look at the plan. Complete the description with *There's a*, *There isn't a* or *There are*.



- 1 There are two windows in the living room. 2 sofa.
- 3 four chairs and a table in the middle of the room. The television's in the corner.
- The bedroom's big. 4 bed, a desk and a chair. The bed's in the middle of the room. The desk and the chair are in the corner.
- 5 shower.
- 6 bath in the bathroom.

- 2 Complete the table with the words in the box.

apples	bananas	biscuits	butter
bread	coffee	eggs	milk
		sugar	

	food	drink
countable	apples	
uncountable		

- 3 Tick (✓) the possible words.

- 1 There isn't any ...
a milk. ✓ b biscuits. c bread. ✓
- 2 There are some ...
a biscuits. b coffee. c sugar.
- 3 There's a ...
a bread. b banana. c apple.
- 4 There isn't any ...
a coffee. b apples. c sugar.
- 5 There aren't any ...
a bananas. b sugar. c eggs.
- 6 There isn't an ...
a apple. b egg. c coffee.
- 7 Are there any ...
a eggs? b bread? c coffee?
- 8 Is there any ...
a milk? b biscuits? c bananas?
- 9 There are some ...
a coffee. b bananas. c eggs.
- 10 There's a ...
a apple. b bread. c biscuit.

4 Complete the conversation with the words in the box.

're are aren't in on some any

- A: Where¹ _____ the car keys? Are there² _____ keys in the kitchen?
- B: No, there³ _____ but there are⁴ _____ keys in the living room. They're⁵ _____ the desk⁶ _____ the corner.
- A: Are you sure?
- B: Oh, sorry. Here they are. They⁷ _____ in my bag.

Pronunciation: *is/are*

5 1.11 Listen and tick what you hear.

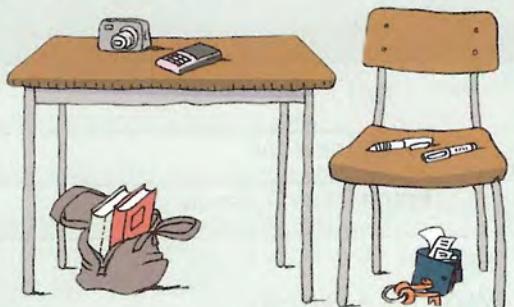
- | | |
|-------------------|------------------|
| 1 There isn't ... | There aren't ... |
| 2 Where's ...? ✓ | Where are ...? |
| 3 Is there ...? | Are there ...? |
| 4 There's ... | There are ... |
| 5 There isn't ... | There aren't ... |
| 6 Where's ...? | Where are ...? |
| 7 Is there ...? | Are there ...? |
| 8 There's ... | There are ... |

6 Write the words for things in the home.

- | | |
|-------------|------|
| 1 d~sk | desk |
| 2 s~f~ | |
| 3 b~d | |
| 4 t~l~v~s~n | |
| 5 t~bl~ | |
| 6 sh~w~r | |
| 7 b~th | |
| 8 d~~r | |
| 9 w~nd~w | |
| 10 ch~~r | |

Vocabulary

7 Look at the picture. Are the sentences true (T) or false (F)?



- 1 The phone's under the chair. F
- 2 The bag's on the chair.
- 3 The keys are next to the wallet.
- 4 There are some books in the bag.
- 5 The pens are on the camera.
- 6 The wallet's under the chair.
- 7 The phone's next to the camera.
- 8 The keys are next to the camera.
- 9 The bag is under the table.
- 10 The camera is on the table.

8 Circle the word that is different.

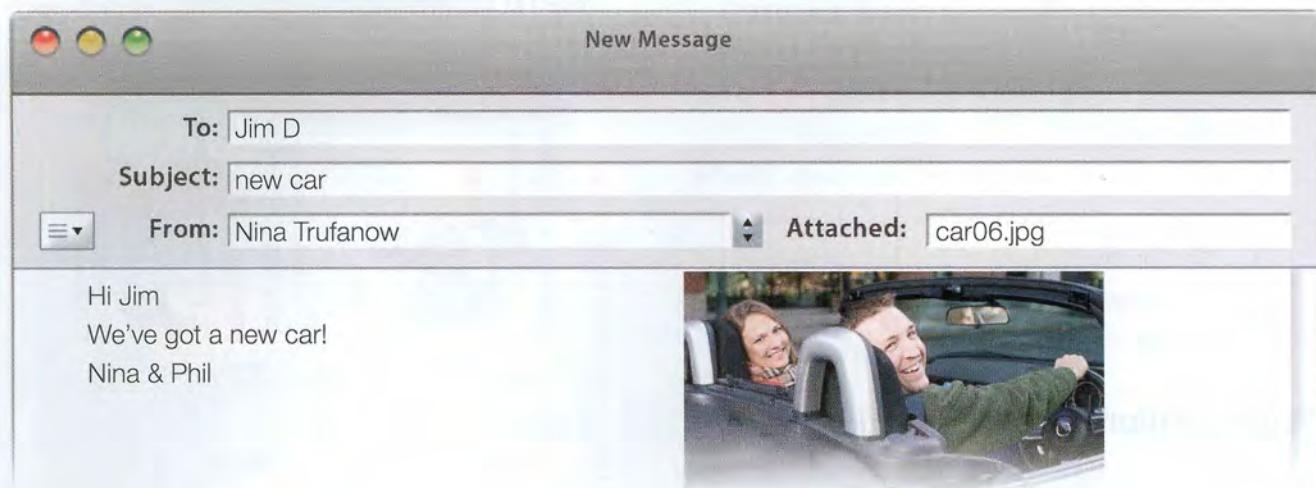
- | | | | |
|-----------|---------|-------------|------------|
| 1 apples | bananas | biscuits | oranges |
| 2 sugar | coffee | milk | tea |
| 3 café | shower | supermarket | restaurant |
| 4 door | hotel | office | gym |
| 5 camera | keys | wallet | table |
| 6 kitchen | bedroom | window | bathroom |
| 7 sofa | chair | table | reception |

Listen again

9 1.12 Listen. Are the sentences true (T) or false (F)?

- 1 There's some coffee in the fridge.
- 2 There aren't any eggs.
- 3 There's a banana on the table.
- 4 There's some sugar.
- 5 There are some biscuits.

11 have got



Presentation

Use *have got* and *has got* to talk about ...

- possessions: *We've got a new car.*
- appearance: *She's got blonde hair.*
- people in your life: *He's got two children.*
- illnesses: *I've got a headache.*

Affirmative

I you we they	have got	I've got You've got We've got They've got	two children. a new car. dark hair. a cold.
he she	has got	He's got She's got	

Negative

I You We They	haven't got	any children. a new car. dark hair. a cold.
He She	hasn't got	

Yes/No questions

Have	you we they	got	any children? a new car? dark hair?
Has	he she		a cold?

Short answers

Yes,	I / you / we / they he / she	have. has.
No,	I / you / we / they he / she	haven't. hasn't.

TIP Say *I'm 21. I'm 1 metre 79. I'm hot. I'm cold.* (don't say *I have 21 years. I have 1 metre 79. I have hot. I have cold.*)
I'm cold. (a feeling) ≠ *I've got a cold.* (an illness)

Key vocabulary Appearance: blue/brown eyes, blonde/brown/dark hair, a nice smile, a tattoo
Illness: a cold, the flu, a headache, paracetamol

Exercises

1 Write the contractions.

- 1 I have got I've got
2 She has got
3 We have not got

- 4 He has got
5 They have got
6 He has not got

2 Write sentences.

- 1 Joe / a nice house Joe's got a nice house.
2 Annika and Ray / not / a car
3 you / a bike?
4 Catherine / a sister?
5 we / not / any children
6 I / not / a cold. I / the flu

3 1.13 Complete the conversations. Then listen and check.

Conversation 1

- A: ¹ Have Mark and Anna ² got any children?
B: Yes, ³ a son and a daughter.

Conversation 2

- C: What's the matter?
D: ⁴ a headache. ⁵ you ⁶ a paracetamol?
C: No, ⁷ . Sorry.

Conversation 3

- E: ⁸ Lizzie ⁹ a car?
F: Yes, ¹⁰ an Audi TT.
E: Really? ¹¹ a boyfriend?

4 Complete the text with *is* or *has got*.

Penelope Cruz ¹ is an actress. She ²
1m 68. She ³ dark hair and brown eyes. She
⁴ a nice smile. She ⁵ from Spain.
She ⁶ a brother, Eduardo, and a sister, Monica.



5 1.14 Write about Johnny Depp. Then listen and check.

- 1 an actor
2 1m 79
3 brown hair, brown eyes
4 thirteen tattoos
5 from the USA
6 a brother and two sisters



12 Possessive adjectives



Woman: Have you got your ticket?
Man: Yes, I have.
Woman: And your credit card?
Man: Yes, of course.
Woman: And your mobile?
Man: Yes, yes, I've got my mobile and I've got my keys and ...
Woman: What about your passport?
Man: Oh, no!

Presentation

Use possessive adjectives to talk about objects, people and places.

Subject pronouns	Possessive adjectives
I	my
you	your
he	his
she	her
it	its
we	our
they	their

I've got my ticket.
Have you got your passport?
His parents are Italian.
Her father's from Argentina.
Venice is famous for its canals.
Our camera's a Nikon.
Their daughter's a doctor.

A possessive adjective has got one form for singular and plural: *his brother, his parents*.

Key vocabulary Everyday objects: credit card, glasses, laptop, mobile (= mobile phone), passport, ticket

Adjectives: awful, brilliant, fantastic, great, terrible

People in your life: mother, father, parents, son, daughter, children, husband, wife, brother, sister

Exercises

1 Write sentences.

- 1 my keys ✓ *I've got my keys.*
- 2 your laptop ✗ *You haven't got your laptop.*
- 3 our passports ✓
- 4 his glasses ✗
- 5 her camera ✓
- 6 our credit cards ✗
- 7 my mobile ✓
- 8 their tickets ✓

2 Write sentences.

- 1 I've got a Nikon camera. It's fantastic!
- 2 She's got a new motorbike. It's great!
- 3 He's got a Dell laptop. It's brilliant!
- 4 We've got an old car. It's terrible!
- 5 They've got an old television. It's awful!

My camera's fantastic! _____

3 1.15 Complete the text with *his*, *her*, *their* or *its*. Then listen and check.



Ana's Argentinian but ¹ _____ husband, Jacob, isn't from Argentina. ² _____ father's Nigerian and ³ _____ mother's Scottish. Ana's got a sister and a brother. ⁴ _____ sister's a teacher and ⁵ _____ brother's a doctor. He's married. ⁶ _____ wife's Italian. They've got two children: a son and a daughter. ⁷ _____ daughter's ten and ⁸ _____ son's six. They've also got a dog. ⁹ _____ name is Rex.

4 Choose the correct words.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1 Jane hasn't got <i>she / her</i> passport. | 7 What's <i>it's / its</i> name? |
| 2 <i>We / Our</i> new motorbike is fantastic. | 8 <i>They / Their</i> son has got an apartment opposite the park. |
| 3 <i>She / Her</i> is a doctor. | 9 Have you got <i>I / my</i> phone? |
| 4 <i>I / My</i> haven't got a fast car. | 10 <i>We / Our</i> have got a house near here. |
| 5 Where are <i>you / your</i> glasses? | 11 <i>He / His</i> mobile is on the table. |
| 6 <i>He / His</i> father is from the USA. | 12 <i>I / My</i> mother is from Madrid. |

5 Complete the sentences about a friend. Use the words in brackets.

- | | |
|---|--------------------|
| 1 My friend <u>has got two sisters</u> . Their names are Clare and Penny. | (brothers/sisters) |
| My friend _____ | (brothers/sisters) |
| 2 He/She _____ | (married/single) |
| 3 He/She _____ | (children/dog) |
| 4 He/She _____ | (car/bike) |

13 *this, that, these, those* (demonstrative pronouns)

The pronoun *one*



Presentation

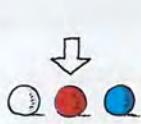
Singular



this
this one



that
that one



Which one?
The red one.

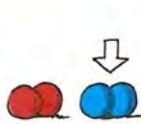
Plural



these
these ones



those
those ones



Which ones?
The blue ones.

This	one
That	
Which	one?

These	ones
Those	
Which	ones?

Key vocabulary Clothes and accessories: coat, hat, shirt, shoes, trainers, trousers, sunglasses, watch

Colours: black, white, red, yellow, blue

Exercises

1 Look at the pictures and complete the questions. Use *this, that, these or those*.



- 1 Is this _____ your watch?
- 2 Are these _____ your sunglasses?
- 3 _____ your camera?
- 4 _____ your bike?
- 5 _____ your books?
- 6 _____ your phone?

2 Look at the pictures and write sentences. Use the words in the table.

This That	coat hat shirt	is	big. small. old.
These Those	shoes trainers trousers	are	

1 These trainers are old.

2

3

4

5

6



3 Look at the pictures and complete the conversations.



A: That's my phone.

B: Which one?

A: The black one.



A: That's

B: Which

A: The



A: Those

B: Which

A: The

4 1.16 Complete the conversation with *one*, *that* or *which*. Then listen and check.

A: Who's ¹ girl?

B: ² ³ ?

A: The ⁴ in the red shoes.

B: ⁵ 's Sue. She's my girlfriend.

14 Possessive 's and possessive pronouns

whose



Woman: You've got it!
Man: What?
Woman: My laptop.
Man: This isn't your laptop.
Woman: Whose is it?
Man: It's Karen's.
Woman: Well, where's mine?
Man: Oh, Tim's got yours.
Woman: And who's Tim?
Man: He's my brother. But he's on holiday.

Presentation

Possessive 's	Possessive adjective	Possessive pronoun
	It's my laptop.	It's mine.
	They're your sunglasses.	They're yours.
It's Karen's mobile. It's my sister's mobile.	It's her mobile.	It's hers.
It's my brother's T shirt. It's Tim's T-shirt.	It's his T-shirt.	It's his.
	It's our camera.	It's ours.
It's my parents' camera.	It's their camera.	It's theirs.

Possessive 's

- Add 's to a singular noun: *My sister's husband.*
- Add ' to a plural noun: *My sisters' husbands.*

Possessive pronouns

A possessive pronoun has got one form for singular and plural.

It's my book. It's mine.

They're my books. They're mine.

You can use a noun + possessive 's in the same way: *Whose mobile is this? It's David's. / It's my brother's.*

Whose

Whose laptop is this? It's mine.

Whose sunglasses are these? They're mine.

Exercises

- 1 1.17 Write questions with *whose* and the answers. Then listen and check.



- 1 A: Whose mobile is this?
B: I think it's Harry's.
2 A: Whose books are these?
B: I think they're Lisa's.
3 A: _____
B: _____
4 A: _____
B: _____
5 A: _____
B: _____
6 A: _____
B: _____

- 2 Write sentences with possessive pronouns.

- 1 That's Harry's mobile.
It's his.
2 Those are Tim's trainers.
3 These are Lisa's books.
4 This is Lisa's laptop.
5 These are Harry's sunglasses.
6 That's Tim's camera.

- 3 Rewrite the sentences. Use possessive pronouns.

- 1 This is my laptop and that's your laptop. This is mine and that is yours.
2 Those are their books and these are our books.
3 This is her camera and that's your camera.
4 This is my laptop and that's his laptop.

- 4 What is the 's in the underlined words? Write *is*, *has* or *P* (for possessive 's').

- 1 Is this Lisa's mobile? P
No, she's got a Nokia. has
2 That's a nice camera.
Yes, it's a Nikon.
3 Have you got Harry's laptop?
No, this is Tim's.
4 I think Tim's got my book. Where is he?
He's on holiday.
5 This one's mine.
No, that's yours.
6 Where is Tim's camera?
It's in his bag.

15 Review of units 11 to 14

Grammar

1 Choose the correct forms.

- 1 I's got blue eyes. / I've got blue eyes.
- 2 She hasn't got a motorbike. / She haven't got a motorbike.
- 3 Has you got a cold? / Have you got a cold?
- 4 Yes, I has. / Yes, I have.
- 5 No, he hasn't. / No, he haven't.
- 6 We's got two children. / We've got two children.
- 7 He's got a new laptop. / He've got a new laptop.
- 8 Have she got dark hair? / Has she got dark hair.

2 Correct the sentences. Use the possessive 's.

- 1 Venus is Serena sister. Serena's
- 2 Sofia father is Francis.
- 3 Bob daughter is Peaches.
- 4 The Clintons daughter is Chelsea.
- 5 Barbara is George mother.
- 6 Jane brother is Peter.
- 7 Richard is Judy husband.
- 8 Charles is Elizabeth son.

3 Complete the sentences with a possessive adjective.

- 1 I've got my keys.
- 2 London is noisy but quiet parks are quiet.
- 3 Maria has got tonight guitar lesson tonight.
- 4 Mark and Julia are in the house. This is car.
- 5 A: Is this mobile phone?
B: No, it isn't. My phone is in my bag.
- 6 This is Ben's dog. name is Loki.
- 7 We've got two sons. son's names are Matt and Sam.
- 8 Jane hasn't got glasses.

4 Rewrite the sentences. Use *It's* or *They're* and the words in the box.

hers his mine ours theirs yours

- 1 Those are David's keys.
They're his.
- 2 That's Melanie's camera.
It's hers.
- 3 This is my car.
- 4 These are Jack's sunglasses.
- 5 That's Tom and Katie's house.
- 6 This is Poppy's laptop.
- 7 Those are your trainers.
- 8 These are our credit cards.

5 Look at the picture. Write questions and answers.



- 1 Which one is Mike's?
The black one.
- 2 Which ones are Ellen's?
The yellow ones.
- 3 _____
- 4 _____

Pronunciation: /s/ or /z/

6 1.18 Listen to the final s in these words.

/s/ /z/
books keys
shirts trousers

Then listen and tick /s/ or /z/.

- | | | |
|------------|-----|-------|
| 1 hotels | /s/ | /z/ ✓ |
| 2 T-shirts | /s/ | /z/ |
| 3 apples | /s/ | /z/ |
| 4 laptops | /s/ | /z/ |
| 5 coats | /s/ | /z/ |
| 6 eyes | /s/ | /z/ |

Vocabulary

7 Complete the table with the words in the box.

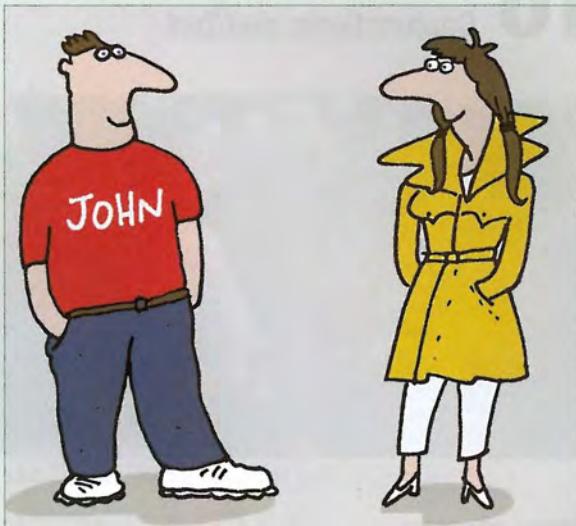
boyfriend	brother	daughter	
father	girlfriend	husband	
mother	sister	son	wife

boyfriend	girlfriend
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____

8 Match to make six everyday objects.

- | | | |
|----------|---------|----------|
| 1 pass | era | PASSPORT |
| 2 credit | glasses | _____ |
| 3 sun | ch | _____ |
| 4 lap | port | _____ |
| 5 cam | card | _____ |
| 6 wat | top | _____ |

9 Are the sentences true (T) or false (F)?



1 John's got a red T-shirt.

2 His trousers are black.

3 Penny's got a yellow coat.

4 Her trousers are blue.

5 She's got blue eyes.

6 He's got blue eyes.

7 They've got blonde hair.

8 Their shoes are white.

Listen again

10 1.19 Listen and complete the table with their possessions.

Harry	mobile _____
Lisa	_____
Tim	_____

16 Present simple 1

Conjunctions: *and/but*



Man: Where are you from?

Woman: I'm from Spain but I live in London. I work in a bank.

Man: Have you got any brothers and sisters?

Woman: I've got one brother, Alberto. He works in a hospital and he lives in Madrid.

Presentation

Use the present simple to talk about ...

- routines: *I walk to work every day.*
- permanent situations: *She lives in New York.*

Affirmative

I		
You	live	
We	work	
They		in London.
He	lives	
She	works	

Third person (*he/she/it*) s: key spelling rules

- Most verbs: *live* → *lives*, *start* → *starts*, *work* → *works* ...
- Verbs ending with *-s*, *-sh* or *-ch*: *finish* → *finishes*, *watch* → *watches* ...
- Verbs ending with consonant + *-y*: *study* → *studies* ...
- Irregular verbs: *have* → *has*, *do* → *does* ...

See page 233: Spelling rules

Conjunctions: *and/but*

- Use *and* for extra information: *He works in a hospital and he lives in Madrid.*
- Use *but* to show difference: *I'm from Spain but I live in London.*

Key vocabulary Verbs: finish, have, live, start, study, walk, watch (television), work

Have: have lunch, have a break

Occupations: banker, chef, doctor, nurse, teacher, waiter

Exercises

1 Write sentences about where they live.

- 1 I / Spain / but / London
- 2 Alberto / Spain / and / Madrid
- 3 Tessa / Greece / and / Athens
- 4 Jim and I / the UK / but / Tokyo
- 5 Yang and Li / China / but / Paris
- 6 Dan / Australia / and / Melbourne

I'm from Spain but I live in London.

Alberto's from Spain and he lives in Madrid.

2 Write sentences about where they work. Use the words in the box.

bank hospital school restaurant

- | | |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1 Alberto's a doctor. | He works in a hospital. |
| 2 Nina's a banker. | She works in a bank. |
| 3 Tessa's a teacher. | |
| 4 Dan's a waiter. | |
| 5 Yuko and Tomi are nurses. | |
| 6 Juana and I are chefs. | |

3 ⑥ 1.20 Choose the correct verbs. Then listen and check.

My wife ¹ *work / works* in a bank and I ² *work / works* in a hospital. I ³ *start / starts* work at nine o'clock every day. My wife ⁴ *start / starts* at eight but she ⁵ *have / has* a break at half past ten. We both ⁶ *have / has* lunch at half past twelve. She ⁷ *finish / finishes* work at five o'clock and I ⁸ *finish / finishes* at half past five. In the evening she ⁹ *study / studies* English and I ¹⁰ *watch / watches* television.

4 Complete the description of Sophie and Emma's routines.

	Sophie	Emma	Larry	Dan
start	10:00	09:30	16:30	17:00
break	15:00	15:00	19:30	19:30
finish	16:30	16:00	23:30	24:00

Sophie and Emma are chefs. Sophie ¹ starts work at ten o'clock and Emma ² starts at half past nine. They ³ have a break at three o'clock. Sophie ⁴ finishes work at half past four and Emma ⁵ finishes at four o'clock.



5 Look at the timetable in exercise 4 again. Write a description of Larry and Dan's routines.

Larry starts

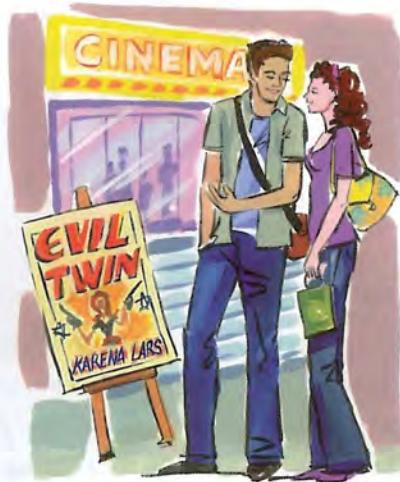
6 Write a description of your routine.

17 Present simple 2 (negative and questions)

Subject and object pronouns



Dad: Mum loves sushi! Do you like it?
 Daughter: No, I don't. I hate it. It's horrible.
 Dad: Do you like Chinese food?
 Daughter: Yes, I do but I prefer pizza.



Girl: Do you like horror films?
 Boy: No, I don't. Why?
 Girl: *Evil Twin* is on. Karena Lars is in it.
 Boy: Oh, I like her.

Presentation

Affirmative and negative

I		
You	like	sushi.
We	don't like	pizza.
They		horror films.
He	likes	him.
She	doesn't like	her.

TIP don't = do + not
 doesn't = does + not

Yes/No questions

Do	I you we they	like	sushi? pizza? horror films? him? her?
Does	he she		

Short answers

Yes,	I / you / we / they	do.
	he / she	does.
No,	I / you / we / they	don't.
	he / she	doesn't.

Subject and object pronouns

Subject pronouns	I	you	he	she	it	we	they
Object pronouns	me	you	him	her	it	us	them

Key vocabulary People in your life: brother, girlfriend, parents, children, father (dad), mother (mum), friend
 Likes and preferences: love, like, prefer, don't like, hate

Exercises

1 Match the questions to the answers.

- | | | |
|------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1 Do you like Matt Damon? | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | a No, I don't. I hate rock music. |
| 2 Do you like pasta? | <input type="checkbox"/> | b Yes, I do. She's fantastic. |
| 3 Do you like Avril Lavigne? | <input type="checkbox"/> | c Yes, I do. He's great. |
| 4 Do you like hip-hop? | <input type="checkbox"/> | d Yes, I do but I prefer jazz. |
| 5 Do you like Oasis? | <input type="checkbox"/> | e Yes, I do. I love Italian food. |

2 Read the conversations and name the person.

	Nancy	Luke	Fran	Matt
hip-hop	😊	😊😊	😊😊	😊
jazz	😊😊	😊	😊	😊😊
rock	😊	😊😊	😊	😊😊

- 1 A: Does she like rock?
B: Yes, she does but she prefers hip-hop.
Fran
- 2 A: Does she like hip-hop?
B: Yes, she does but she prefers jazz.
- 3 A: Does he like hip-hop?
B: No, he doesn't and he hates jazz.
- 4 A: Does he like hip-hop?
B: No, he hates it. He likes rock.

3 **1.21** Complete the conversations with *do*, *does*, *don't*, *doesn't*, *like* or *likes*. Then listen and check.

- 1 A: Do you like pasta?
B: No, I .
- 2 A: your boyfriend Chinese food?
B: No, he but he Japanese food.
- 3 A: your parents sushi?
B: My mother it but my father .

4 Choose the correct words.

- 1 Sharon likes Omaha but he doesn't like *her* / *she*.
- 2 I like Sharon but I don't think she likes *I* / *me*.
- 3 My brother's girlfriend is awful – I hate *her* / *she*.
- 4 Jared's parents are nice. I like *them* / *they*.
- 5 Tom's a good friend. We like him and he likes *we* / *us*.
- 6 Mike doesn't like Rene and she hates *he* / *him*.

5 **1.22** Write sentences with object pronouns. Then listen and check.

- 1 I don't like hip-hop. I don't like it.
- 2 I like the Rolling Stones.
- 3 I don't like Madonna.
- 4 I love rock.
- 5 I like Tom but I prefer Sally.

18 Adverbs of frequency

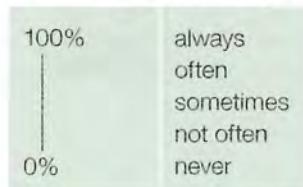


Woman: My husband and I love the opera.
Man: Really? How often do you go?
Woman: Every month. What about you?
Man: Me? I never go to the opera. I prefer football.
Woman: Then why are you here?
Man: Oh, I've got a free ticket. Do you ever watch football?
Woman: No, I don't.

Presentation

Use adverbs of frequency to talk about how often you do something.

Adverbs of frequency: one-word adverbs



- One-word adverbs go before the main verb*.

He	often sometimes never	goes to the opera. watches football.
----	-----------------------------	---

*but one-word adverbs go after the verb *to be*:
She is often late for work.

- With *not often*, use *don't* and *doesn't*.

I	don't	often	go to the opera. watch football.
She	doesn't		

- Use a time reference with *always*: *I always go to the cinema at the weekend.*

Adverbs of frequency: phrases

When the adverb is a phrase, it goes at the end of the sentence.

He goes to the opera	once a twice a three times a	day. week. month. year.
	every	day. week. month. year.

Questions

Do you ever
How often do you
go to the opera?
watch football?

Exercises

1 Look at the table. Write sentences.



	Opera	Cinema	Theatre
Lucy	never	often	once a year
John	every month	twice a week	not often
Chris and Sally	three times a year	every Tuesday	sometimes

- 1 Lucy / opera
- 2 John / opera
- 3 Lucy / cinema
- 4 Chris and Sally / cinema
- 5 John / cinema
- 6 Chris and Sally / theatre
- 7 Lucy / theatre
- 8 John / theatre

Lucy never goes to the opera.
John goes to the opera every month.

2 Put A in the sentences for the words in brackets.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1 I play football twice ^A week. (a) | 5 Li often go to the cinema. (doesn't) |
| 2 They always go to the cinema Saturdays. (on) | 6 Anita goes to the cinema weekend. (every) |
| 3 Jenny goes to the opera once year. (a) | 7 I watch football once a. (week) |
| 4 I play basketball three a month. (times) | 8 I go to the theatre a year. (twice) |

3 Put the words in order.

- 1 go I never opera the to
- 2 a football once plays Steve week
- 3 always Donna golf on plays Sundays
- 4 go sometimes the theatre they to
- 5 Carlo doesn't tennis often play
- 6 basketball every I play Thursday

I never go to the opera.

4 1.23 Complete the conversation with the words in the box. Then listen and check.

do ever every love how to twice

- A: Do you ¹ ever go ² the cinema?
 B: Yes, I ³ . I go ⁴ weekend. ⁵ often do you go to the cinema?
 A: Oh, I ⁶ the cinema. I go ⁷ a week.

5 Complete the sentences so that they are true for you.

- 1 I always
- 2 I sometimes
- 3 I never

19 Wh- questions



- Host: For \$100,000 ... When do Americans celebrate Independence Day? Is it on May 1, June 14 or July 4?
- Contestant: I think it's July 4.
- Host: That's correct. Now, for \$175,000 ... What are the colours of the Jamaican flag? Are they black, gold and green, red, green and gold, red, green and black?
- Contestant: I think it's black, gold and green.
- Host: That's correct. Well done. Now, for \$250,000 ... Where do tigers live? Is it in Africa, in Asia or in Europe?
- Contestant: Er ... is it Africa?

Presentation

Verb to be

What	is	the capital of Ecuador?
	are	the colours of the Jamaican flag?

Other verbs

Where	do	tigers you they	live?
	does	he she it	

Question words

- Where do you live?
When is your birthday?
What is your name?
Which one do you like?
Why do you like the blue one?
Who do you live with?
How do you spell your name?
What time do you start work?
How long is this river?
How high is Mount Everest?
How many do you want?
How often do you go to the cinema?

Exercises

1 Choose the correct words.

- 1 Where do / does you live?
- 2 What is / are the capital of Sweden?
- 3 What time do / does she start work?
- 4 What is / are your name?
- 5 Who do / does they live with?

- 6 How many do / does he want?
- 7 How long is / are this film?
- 8 Which one do / does your brother like?
- 9 When is / are his birthday?
- 10 What do / does his sister do?

2 Complete the quiz with question words. Then do the quiz and check your answers below.

Quiz

1 _____ does the President of the USA live?
A in the White House **B** in the Green House **C** in the White Palace

2 _____ do penguins live?
A in the Arctic **B** in the Antarctic **C** in the UK

3 _____ high is Mount Everest?
A 7,532 metres **B** 8,848 metres **C** 9,321 metres

4 _____ does your brain stop growing?
A at 13 years old **B** at 15 years old **C** at 18 years old

5 _____ of these is a hexagon?
A **B** **C**

6 _____ is the capital of Ecuador?
A La Paz **B** Lima **C** Quito

7 _____ long do elephants live?
A 35 years **B** 70 years **C** 100 years

8 _____ is Luke Skywalker's father?
A Darth Vader **B** Chewbacca **C** Yoda

9 _____ do bats sleep?
A at night **B** in the day **C** at the weekend

10 _____ does 'aloha' mean in Hawaiian?
A hello **B** goodbye **C** hello or goodbye

Answers: 1A 2B 3B 4A 5C 6C 7B 8A 9B 10C

3 Match the questions to the answers.

- | | | |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1 How long do you sleep at night? | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 9 | a In London. |
| 2 What do you do in the evening? | <input type="checkbox"/> | b Half past twelve. |
| 3 What do you have for breakfast? | <input type="checkbox"/> | c I watch television. |
| 4 What time do you have lunch? | <input type="checkbox"/> | d In a bank. |
| 5 Where do you have lunch? | <input type="checkbox"/> | e In a restaurant. |
| 6 Where do you live? | <input type="checkbox"/> | f Toast and coffee. |
| 7 Where do you work? | <input type="checkbox"/> | g Eight hours. |

4 1.24 Write questions about Yuko. Then listen and check.

- 1 What time does she have breakfast? At eight o'clock.
 2 _____ study? In the morning.
 3 _____ for lunch? A sandwich.
 4 _____ afternoon? She plays golf.
 5 _____ dinner? In a restaurant.
 6 _____ television in the evening? For two hours.



20 Review of units 16 to 19

Grammar

- 1 Look at Bill's sentences. Then write about Chantal using the words in brackets.



Bill



Chantal

- 1 I live in London. (Paris)
She lives in Paris.
- 2 I work in a school. (a bank)
- 3 I start work at nine o'clock. (eight)
- 4 I finish work at half past four. (six)
- 5 I have sandwiches for lunch. (sushi)
- 6 I study French. (English)
- 7 I play football. (tennis)
- 8 I watch television every day. (never)
- 9 I never go to the opera. (once a month)
- 10 I love rock music. (hate)
- 11 I sleep ten hours every night. (six)
- 12 I don't often eat in restaurants. (often)

- 2 Write Chantal's answers to the questions.

1 Do you live in Paris?

Yes, I do.

2 Does Bill live in Paris?

No, he doesn't.

3 Do you like rock music?

4 Does Bill like rock music?

5 Do you ever eat in restaurants?

6 Do you like sushi?

7 Does Bill work in a school?

8 Do you watch television?

9 Does Bill go to the opera?

10 Does Bill play football?

- 3 Complete the sentences with **do**, **does**, **don't** or **doesn't**.

1 Does your uncle like jazz?

2 Bill live in Paris – he lives in London.

3 I like Japanese food but I like sushi.

4 Where you live?

5 What time Chantal start work?

6 I go to the theatre. I prefer the cinema.

7 Marc play tennis?

8 How often he play tennis?

9 How long you have for lunch?

10 you like football?

11 What you have for breakfast?

12 Anne eat pasta.

4 Put the words in order.

- 1 but like hip-hop I I prefer rock
I like hip-hop but I prefer rock.
- 2 always cinema go Monday on the to we
- 3 doesn't often she television watch
- 4 don't I jazz like
- 5 a bank my in in sister Paris works
- 6 at half Jim starts nine past work
- 7 play I a once tennis week
- 8 do ever go the theatre to you ?

5 Choose the correct pronouns.

- 1 I/ Me like she / her but she / her doesn't like I / me.
- 2 We / Us don't like he / him and he / him doesn't like we / us.
- 3 They / Them like I / me and I / me like they / them.

6 Write the question words.

- 1 When is Martin's birthday?
- 2 Where are you from?
- 3 What time do you get up?
- 4 Who one does she prefer?
- 5 Who is that man over there?

Pronunciation: /s/, /z/ or /ɪz/

7 1.25 Listen to the final s in these verbs.

/s/ works /z/ lives /ɪz/ finishes

Listen and tick /s/, /z/ or /ɪz/.

1 plays	/s/	/z/	✓	/ɪz/
2 watches	/s/	/z/		/ɪz/
3 does	/s/	/z/		/ɪz/
4 eats	/s/	/z/		/ɪz/
5 studies	/s/	/z/		/ɪz/

Vocabulary

8 Complete with go, play or have.

- 1 play football
- 2 go to the theatre
- 3 have a break
- 4 have lunch
- 5 play golf
- 6 go to the cinema
- 7 have dinner
- 8 go to the opera
- 9 have breakfast

9 Match to make five words for people in your life.

- | | | |
|--------|--------|---------|
| 1 bro | ents | brother |
| 2 girl | er | |
| 3 par | ther | |
| 4 moth | dren | |
| 5 chil | friend | |

10 Complete the table with the words in the box.

banker	chef	doctor
nurse	teacher	waiter

bank	hospital	restaurant	school
1 banker	2 _____	4 _____	6 _____
	3 _____	5 _____	

Listen again

11 1.26 Listen and write the questions.

1 What time does she have breakfast?

2 _____

3 _____

4 _____

5 _____

6 _____

21 can (ability)

Adverbs of manner



Presentation

Use *can* to describe ability.

Affirmative and negative

I / You / He / She / It / We / They	can	play ...
	can't (cannot)	

Questions

Can I / you / he / she / it / we / they play ...?

Short answers

Yes, I can.

No, I can't.

Adverbs of manner

- Use adverbs of manner to talk about how we do something:

He can play the guitar really well.

She can't run very fast.

- Put the adverb of manner at the end of the sentence.

Say He can play the saxophone really well.

He can play really well.

(don't say *He can play really well the saxophone.*)

Can is a modal verb. This means no third person *s*.

Say *He can play the guitar.* (don't say *He cans play the guitar.*)

Key vocabulary Adverbs of manner: (really/very) well/badly/beautifully/fast/slowly not very well = badly

Exercises

1 Match the questions to the answers.

- Can you speak Chinese?
- Can you run fast?
- I can play the guitar. Can you play a musical instrument?
- I can't play the guitar. Can you?
- Can you play golf?

c

- Yes, I can play the saxophone.
- No, but I can swim fast.
- Yes, I can. But not very well.
- No, but I can play tennis.
- No, I can't, but my friend can play really well.

2 Complete the conversations with *can* or *can't*.

Conversation 1

A: I¹ can swim ten kilometres.² you?

B: No, I³ swim but I⁴ run fast.

Conversation 2

C: ⁵ you play the piano?

D: No, I⁶ but I can sing very well.

C: Great.⁷ you sing this song?

Conversation 3

E: My mother and father are from Barcelona. They⁸ speak Catalan.

F: ⁹ you and your brothers speak Catalan?

E: No, we¹⁰ speak it very well. We always speak Spanish.

Conversation 4

G: ¹¹ you play tennis?

H: Yes, I¹² but not very well.¹³ you?

G: No, I¹⁴ . I'm terrible but my sister¹⁵ play really well.

3 Choose the correct forms.

1 (Can) / Can't you play the piano?

2 Can you speak / play Arabic?

3 No, I can / can't.

4 She can't swim very well / not very well.

5 Yes, I can / can't.

6 Can you play the guitar well / not very well?

7 I can / can't run fast but I can swim well.



4 ① 1.27 Write the conversations. Then listen and check.

1 you + speak Spanish? → no: speak Chinese

A: Can you speak Spanish?

B: No, I can't. I can speak Chinese.

4 you + play tennis? → yes: also + play golf

A:

B:

2 they + play the piano? → yes + very well

A:

B:

5 he + speak three languages? → no + but + speak two languages

A:

B:

3 she + run fast? → yes

A:

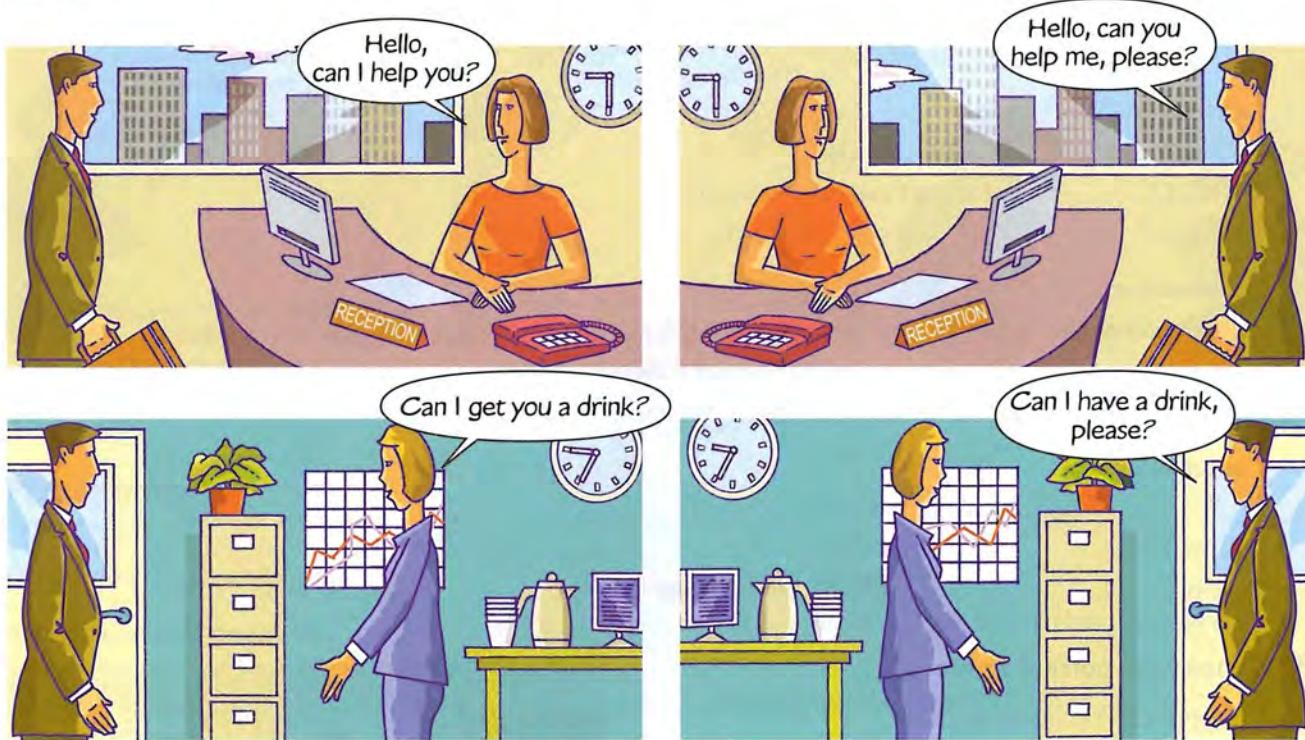
B:

5 Complete the sentences so that they are true for you.

1 I can play but I can't play .

2 I can speak but I can't speak .

22 can (offers and requests)



Presentation

Use *Can I ...?* and *Can you ...?* for offers and requests.

Offers

Can I help (you)?

Can I get you a drink?

Requests

Can I have a drink, please?

Can you help me, please?

Responding to offers and requests

A: Can I help you?

B: Yes, please. / Thanks very much.

A: Can you help me, please?

B: Sure. / Certainly. / Of course. / No, sorry.

TIP Notice *you* and *me* in offers and requests.

Offer: *Can I + verb + you ...?*

Request: *Can you + verb + me ...?*

Key vocabulary Verbs: ask, borrow, buy, close, have, help, get, lend, open, speak (to), use, wait

Exercises

1 Complete the questions with *Can I* or *Can you*. Are they requests or offers? Write R or O.

1 Can I help you?

0

2 help me, please?

3 ask you a question?

4 have a drink?

5 get me a drink?

6 get you a drink?

7 buy you lunch?

8 use your phone?

9 lend me your phone?

10 borrow your phone?

1.28 Write requests or offers. Add possessive adjectives where necessary. Then listen and check.

- 1 I / borrow / car?
- 2 you / speak / to her?
- 3 I / open / the window?
- 4 I / buy / you / lunch?
- 5 you / get / me / a drink?
- 6 I / carry / bag?
- 7 you / help / me?
- 8 you / lend / me / phone?
- 9 I / use / laptop?
- 10 you / answer / the phone?

Can I borrow your car?

Put the conversations in order.

Conversation 1

- Yes, can I speak to Maria Turner, please?
 Yes, thanks very much.
 Hello. Can I help you?
 I'm afraid not. She isn't here today. Can I get her secretary?

Conversation 2

- Can I get you some water?
 Hello, Max. How are you?
 Sure.
 Thanks very much. And can you open the window?
 Fine, but it's very hot today!

Conversation 3

- I don't have any money. Can you buy me lunch today?
 Well, can I borrow some money?
 Sorry, I can't go for lunch today. I don't have time.
 Certainly. How much do you need?
 Can I ask you a question?
 Sure.

Conversation 4

- Yes. Press this button.
 Sure. Here it is.
 Excuse me. Can I use your phone, please?
 Thanks. Sorry, it doesn't work. Can you help me?

Look at the offers and requests. Choose the best responses.

- 1 Can you answer the phone for me? a Sure. b Yes, I can. Do you want me to?
- 2 Can I show you how to use this machine? a Thanks very much. b Yes, you can.
- 3 Can we have a break? a Yes, thanks. b Certainly.
- 4 Can you help me, please? a Of course. b Thanks.
- 5 Can I have a glass of water, please? a No, you can't. b Certainly.
- 6 Can your daughter play the piano? a Yes, she can. b Certainly.
- 7 Can I help you lift this? a Yes, you can. b Yes, thanks.
- 8 I can't play chess. Can you? a No, I can't. b No, thanks.

23 would like + noun (requests and offers)



Waiter: Good evening.

Man: Hello. We'd like a table for two, please.

Waiter: Certainly. Would you like a table near the window?

Woman: Yes, please.

Man: Would you like some wine?

Woman: No, thanks. I'd like some water, please.

Man: Would you like a dessert?

Woman: No, thanks. I'd like a cup of coffee.

Presentation

Use *would like + noun* for polite requests and offers.

Requests

I'd like	a table for two.
We'd like	a cup of coffee.
	some water.

Offers

Would you like	a table near the window?
	a dessert?
	some water?

Responses

Certainly. / Sure.

Responses

Yes, please.

No, thanks.

TIP I'd = I would

We'd = We would

TIP Don't say *No, I wouldn't*. It isn't polite.

Key vocabulary In a restaurant: waiter, table, the menu, the bill, order (food)

Food and drink: cheese, (a cup of) coffee, dessert, green salad, ice cream, soup, water, wine

Exercises

1 **1.29** Complete the conversations with the words in the box. Then listen and check.

Certainly I'd like please thanks we'd like Would Would you like

Conversation 1

Waiter: Good evening. My name's Mario and I'm your waiter.

Customer: Hello.

Waiter: ¹ Would you like the wine menu?

Customer: Yes, ² And ³ some water, please.

Waiter: ⁴

Conversation 2

Customer: Excuse me, we'd like to order now.

Waiter: Sure.

Customer: ⁵ _____ like some soup and he'd like a green salad.

Waiter: Certainly. ⁶ _____ you like some wine?

Customer: No, ⁷ _____. But I'd ⁸ _____ a cup of tea, please.

2 Put the words in order.

1 like please soup I'd some I'd like some soup, please.

2 you like would the menu?

3 like I'd coffee some

4 you some would bread like?

5 we'd please like some water

6 I'd bill like please the

3 ⑥ 1.30 Write offers and responses for each picture. Then listen and check.



1 A: Would you like a cup of coffee?

B: No, thanks. I'd like the bill, please.

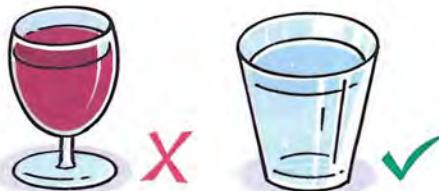


2 A:

B:

4 A:

B:



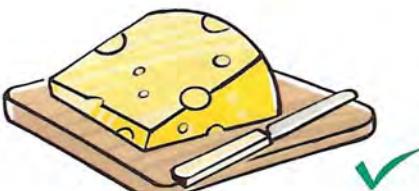
5 A:

B:



3 A:

B:



6 A:

B:

24 Imperative

New Message

To: Susie
Subject: Directions to my house
From: Tessa Attached: map.jpg

Hi Susie
I'm happy you can come to my party. My house is near yours. Go straight to Wellbeck Street and turn right. Don't cross the street but stop at the second traffic lights and turn left. My house is number 3 on Millen Road.
For help, print this map.

Tessa
PS Please bring a friend!

Presentation

Use the imperative for ...

- giving directions: *Go straight to ..., Turn left at the traffic lights.*
- orders: *Stop! Go! Be quiet!*
- instructions: *Print (this map). Send an email.*
- requests and offers (informal): *Bring a friend. Come in. Take a seat. Have a drink.*

TIP You can use the imperative for requests and offers to friends. You can add *Please:*
Please bring a friend. Please come in.

Affirmative

Turn left.
Go straight.

Negative

Don't turn left.
Don't stop.

TIP Say *Stop!* (don't say *You stop!*)

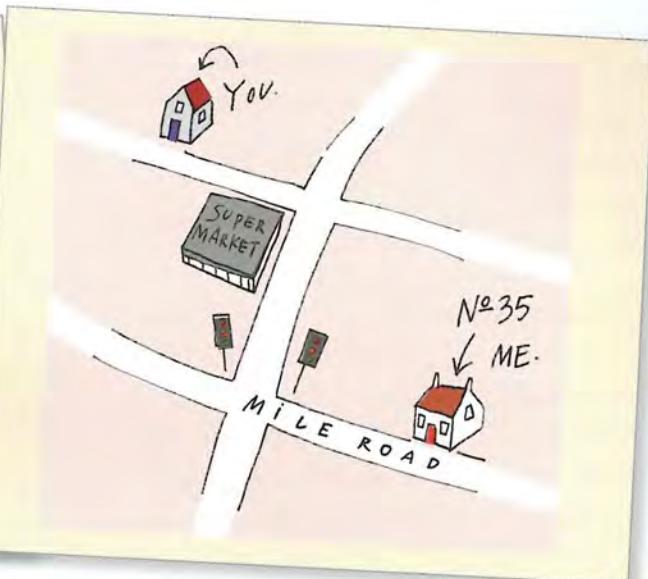
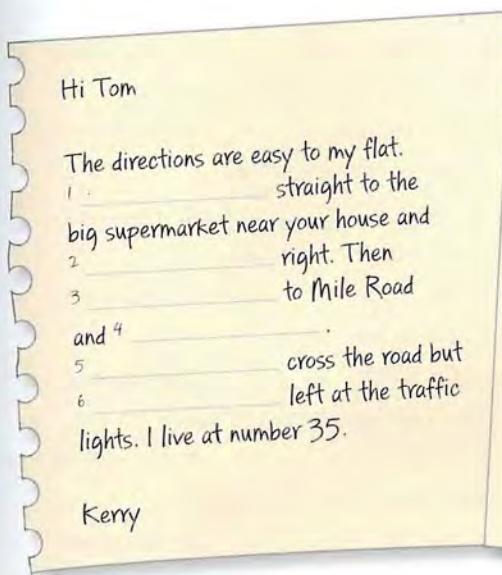
Key vocabulary Directions: turn left/right, go straight, cross (the road)

Places in town: road, sign, street, supermarket, traffic lights, map

Exercises

- 1 ⑥ 1.31 Look at the map. Complete the directions with the words in the box. Then listen and check.

don't go go stop turn turn



- 2 Match the orders to the signs.

a Don't smoke. b Stop. c Go. d Don't turn right. e Don't walk. f Don't take photographs.



1 b



2 c



3 d



4 f



5 a



6 e

- 3 Match 1–10 to a–j.

- 1 Come in!
2 Where's the supermarket?
3 It's expensive.
4 The traffic light is red.
5 This exercise is difficult.
6 It's hot in here.
7 I'm thirsty.
8 There's a map with the email.
9 It's late.
10 I haven't got a pen.

c

- a Go to bed!
b Please open the window.
c Take a seat.
d Turn left and it's in front of you.
e Stop.
f Lend me yours, please.
g Don't buy it.
h Have some water.
i Print it.
j Please help me.

25 Review of units 21 to 24

Grammar

1 Complete the requests and offers with *you* or *me*.

- 1 Can I help you?
- 2 Would like a table for two?
- 3 Can I get a drink?
- 4 Get a drink, please.
- 5 Can lend your mobile phone?
- 6 Excuse . Can I speak to Laura?
- 7 Can you help ?
- 8 Can I buy lunch?
- 9 Would like the bill now?
- 10 Can I ask a question?

2 Correct the mistakes.

- 1 He cans play the piano.
He can play the piano.
- 2 I don't can sing well.
- 3 Do you would like the menu?

- 4 Does he can play tennis?

- 5 Stops at the traffic lights!

- 6 She can fast run.

- 7 I like some water, please.

- 8 The light is red. Stops!

- 9 Come in. Take a seat. You have a drink!

- 10 Turn right! Don't to turn left!

3 Choose the correct responses.

- 1 I'd like a menu, please.
a Of course. ✓ b Yes, I'd like.
- 2 Would you like some water?
a No, thanks. b No, I would.
- 3 Can you speak English?
a Yes, I speak. b Yes, I can.
- 4 Can I borrow your car?
a Yes, I can. b No, sorry.
- 5 Can you help me?
a Certainly. b Excuse me.
- 6 Can you play the saxophone?
a Well. b No, not very well.
- 7 Would you like some soup?
a Yes, I'd like. b Yes, please.
- 8 Can you help?
a Sure. b Yes, please.
- 9 We'd like this table, please.
a No, thanks. b Certainly.
- 10 Can I get you a drink?
a Thanks very much. b Yes, I can.

4 Write R (request), O (offer), D (direction) or Or (order).

- 1 Can I borrow your map? R

- 2 Would you like lunch? O

- 3 Be quiet! D

- 4 Turn left at the supermarket. D

- 5 Stop! R

- 6 Can you stop? R

- 7 Can I get you a drink? R

- 8 Don't cross at the traffic lights. R

- 9 Go now! R

- 10 Please bring some wine. O

5 Find three sentences.

1 I can you help me please bring a friend
I can.

Can you help me, please?

Please bring a friend.

2 can you give me a drink please go

3 no I can't play the piano please

4 can you lend me your phone me at ten o'clock

5 yes I would not like a dessert thank you very much

Vocabulary

7 Circle the word that is different.

- 1 guitar piano saxophone sing
- 2 well badly beautiful slowly
- 3 please ask borrow lend
- 4 waiter map menu bill
- 5 cheese coffee dessert green salad
- 6 road sign right traffic lights

8 Choose the correct verbs.

- 1 Can you *sing / speak* Chinese?
- 2 How well can you *run / play* tennis?
- 3 Can I *lend / borrow* your car?
- 4 *Open / Close* the window! It's very cold.
- 5 Can I *get / have* you a tea or coffee?
- 6 Can I *ask / speak* to the manager, please?
- 7 We *like / 'd like* some water, please.
- 8 *Turn / Cross* left at the supermarket.
- 9 *Turn / Go* straight to the end of the street.
- 10 *Go / Cross* the road at the traffic lights.

Listen again

9 ①1.32 Listen and tick (✓) what they would like.



Menu

- soup
bread and cheese
green salad
ice cream

Drinks

- water
wine
tea
coffee

Pronunciation: strong and weak forms of *can*

6 ①1.32 Listen to the pronunciation of *can* and *can't* in these sentences.

/kæn/ /ka:nt/ /kən/

Can you sing? I can't play the piano. I can sing.
Yes, I can.

Now listen to five sentences and tick the pronunciation you hear.

- | | | |
|---------|-----------|-------|
| 1 /kæn/ | /ka:nt/ ✓ | /kən/ |
| 2 /kæn/ | /ka:nt/ | /kən/ |
| 3 /kæn/ | /ka:nt/ | /kən/ |
| 4 /kæn/ | /ka:nt/ | /kən/ |
| 5 /kæn/ | /ka:nt/ | /kən/ |

26 Comparatives



Presentation

Use the comparative form to compare two things.

Adjective	Comparative
young	younger
fast	faster
beautiful	more beautiful
expensive	less expensive

Regular adjectives

Add **-er** to short adjectives: *younger, faster ...*

Use *more/less* with long adjectives: *more beautiful, less expensive ...*

Irregular adjectives

Some adjectives are irregular.

Adjective	Comparative
good	better
bad	worse

than

You often use *than* after the comparative adjective: *My car is faster than your car.*

Key spelling rules

- Double the last consonant + **-er** for some one-syllable adjectives: *hot* → *hotter*, *big* → *bigger* ...
- Change *y* to *i*: *happy* → *happier*, *angry* → *angrier* ...

See page 233: Spelling rules

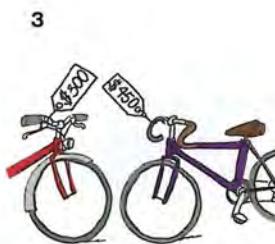
Key vocabulary Adjectives: young/old, fast/slow, cheap/expensive, big/small, good/bad, hot/cold, long/short, tall/short, boring/interesting, dangerous, safe, beautiful, happy (*short* is the opposite of *long* and *tall*)

Exercises

1 Complete the sentences with the comparative form of the adjectives in brackets.

- 1 Your car is faster (fast) than mine.
- 2 My brother is older (old) than me.
- 3 I can buy a laptop – they're cheaper (cheap) now.
- 4 A bicycle is more expensive (expensive) than a car.
- 5 South Africa is hotter (hot) than Iceland.
- 6 I speak good English, but hers is better (good).
- 7 He's happier (happy) because it's the holiday.
- 8 You are more beautiful (beautiful) than ever!
- 9 It's safest (safe) to travel by train than by car.

2 Look at the pictures and write comparative sentences.



- 1 motorbike / fast / bicycle

A motorbike is faster than a bicycle.

- 2 she / tall / him

- 3 red bike / expensive / blue bike

- 4 her book / interesting / his book

3 Read the sentences. Then write two sentences to compare the information.

- 1 Karen's twenty-nine. Tom's thirty.

Karen's younger than Tom. Tom's older than Karen.

- 2 The Mississippi River is 3,733 kilometres. The Amazon River is 6,712 kilometres.

- 3 My flat is 1,000 m². Your house is 1,500 m².

- 4 Today, the temperature in Rome is 21°C. London is 5°C.

27 Superlatives

Animal quiz

Can you answer these questions about animals?

- 1 Which is the heaviest animal in the world?
A Blue Whale B Elephant C Giraffe
- 2 Which is the fastest animal on land?
A Snake B Cheetah C Crocodile
- 3 Which is the slowest animal on land?
A Elephant B Tortoise C Crocodile
- 4 Which is the loudest animal in the world?
A Blue Whale B Elephant C Crocodile
- 5 Which animal has the longest life?
A Elephant B Giraffe C Tortoise
- 6 Which animal is the most dangerous?
A Crocodile B Blue Whale C Tortoise

Answers: 1A 2B 3B 4A 5C 6A

Presentation

Use the superlative form to compare three or more things.

Adjective	Superlative
fast	fastest
heavy	heaviest
loud	loudest
dangerous	most dangerous

the

You use **the** before the superlative:
Blue whales are the heaviest animals.

Regular adjectives

Add **-est** to short adjectives: *fastest, heaviest ...*

Use *most/least* with long adjectives: *most dangerous, least expensive ...*

Irregular adjectives

Adjective	Superlative
good	best
bad	worst

Key vocabulary Animals: blue whale, cheetah, crocodile, elephant, giraffe, snake, tortoise

Exercises

1 Complete the sentences with the superlative form of the adjectives in brackets.

- 1 Mr Bao from Mongolia is the tallest (tall) man in the world.
- 2 The shortest (short) woman in the world is 79 centimetres tall.
- 3 The blue whale is the biggest (big) animal in the world.
- 4 I think snakes are the most dangerous (dangerous) animals.
- 5 The River Nile in Egypt is the longest (long) river in the world.
- 6 Damascus in Syria is the oldest (old) city in the world.
- 7 Luxembourg is the safest (safe) city in Europe.
- 8 Moscow is the most expensive (expensive) city in the world.
- 9 Mount Everest is the highest (high) mountain in the world.
- 10 I'm sure elephants are the heaviest (heavy) animals on land.

2 ①.34 Write a comparative and superlative sentence with the adjectives. Then listen and check.

- 1 Animal: tortoise / snake / cheetah (slow)
A snake is slower than a cheetah.
The tortoise is the slowest animal.
- 2 Country: Ethiopia / Italy / Norway (hot)
Italy
Ethiopia
- 3 Ocean: the Pacific Ocean / the Indian Ocean / the Mediterranean Sea (big)
The Indian Ocean
The Pacific Ocean
- 4 Country: Switzerland / India / Russia (small)
India
Switzerland
- 5 Transport: aeroplane / car / bicycle (fast)
A car
The aeroplane

3 Correct the sentences.

- 1 I'm the worst at English in my class.
I'm the worst at English in my class.
- 2 I think Brazil is best football team in the world.
- 3 Snakes are the more dangerous animals in my country.
- 4 I don't think he's a gooder actor than De Niro.
- 5 Your bags are heavy but my bag is the most heavy.

28 Adverbs



Presentation

Use adverbs to talk about how people do something:

They play beautifully.

Do they play any songs quietly?

Regular adverbs

Add *-ly* to an adjective to make an adverb.

Adjective	Adverb
beautiful	beautifully
loud	loudly
quietly	quietly
quick	quickly
bad	badly

Irregular adverbs

Some adjectives and adverbs are irregular. Do not add *-ly*.

Adjective	Adverb
good	well
fast	fast
late	late
early	early
hard	hard

See page 233: Spelling rules

Position of adverbs

The adverb often comes:

- after the object of the sentence: *He plays the saxophone well.*
- after the verb if there is no object: *He can play well.* (don't say *He plays well the saxophone.*)

TIP You can add *really* or *very* to some adverbs: *He plays the drums really loudly. She sings very well.*

Exercises

1 Complete the sentences with the adverb form of the adjectives.

- 1 Your sister sings beautifully (beautiful).
- 2 Why do you play your music loudly (loud)?
- 3 Please work quietly (quiet).
- 4 We're late! You need to walk quickly (quick).
- 5 Play this part of the music slowly (slow).
- 6 That's amazing. You play the guitar really well (good).
- 7 He speaks really fast (fast).
- 8 Jane and Steve are very happy married (happy).
- 9 I play tennis really badly (bad).
- 10 The party will end really late (late).
- 11 My mother and father work really hard (hard).
- 12 I left work early (early).

2 ⑥ 1.35 Choose the correct words. Then listen and check.

- 1 I play the guitar very *bad* / *badly*.
- 2 Her hair is *beautiful* / *beautifully*.
- 3 I can't hear you. Speak *loud* / *loudly* for me, please.
- 4 Close the door *quiet* / *quietly*. Natasha is sleeping.
- 5 Your dog runs *quick* / *quickly*.
- 6 Let's take the train. The bus is very *slow* / *slowly* at this time.
- 7 I'm *happy* / *happily* today. I passed my tests!
- 8 That music is very *loud* / *loudly*!
- 9 You dance really *good* / *well*.
- 10 Our children play *happy* / *happily* in the garden.
- 11 She's a *quiet* / *quietly* girl.
- 12 Eat your food *slow* / *slowly*. There's no hurry.

3 Correct the adverbs.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1 I can swim very <u>fast</u> . | 4 Walk <u>quietly</u> . There's an exam next door. |
| 2 You played that song <u>beautifully</u> . | 5 I speak English very <u>goodly</u> . |
| 3 I want to leave work <u>earlily</u> . | 6 Do you work <u>happylly</u> ? |

4 Complete these sentences so that they are true for you.

- | | | |
|-------------------|--------------|--------|
| 1 I | beautifully. | |
| 2 My friend | quickly. | |
| 3 My teacher | well. | |
| 4 I speak English | . | |
| 5 I | well but I | badly. |

29 Comparative adverbs

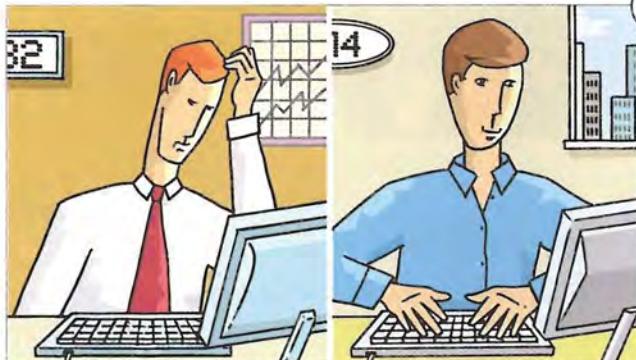
Who is the best employee? Who works harder? Pierre or Paolo?



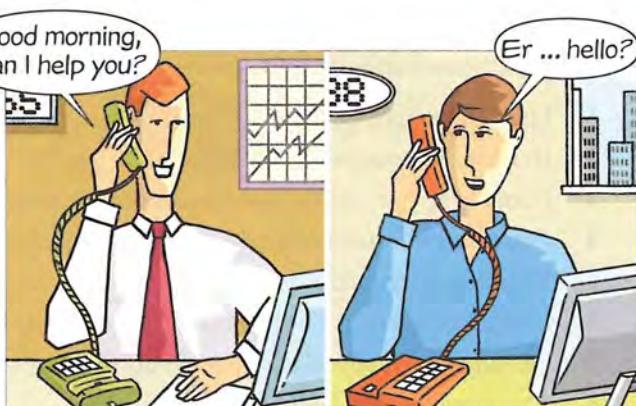
Pierre starts work earlier than Paolo ...



... but Paolo goes home later than Pierre ...



... and Paolo works more quickly than Pierre ...



... but Pierre speaks better English than Paolo.

Presentation

Use comparative adverbs to compare how people do something:

Pierre starts work earlier than Paolo.

Paolo goes home later than Pierre.

With adverbs ending in *-ly*, you usually say *more + -ly*.

With some adverbs (*loud, quick, slow*) you can also add *-er*. This is more informal.

Adverb	Comparative adverb
late	later
early	earlier
hard	harder
fast	faster
loudly	more loudly / louder
quietly	more quietly
quickly	more quickly / quicker
slowly	more slowly / slower
well	better
badly	worse

Exercises

1 Complete the sentences with comparative adverbs.

- 1 I get up later (late) than you.
- 2 He starts work earlier (early) these days.
- 3 I can't sing more slowly (well) than Pavarotti.
- 4 This computer works faster (fast) than the old one.
- 5 Can you drive more slowly, please?
- 6 They work more slowly (hard) than my parents.
- 7 Pierre swims more slowly (well) than Paolo.
- 8 Can you speak more quietly (quiet), please?
- 9 I think girls can shout more loudly (loud) than boys!

2 Read the two sentences. Compare them in two ways.

I get up at 6 a.m. You get up at 7 a.m.

1 You get up later than me.

2 I get up earlier than you.

Michael runs 1 kilometre in 7 minutes 30 seconds. Martin runs 1 kilometre in 6 minutes.

3 Michael

4 Martin

Victoria plays the piano very well. Julia plays it badly.

5 Victoria

6 Julia

3 Put the words in the order.

- a speak you slowly more can?
- b you more can speak loudly?
- c our meeting earlier starts
- d starts later on Tuesdays work he

4 ①.36 Complete the telephone conversation with sentences a-d from exercise 3. Then listen and check.

A: Good morning. Can I help you?

B: Hello. Can I speak to Pierre?

A: Sorry, I can't hear you. ¹ ?

B: I'd like to speak to Pierre, please.

A: Sorry, he isn't here. ² . Can I take a message?

B: Yes, please. My name is Agathe. Can you tell him ³ tomorrow?

A: Sorry. ⁴ ?

B: Sure. Our meeting starts at twelve o'clock, not two o'clock tomorrow.

A: OK. Thanks.

30 Review of units 26 to 29

Grammar

- 1 Complete the adverts with the correct form of the words in the box.

expensive fast good
hard hot well quiet

Is your car slow?

Would you like a¹ faster car than your old one? Is your old car expensive?

Would you like a² car?

OF COURSE YOU WOULD! DRIVE A XT007 TODAY.

For the³ experience on the road!

Translators WANTED

Do you work⁴ than other people?
Can you speak Chinese⁵?

We need translators for our new business in Beijing.



‘My dream holiday has a sun as⁶ as this and there are no people so it’s as⁷ as this. But it isn’t as expensive as this.’

No problem. Just call:

**0800
777 7000**

and book a cheap dream holiday today!

- 2 Correct the mistake in each sentence.

- 1 Can you play golf better ^your brother?
hotter
- 2 The weather today is heter than yesterday.
- 3 Blue whales are biggest animal in the world.
- 4 He’s the hapiest student in my class.
- 5 I run fast than you.
- 6 Is he worser at English than you?
- 7 A tortoise goes slowly than a snail.
- 8 This ice cream is the bestest in town.
- 9 This café is expensive than that one.
- 10 This TV show is funier than the others.

- 3 Complete the adjectives and adverbs.

- 1 My brother is young er than his brother.
2 Is this the heaviest animal in the world?
3 Your children play very quietly.
4 Can you speak more loudly?
5 Paolo gets home late than his friends.
6 You sing really badly!
7 Can you get up earlier tomorrow?
8 Walk more quickly, please.

- 4 Put the words in order.

- 1 bigger London than Edinburgh
London is bigger than Edinburgh.
- 2 the this film other than longer
This film is longer than that one.
- 3 study hard they exams their very well
They study very hard for their exams.

Pronunciation: sentence stress

1.37 Listen and underline the stressed words.

- 1 Whales are bigger than elephants.
- 2 Mike's bigger than Martin.
- 3 English is easier than Maths.
- 4 Your car isn't faster than mine.
- 5 Tom is taller than his brother.
- 6 This is the most expensive car.

Circle the word that is different.

- 1 Animals on land: cheetah giraffe blue whale
- 2 Places to eat and drink:
café restaurant supermarket
- 3 Places to buy things: shop library supermarket
- 4 Transport: office bus underground
- 5 When you get up: late early loudly
- 6 How you sing: slowly well badly
- 7 How you run: quickly early slowly

Vocabulary

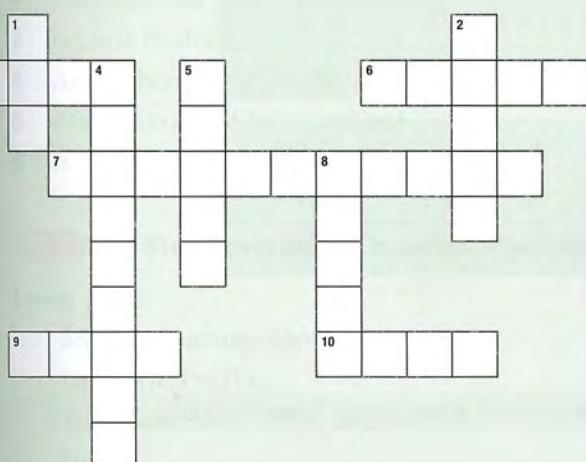
Write opposite adjectives in the crossword.

Across

- 3 bad
- 6 long
- 7 boring
- 9 fast
- 10 quiet

Down

- 1 cold
- 2 old
- 4 safe
- 5 expensive
- 8 big



8 Write the adjectives in exercise 7 in the comparative and superlative form.

Across

- 3 bad - worse - worst
good - better - best

6

7

9

10

Down

1

2

4

5

8

Listen again

9 1.38 Listen and complete the message.



31 Present continuous



Presentation

Use the present continuous (*to be* + *-ing*) to talk about actions right now.

Affirmative and negative

I	'm 'm not	
He	's	
She	isn't	having a shower.
You We They	're aren't	

Key spelling rules

- Most verbs: *read* → *reading*, *sleep* → *sleeping* ...
- Verbs ending consonant + *-e*: *have* → *having*, *come* → *coming* ...

See page 233: Spelling rules

Yes/No questions

Are	you they	
Is	he she	having a shower?

Short answers

Yes,	I	am.
	he / she / it	is.
	you / we / they	are.

Wh- questions

What	are	you they	
Where	is	he she	eating?

No,	I	'm not.
	he / she / it	isn't.
	you / we / they	aren't.

Key vocabulary Verbs: come, cook, have (a shower), play (chess), read, sleep, watch (television/a film)

Exercises

1 Look at the pictures and write sentences. Use the present continuous.



Sam



Catherine and Ali



Antonio and Julia



Lucia



Julia



Mike and Tom

1 Sam (cook). He (have) a shower.

Sam isn't cooking. He's having a shower.

2 Catherine and Ali (watch) television. They (read).

3 Antonio and Julia (cook). They (play) chess.

4 Lucia (read) a book. She (play) chess.

5 Julia (watch) television. She (sleep).

6 Mike and Tom (read). They (cook).

2 Answer the questions about the people in exercise 1.

1 Is Julia cooking?

No, she isn't.

2 Are Mike and Tom playing chess?

Yes, they are.

3 Is Lucia reading?

Yes, she is.

4 Are Catherine and Ali watching television?

Yes, they are.

5 Are Antonio and Julia cooking?

Yes, they are.

6 Is Sam having a shower?

Yes, he is.

3 **1.39** Put the conversation in order. Then listen and check.

Lewis

- Me? I'm watching television.
- Hi, Marie. I'm fine.
- Yes, it's excellent. Come and watch it.
- Hello?
- I'm watching a film.

Marie

- What are you watching?
- Hello, Lewis. It's Marie. How are you?
- What are you doing?
- OK. See you in five minutes.
- Is it any good?

32 Present simple and present continuous

State verbs



Hi,

We're in Greece. The hotel is beautiful. The sun's shining and I'm sitting by the swimming pool. Jack's swimming in the pool and the kids are playing football on the beach. We love it here.

How are things at the office? Are you all working hard?

All the best,

Sarah



All at

Sandford & Son

9 Lockheed Place

Birmingham B78 PZO

UNITED KINGDOM

Presentation

Present simple

Use the present simple to talk about ...

- situations that do not change:
Sarah lives in Birmingham.
- routines:
She travels to work by bus.

Present continuous

Use the present continuous to talk about ...

- temporary situations:
She's staying in a hotel in Greece.
- actions now:
Right now she isn't working. She's on holiday.

State verbs

You don't normally use these verbs in the continuous form: *be, like, love, hate, want*.

Present continuous: key spelling rules

- Verbs ending consonant + vowel + consonant: *sit* → *sitting*, *swim* → *swimming* ...
- Verbs ending consonant + vowel + -y: *stay* → *staying*, *play* → *playing* ...

See Unit 31 and page 233: Spelling rules

Key vocabulary Verbs: boil, cycle, do (your homework), drive, eat, freeze, hate, learn, like, live, love, make (friends), play, sit, smoke, start, stay, study, swim, take (the train), turn off, want, watch (TV), work (hard), write (to somebody)

ercises

Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use the present simple or present continuous of the verbs.

- 1 Helen works (work) in the hospital from Monday to Friday.
- 2 She isn't working (not work) at the moment. It's Saturday and she is reading (read) a book in the garden.
- 3 She usually cycles (cycle) to work.
- 4 Today she isn't cycling (not cycle) to work because it is raining (rain). She is driving (drive) her car to the hospital.



Choose the correct forms.

- 1 Tigers live/lives are living in India.
- 2 Usually I drive / 'm driving to the office, but this week I take / 'm taking the train.
- 3 Oh, no! It rains / 's raining again.
- 4 No, thank you. I don't smoke / 'm not smoking.
- 5 A: Do you like / Are you liking opera?
B: Yes, I do. / am.
- 6 A: What do you do / are you doing?
B: I write / 'm writing to my parents.
- 7 A: Is the tea ready?
B: Almost. The water boils / 's boiling.
- 8 Water freezes / 's freezing at 0°C.
- 9 We always go / 're always going to the cinema at the weekend.
- 10 It rains / 's raining a lot in Scotland.
- 11 I speak / 'm speaking German but not very well.
- 12 Ssh! I watch / 'm watching a film.
- 13 I have / 'm having lunch with my grandparents every Sunday.
- 14 Ari can't come out. She does / 's doing her homework.
- 15 Turn off the TV. Nobody watches / 's watching it.
- 16 Do you want / Are you wanting tea or coffee?

1.40 Marcia is studying Italian in Rome. Complete her email to her parents.

Use the present simple or present continuous of the verbs. Then listen and check.

New Message

Hi,

Rome is fantastic. I ¹ 'm having (have) a great time and I ² (learn) (learn) a lot of Italian. School ³ (start) (start) at 09:30 every day. We ⁴ (study) (study) for four hours, then we ⁵ (have) (have) lunch. The classes ⁶ (be) (be) excellent. I ⁷ (have) (have) lunch right now. I ⁸ (sit) (sit) in a beautiful café in Piazza di Spagna. I ⁹ (eat) (eat) pasta and I ¹⁰ (do) (do) my homework. The other students ¹¹ (be) (be) very nice – I ¹² (make) (make) a lot of new friends.

See you soon,

Marcia

33 Present continuous (for future arrangements)



Man: Are you free on Saturday morning?
Woman: No, I'm not. I'm seeing Anne.
Man: What are you doing in the afternoon?
Woman: I'm playing tennis in the park but I'm not doing anything in the evening.



Presentation

You can use the present continuous to talk about personal plans and future arrangements. You often mention the time and/or place.

Key vocabulary Time references: in the morning/afternoon/evening, all day, at the weekend, next week

Exercises

1 1.41 Put the conversation in order. Then listen and check.

- On the Beach 2. It starts at eight o'clock.
- I'm not doing anything. Why?
- We're going to the cinema. Would you like to come?
- What are you doing on Friday?
- Yes, please. What film are you seeing?

2 Write sentences about their plans for next week. Use the present continuous.

1 I / see Anne / Monday morning

I'm seeing Anne on Monday morning.

2 I / go to the cinema / Tuesday evening

3 Louise / not have lunch with Rita / Sunday

4 Max / go to the beach / Friday morning

5 Where / you have dinner / Wednesday evening?

6 Who / they meet / Monday morning?

Imagine this is your diary. Match the questions to the answers.

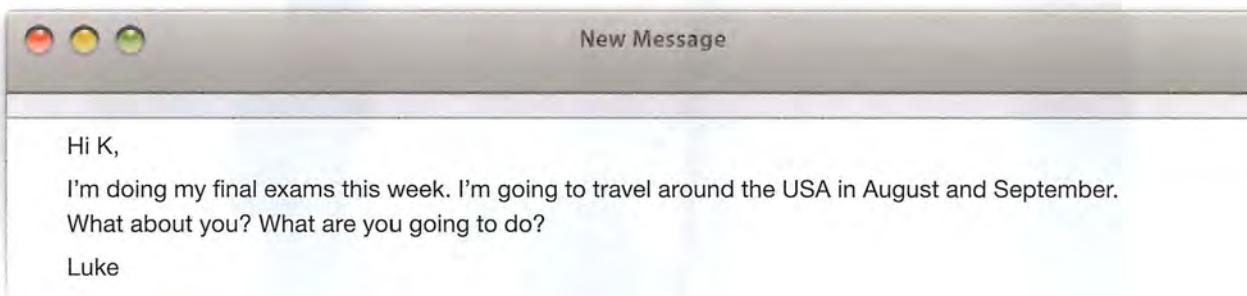


- | | | |
|--|----------------------------|--|
| 1 Are you free on Monday morning? | <input type="checkbox"/> g | a Yes, I am, but I'm playing tennis in the afternoon. |
| 2 Who are you going to the beach with? | <input type="checkbox"/> | b Jamal and I are going to the cinema. Would you like to come? |
| 3 Are you playing football at the weekend? | <input type="checkbox"/> | c Superman. |
| 4 Are you seeing Rosa next week? | <input type="checkbox"/> | d Yes, I am. We're playing on Sunday afternoon. |
| 5 What are you doing on Saturday? | <input type="checkbox"/> | e On Friday. |
| 6 What are you doing on Tuesday evening? | <input type="checkbox"/> | f Laura. |
| 7 What film are you seeing? | <input type="checkbox"/> | g No, I'm not. I'm going shopping with Ali. |
| 8 Are you free on Wednesday morning? | <input type="checkbox"/> | h I'm not seeing Jenna this week. |
| 9 When are you going to the beach? | <input type="checkbox"/> | i Yes, I am. I'm having dinner with her on Wednesday. |
| 10 When are you seeing Jenna? | <input type="checkbox"/> j | j I'm not doing anything all day. |

Look at the diary again. Complete the questions for these answers.

- 1 What _____ are you doing on _____ Wednesday afternoon?
I'm playing tennis with Dale.
- 2 Who _____ Wednesday evening?
Rosa.
- 3 When _____ ?
On Sunday.
- 4 What _____ ?
Nothing.
- 5 Where _____ Friday?
To the beach.
- 6 When _____ with Ali?
On Monday morning.

34 going to



Presentation

Use *going to* for future intentions. It is similar to the present continuous.

Affirmative and negative

I	'm 'm not		
He She	's isn't	going to	travel around the USA.
You We They	're aren't		

Yes/No questions

Are you going to travel around the USA?

Short answers

Yes, I am.

No, I'm not.

Wh- questions

What are you going to do?

Key vocabulary Education: university, primary school, college, exam

Exercises

1 What are they going to do in the summer? Answer the questions.



- 1 What's Mike going to do?
- 2 What's Julia going to do?
- 3 What are George and Morry going to do?
- 4 What's Nicola going to do?

He's going to travel around the USA.

2 Answer the questions.

- 1 Is Mike going to travel around the USA? Yes, he is.
- 2 Are George and Morry going to have a holiday?
- 3 Is Mike going to learn to drive?
- 4 Is Julia going to work in a laboratory?
- 5 Are George and Morry going to travel around the USA?

3 Complete the conversation with *going to* and the verbs in brackets.

- Richard: ¹ (we book) a taxi tonight?
Sally: No. It's OK. Michelle ² (drive) us there.
Richard: But she ³ (not know) anyone at the party.
Sally: I know. She isn't coming to the party. She ⁴ (meet) a friend in town so she ⁵ (take) us.
Richard: Oh, I see.

4 ①.42 Complete the conversation with *going to* and the verbs in the box. Then listen and check.

do do stay travel teach work

- Jeff: What ¹ are you going to do in the summer, Teresa?
Teresa: Alec and I ² English in Africa.
Jeff: How long ³ there?
Teresa: Six weeks. We ⁴ in a primary school in Sudan.
What ⁵ , Jeff?
Jeff: I ⁶ around Europe.

5 Put the words in order.

- 1 are do going in the summer to what you ? What are you going to do in the summer?
- 2 a I'm going have holiday not to
- 3 a in going I'm laboratory to work
- 4 are going study to what you ?
- 5 Physics going I'm study to
- 6 are study what to after you going university ?

6 There is one word missing in each sentence. Write it in.

- 1 I ^m going to buy a new jacket.
- 2 We're going leave at three o'clock.
- 3 Maggie is to get a job in the college.
- 4 They're going to home after school.
- 5 He going to meet us there?
- 6 When are you going have lunch?
- 7 I think it going to snow tonight.
- 8 Are Jemima and Hugo to work in an office?

35 Review of units 31 to 34

Grammar

- 1 What are they doing? Look at the pictures and write sentences.



1 He's playing tennis.

2 _____

3 _____

4 _____

5 _____

6 _____

- 2 Write the sentences in exercise 1 in the negative form.

1 He isn't playing tennis.

2 _____

3 _____

4 _____

5 _____

6 _____

- 3 Write sentences about your plans. Use the present continuous of go, have or play.

Monday	1 tennis, Jules
Tuesday	2 cinema, Mazda
Wednesday	3 beach, my mum
Thursday	4 library, Sarah
Friday	5 dinner, Joe
Saturday	6 shopping, Nicky
Sunday	7 lunch, my family

1 On Monday I'm playing tennis with Jules.

2 _____

3 _____

4 _____

5 _____

6 _____

7 _____

- 4 Look at the diary again. Complete the questions.

- 1 What _____ are you doing on Monday ?
I'm playing tennis.
- 2 Who _____ ?
Jules.
- 3 What _____ ?
I'm going to the beach.
- 4 Where _____ ?
We're going to the library.
- 5 When _____ ?
I'm seeing him on Friday.
- 6 Who _____ ?
Nicky.
- 7 What _____ ?
I'm having lunch with my family.

5 What are they going to do? Write sentences.



1 I / read my emails
I'm going to read my emails.

2 I / phone my mum

3 He / have a piano lesson

4 She / study in the library

5 We / play tennis

6 They / go shopping

8 Complete the conversation with the phrases in the box.

Are you free on Saturday evening?
Can I call you back? Is it any good?
It's excellent.

Clive: Hi. John.¹ _____

John: I'm not sure. Why?

Clive: We're going to the cinema. We're going to see *Brain Dead 2*.

John: ² _____

Clive: ³ _____

John: I think I'm free. ⁴ _____

Clive: Sure.

9 Match 1–6 to a–f to complete her plans.

- 1 First of all, she's going to study c
 2 Then she's going to live in
 3 In Paris she's going to work
 4 She's going to stay with
 5 After that, she's going to travel
 6 Then she's going to come

a a French family. d home.

b around Australia. e in a bank.

c French for six months. f Paris for a year.

Pronunciation: contractions

6 1.43 Listen to six sentences. How many words do you hear? Contracted forms (*I'm*, *aren't*, *isn't*) count as one word.

1 3 4
2 5
3 6

Vocabulary

7 Complete with *have* or *play*.

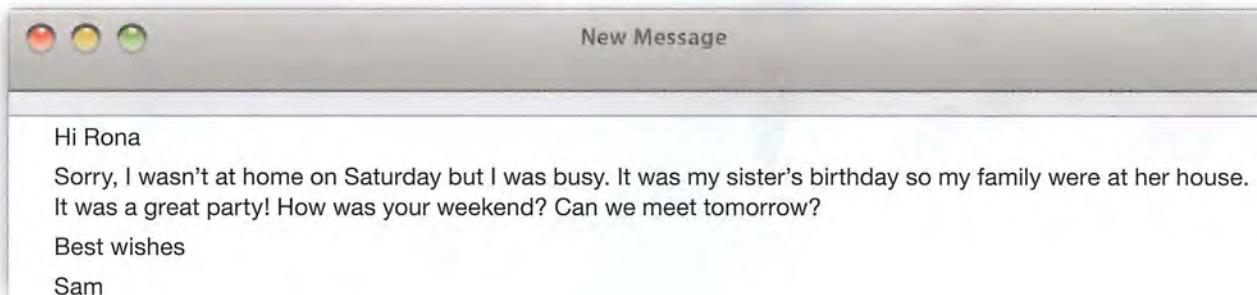
1 play the piano
2 tennis with somebody
3 lunch with somebody
4 a shower
5 basketball
6 dinner with somebody
7 the guitar
8 chess
9 a great time

Listen again

10 1.44 Listen and complete the conversation.

- A: What ¹ _____ Friday?
 B: I ² _____ anything. Why?
 A: We ³ _____ cinema.
 Would you like to come?
 B: Yes, please. What ⁴ _____ seeing?
 A: *On the Beach 2*. It ⁵ _____ o'clock.

36 was/were



Presentation

Use *was/were* to talk about the past.

Present	Past
am/is	was
are	were

Affirmative

I / He / She / It	was	busy.
You / We / They	were	

Yes/No questions

Was	I / he / she / it	at the party?
Were	you / we / they	

Negative

I / He / She / It	wasn't	at home on Saturday.
You / We / They	weren't	

Short answers

Yes,	I / he / she / it	was.
	you / we / they	were.

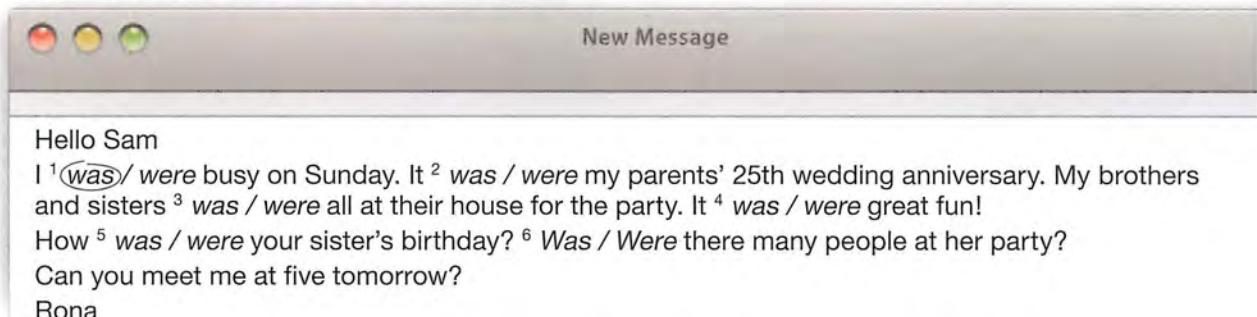
No,	I / he / she / it	wasn't.
	you / we / they	weren't.

Key vocabulary Time references: yesterday, last night, on Saturday, last year, in 1999

Special days: birthday, party, wedding, anniversary

Exercises

1 Read the email. Choose the correct forms.



2 Read about George's parents and Yukio's twin brothers. Are sentences 1–8 true (T) or false (F)?



My father and mother were born in 1957. He was from the USA but they were at Oxford University in England and their wedding was in England. Last year was their 25th wedding anniversary.

My brothers were born on 25th October, 1989. They were both at school at the same time but they weren't at the same university. Last week they were both twenty-one years old. There was a big party at our house for them.

- 1 George's parents were born in the same year. _____
- 2 They were from the USA. _____
- 3 His mother was at Oxford University. _____
- 4 Their wedding was last year. _____
- 5 Yukio's brothers were born on the same day. _____
- 6 They weren't at the same school. _____
- 7 Their twenty-first birthday was last week. _____
- 8 It wasn't a big party. _____

3 **1.45** Complete the conversations with **was**, **were**, **wasn't** or **weren't**. Then listen and check.

Conversation 1

- A: Hello, Nancy. How ¹ _____ your weekend?
B: Great! Mike and I ² _____ in New York.
A: That's amazing!
B: It ³ _____ my birthday.
A: Happy Birthday!

Conversation 2

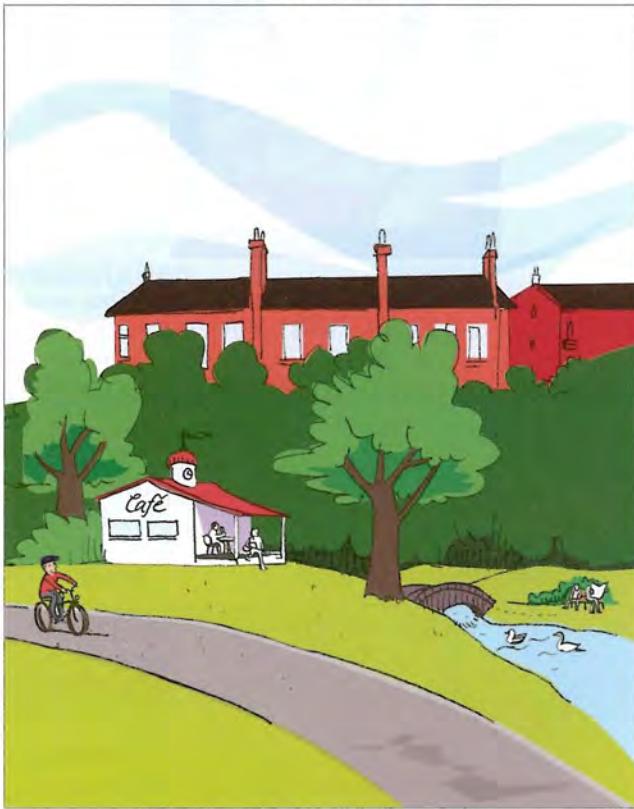
- C: ⁴ _____ James here this morning?
D: No, he ⁵ _____.
C: Where ⁶ _____ he?
D: I think he ⁷ _____ in a meeting with Sue and Rona. They ⁸ _____ in Sue's office.
C: No, they ⁹ _____ because I was with Sue in her office all morning!

Conversation 3

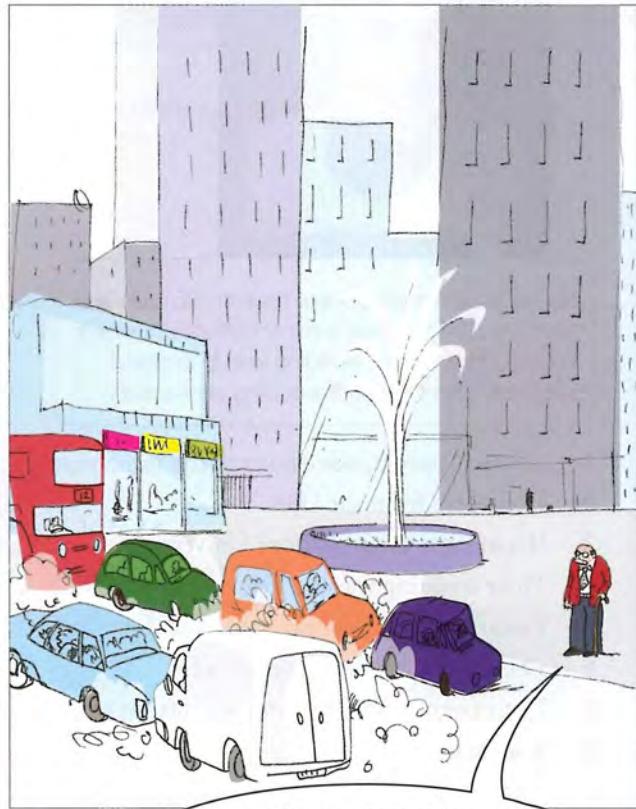
- E: How ¹⁰ _____ your sister's wedding?
F: Really good!
E: ¹¹ _____ it big?
F: No, there ¹² _____ many people, just family and good friends.

37 There was/were

When I was a child ...



Now



When I was a child,
there was a park and a river with a bridge
across it. I think there was a café on the left
and there were some trees and houses
behind it. And twenty years ago there weren't
these shops and the road in front wasn't
busy with all these cars.

Presentation

Affirmative and negative

	was wasn't	a	park.
There	were	some	
	weren't	any	houses.

Yes/No questions

Was	there	a	park?
Were		any	houses?

Short answers

Yes, there was/were.

No, there wasn't/weren't.

Key vocabulary Places in town: park, shop, café, road, cinema, pedestrian crossing, playground, bridge, skyscraper
Location: in front, behind, on the left/right, near here, next to, in the middle, across

Exercises

1 Complete the sentences with **there was**, **there were**, **there wasn't** or **there weren't**.

- 1 There was a cinema next to the post office.
- 2 When I was a boy, there were three houses here. Now it's an office block.
- 3 A: Was there a busy road here?
B: No, there wasn't. It was quiet.
- 4 There was a shop but there was a café.
- 5 A: Were there houses or skyscrapers?
B: When I was here two years ago, I think there were some skyscrapers.
- 6 A: Were there any trees next to the pond?
B: No, there weren't.

2 Look at the pictures and answer the questions.

Two years ago



Now



- 1 Was there a road here?
- 2 Was there a market in the square?
- 3 Was there a café next to the bank?
- 4 Were there any shops on the left?
- 5 Were there two restaurants on the right?
- 6 Was there a pedestrian crossing?
- 7 Was there an Indian restaurant?

Yes, there was.

No, there wasn't. There were cars.

3 Match 1–8 to a–h.

- 1 Was there a café
- 2 When I was a student, there
- 3 Last year there were
- 4 Two years ago, I
- 5 When I was child,
- 6 Were there
- 7 Was
- 8 Was there a shop on the corner? No,

- b

- a there was a playground in the park.
- b on the left?
- c there wasn't.
- d think there was a bank next to the cinema.
- e wasn't a library here.
- f two restaurants on the right.
- g there a car park here?
- h two bridges across the river?

38 could (past ability)

FAMOUS CHILDREN.COM



Ludwig van Beethoven

(1770–1827) Composer

Beethoven was born in Germany. When he was a child, he could play the organ very well. Later in life he couldn't hear but he could write music.

Presentation

Use the modal verb *could* to describe ability in the past.

He could play the organ very well.

TIP You often use *How well/far ...?* with *could*:

He couldn't hear his music.

How well could he play the guitar? Very well.

Could he play the organ?

How far could he run? About twenty kilometres.

Key vocabulary Occupations: composer, boxer, writer, scientist, painter, singer

Exercises

1 Complete the texts with *could* or *couldn't*.



Muhammad Ali

(1942–) Boxer

When he was at school, Muhammad Ali¹ couldn't read very well but he² move very fast!



Helen Keller

(1880–1968) Writer

When she was a child, she³ see or hear but when she was an adult she⁴ speak and write books.



Albert Einstein

(1879–1955) Scientist

When he was a child, he ⁵ speak well but he was the best student in the class.



Pablo Picasso

(1881–1973) Painter

His father was an art teacher but when Picasso was thirteen he ⁶ paint better than his father. He was born in Spain but he ⁷ also speak French.



Edith Piaf

(1915–1963) Singer

Between the ages of three and seven, Edith ⁸ see and from eight to fourteen she ⁹ hear. But when she was an adult she ¹⁰ sing and was famous around the world.

1.46 Complete the conversations with the sentences in the box. Then listen and check.

How well could you play the piano How far could you run? Could you speak Chinese
I couldn't play tennis Could your father speak Chinese? What could he play?

Conversation 1

A: ¹ Could you speak Chinese when you were a child?

B: Yes, I could. My mother was Chinese and my father was English.

A: ²

B: No, he couldn't, but my mother could speak English.

Conversation 2

C: ³ when you were a child?

D: Not very well, but I could play the violin. My father was a music teacher.

C: ⁴

D: The piano, the violin and the saxophone, but he couldn't play the guitar.

Conversation 3

E: Do you run nowadays?

F: No, but when I was at school I could run a long way.

E: ⁵

F: A half marathon. But I couldn't swim very well. Could you?

E: Yes, I could, but ⁶

39 Could ...? and Would you like ...? (polite requests and offers)



Man: Hello, could I speak to Shelby, please?
Woman: Sorry, Shelby isn't here. Would you like to leave a message?
Man: Thanks, could you tell her I called?
Woman: Sure. Could I have your name, please?
Man: Yes, it's Hanif.
Woman: Could you spell that?
Man: H-A-N-I-F.

Presentation

Use *Could I/you + verb ...?* for polite requests and *Would you like + to -infinitive ...?* for polite offers.

Could I have your name please?

Could you spell that?

Would you like to leave a message?

You can also use *Can ...?* for requests but *Could ...?* is more polite and formal.

TIP Don't say *Could I to have your name?* *Would you like leave a message?*

Responses to requests and offers: *Sure.* / *Yes ...* / *Thanks very much.* / *Certainly.* / *Thanks, but ...*

TIP Don't say *No, I wouldn't.* *No, you couldn't.* It isn't polite.

Key vocabulary Verbs: call, borrow, email, give, help, leave, lend, order, see, speak (to), take, tell (me/her), watch

Exercises

1 1.47 Complete the conversations with *could* or *would*. Then listen and check.

Conversation 1

A: Hello. ¹ _____ Could _____ I speak to Mr Gates, please?

B: I'm sorry, he's out. ² _____ you like to leave a message?

A: Thanks. ³ _____ he email the photographs to me?

B: Sure. ⁴ _____ I have your name, please?

A: Yes, it's Carrie Aitken. ⁵ _____ you give him my email address?

B: Of course.

A: It's carrie@morris.com.

Conversation 2

- C: Good afternoon.⁶ _____ you like to order?
D: Yes, please.⁷ _____ I have a pizza, please?
C: Certainly.⁸ _____ you like anything to drink?
D: I'd like some water and ⁹ _____ I see the wine menu, please?
C: Of course.

Conversation 3

- E: What's this DVD?
F: It's a film about a family in America. They buy a house with ghosts in!¹⁰ _____ you like to borrow it?
E: Yes, it sounds great. What about this one with Tom Cruise?¹¹ _____ I watch it, too?
F: Sure, but ¹² _____ I have them back by Friday?

Conversation 4

- G: ¹³ _____ you look at my car, please?
H: Yes, sure. The engine doesn't sound good.¹⁴ _____ you leave it here until tomorrow?
G: OK. See you later.
H: One moment!¹⁵ _____ you like to give me the keys?
G: Sorry, I nearly forgot!

2 Put the pronouns in the box into the sentences.

him + you them we me

- 1 Could ^I leave a message?
- 2 Would like to buy something, madam?
- 3 Could you give your number again, please? I can't find it.
- 4 Harry is out. Would you like to call you later?
- 5 I'd like some soup and she'd like a salad. And could see the wine menu, please?
- 6 You can borrow the films but could I have back by the weekend?

3 Write requests and offers.

- 1 would / like me / help you Would you like me to help you?
- 2 could / leave / message
- 3 could / lend / me / DVD
- 4 would / like / speak / Marc
- 5 could / borrow / pen
- 6 could / spell / name
- 7 would / like / something / drink
- 8 would / like / borrow / car
- 9 could / lend / mobile phone
- 10 would / like / see / menu

40 Review of units 36 to 39

Grammar

- 1 Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

could couldn't -was -wasn't were weren't



Frida Kahlo



Edgar Degas



Yo Yo Ma



Bruce Lee



Celine Dion



The Wright brothers

- 1 Frida Kahlo was born in Mexico.
- 2 At the age of four, Yo Yo Ma play the cello.
- 3 There were fourteen children in Celine Dion's family.
- 4 For the last twenty years of artist Edgar Degas' life, he see.
- 5 Bruce Lee's parents were from Hong Kong but he born there.
- 6 The Wright brothers graduates from high school or university.

- 2 Complete these sentences so that they're true for you.

- 1 I was born in _____.
- 2 I could read at the age of _____.
- 3 There were _____ children in my mother's family.
- 4 When I was a child I couldn't _____ but I can now _____.

- 3 Put the conversation in order.

- Yes, it's 0770 768 3322.
- Yes, please. Could you tell him Nigella?
- Hello. Could I speak to Raymond, please?
- So that's Nigella on 0770 768 3322.
- Sure. Could I have your number?
- That's right. Thanks. Bye.
- I'm sorry, he's out. Would you like to leave a message?

- 4 Correct the sentences.

- 1 They wasn't at the party.
They weren't at the party.
- 2 Sorry, I can't come yesterday.
I can't come yesterday.
- 3 I were born in Brazil.
I was born in Brazil.
- 4 There was houses on the left.
There were houses on the left.
- 5 Would you like a sit here?
sit
- 6 Could I to order some ice cream?
order
- 7 Was they born in Italy?
they
- 8 Could you say him I called?
say
- 9 Could I lend your car?
lend

Pronunciation: strong and weak forms

of was

- 5 **1.48** Listen to the pronunciation of *was* and *wasn't* in these sentences.

/wəz/

He was here yesterday.

/wɒz/

Was he here yesterday? Yes, he was.

/wɒznt/

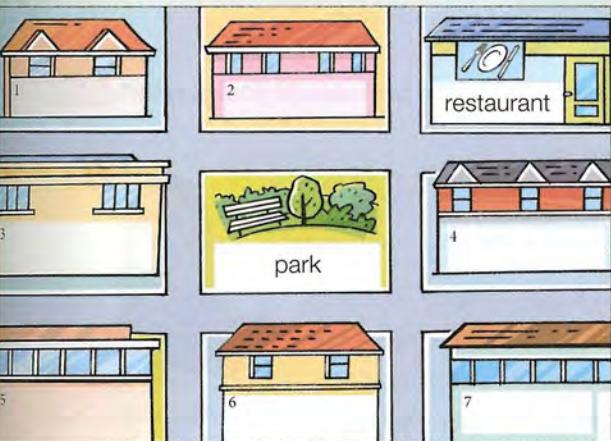
She wasn't at home.

Now listen to five sentences and tick the pronunciation you hear.

- | | | |
|---------|---------|---------|
| 1 /wəz/ | /wɒz/ ✓ | /wɒznt/ |
| 2 /wəz/ | /wɒz/ | /wɒznt/ |
| 3 /wəz/ | /wɒz/ | /wɒznt/ |
| 4 /wəz/ | /wɒz/ | /wɒznt/ |
| 5 /wəz/ | /wɒz/ | /wɒznt/ |

- 6 Read about a town and write the places on the map.

There was a supermarket on the left of the restaurant. The bus station was next to the supermarket. The bank was between the bus station and the cinema. The café was on the right of the cinema and on the left of the post office. There was a train station between the restaurant and the post office.



Vocabulary

- 7 Circle the word that is different.

- | | | | |
|------------|----------|------------|-------------|
| 1 sister | boxer | father | grandmother |
| 2 cinema | café | skyscraper | car |
| 3 singer | piano | violin | saxophone |
| 4 composer | bridge | writer | painter |
| 5 today | birthday | wedding | anniversary |

- 8 Complete the questions, requests and offers with the verbs in the box.

buy	have	leave	lend
order	run	speak	spell

- | |
|---|
| 1 Would you like to <u>order</u> dinner? |
| 2 Would you like to <u> </u> a message? |
| 3 A: Could I <u> </u> your name, please?
B: Yes, it's Sarah Hunt. |
| 4 A: Could you <u> </u> your name?
B: Yes, it's S-O-P-H-I-E. |
| 5 A: Could you <u> </u> me this book?
B: OK, but can I have it back by Friday? |
| 6 A: Could I <u> </u> to Rona, please? |
| 7 A: How far can he <u> </u> ?
B: About 20 kilometres. |
| 8 A: Would you like to <u> </u> anything?
B: Yes, please. I'd like two kilos of apples. |

Listen again

- 9 **1.49** Listen. Are the sentences true (T) or false (F)?

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1 Nancy was in New York at the weekend. | T |
| 2 It was her wedding anniversary. | |
| 3 James wasn't here in the morning. | |
| 4 Sue and Rona were with James. | |
| 5 It was a big wedding. | |
| 6 There weren't any family or friends. | |

41 Past simple (regular verbs)

Curriculum Vitae

JAMES LAKE

1980: Born
1998–1999: Round-the-world gap year
1999–2005: Medical College
2006–2007: Volunteer doctor in Africa
2007–Present: Work in hospital



I was born in 1980. When I finished school, I travelled around the world and visited China, Australia and parts of South America. In 1999, I started college and studied medicine for six years. After I graduated from college, I worked in Africa for a year and then I started my job at the hospital in 2007.

Presentation

Use the past simple to talk about finished actions and events.

Regular verbs

Add *-ed* to regular verbs to form the past simple: *started, finished*.

I / You / He / She / It / We / They

started
finished

college in 1999.

TIP Verbs have one form in the past simple.

Past simple (regular verbs): key spelling rules

- Two syllable verbs ending with *-y*: *study* → *studied* (not *studyyed*)
- Verbs ending with *-e*: *live* → *lived*
- Many verbs ending in vowel + consonant (not *-w, -x* or *-y*) double the consonant: *travel* → *travelled*, *stop* → *stopped* (not *traveled, stoped*)

See page 234: Spelling rules

Pronunciation

With verbs ending with a /t/ or /d/ sound (e.g. *start, need, graduate*), *-ed* adds an extra syllable: *start* = one syllable, *started* = two syllables (*start / ed*).

Key vocabulary Regular verbs: finish, graduate, join, live, qualify, start, stop, study, travel, visit, walk, work

Time references: in 1999, last night/month/year, two years ago, for three years, yesterday, this morning, on Monday, then

Exercises

1 Read the CV. Are sentences 1–6 true (T) or false (F)?

CV

1982: Born
1987–2000: School
2001–2005: University
2005–present: Accountancy firm

- 1 He started work in 2006.
- 2 He finished school in 2000.
- 3 He studied at university for two years.
- 4 He started school in 1987.
- 5 He was born in 1982.
- 6 He joined an accountancy firm in 2005.

2 Which are correct? Correct the spelling mistakes.

- | | | |
|------------|---------|-------------|
| 1 studied | studied | 5 graduated |
| 2 tried | ✓ | 6 stoped |
| 3 visitted | | 7 traveled |
| 4 played | | 8 qualifyed |

3 Complete the sentences with the past simple of the verbs.

- 1 I started (start) this job four years ago.
- 2 They finished (finish) work at nine o'clock last night.
- 3 Richard graduated (graduate) from Oxford University last month.
- 4 We visited (visit) the Taj Mahal in India last year.
- 5 I worked (work) for Microsoft for three years.
- 6 She travelled (travel) home by taxi.
- 7 They walked (walk) home yesterday.
- 8 Sally stopped (stop) work at lunchtime yesterday.
- 9 My family lived (live) in Canada for two years.
- 10 We studied (study) English for two hours this morning.

4 ① 1.50 Read about Nicole and complete the text. Then listen and check.



- | | |
|--------|--|
| 1999 | Finish school |
| 1999 | Start university |
| 2003 | Graduate with Spanish degree |
| 2003–4 | Travel around South America with friend |
| 2004–5 | Study for teaching certificate / Qualify in 2005 |
| 2005 | Join private language school |

I¹ school in 1999 and I² university in the same year. After I³ from university with a degree in Spanish, I⁴ around South America with a friend for nearly a year. After that I⁵ for a certificate in teaching and I⁶ in 2005. Finally I⁷ a private language school where I still teach Spanish today.

42 Past simple (irregular verbs)

Hi Safi

We're having a great time. We got to the hotel on Saturday and went straight to the beach. We sat there all day and swam in the sea. On Sunday we took a taxi to the local market and bought some delicious bread and cheese. We ate our lunch in the park outside the palace. Then we did some sightseeing in the afternoon. We're back on the beach today!

Love

Anna



Presentation

Irregular verbs

Some verbs are irregular. They do not add *-ed*: *go* → *went* (not *goed*), *make* → *made* (not *maked*).

See page 235: Irregular verbs

Key vocabulary Collocations (verb + noun): do homework, go sightseeing / do some sightseeing, get up, go shopping / do some shopping, make lunch, take a taxi

Exercises

1 Match the past simple form.

	<u>ate</u>	bought	did	gave	got	had	made	sat	saw	swam	took	went	
1	eat	_____	<u>ate</u>	_____	5	get	_____	9	buy	_____	10	take	_____
2	sit	_____	_____	_____	6	go	_____	11	give	_____	12	see	_____
3	do	_____	_____	_____	7	have	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	
4	swim	_____	_____	_____	8	make	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	

2 Complete the sentences with the past simple of the verbs.

- 1 We ate (eat) fish at a restaurant last night.
- 2 I go (go) to Spain on holiday last summer.
- 3 She bought (buy) a new suit for work at the weekend.
- 4 I had (have) a bicycle when I was a child.
- 5 They did (do) their homework last night.
- 6 We swam (swim) in the pool in the park on Sunday.
- 7 You took (take) a taxi to the station last week.
- 8 She made (make) lunch for us yesterday.
- 9 He got (get) up late this morning.
- 10 I sat (sit) in the sun all afternoon.
- 11 We gave (give) her a camera for her birthday.
- 12 They saw (see) some horses on the beach this morning.

3 1.51 Complete the conversation with the past simple of the verbs in the box.

Then listen and check.

buy do eat get up go have sit swim take

A: How was your holiday?

B: Great! We ¹ got up late every day and ² swam in the hotel pool before breakfast.

A: How was the food at the hotel?

B: Not bad, but we usually ³ ate in one of the local restaurants. We ⁴ bought some delicious fish dishes.

A: So, were you near the coast?

B: Yes, we were. We ⁵ walked the hotel bus down to the sea and ⁶ sit on the beach in the afternoon.

A: Were there many places to visit?

B: Mark ⁷ did sightseeing but I wasn't interested. I ⁸ bought some shopping on the last day. Look! I ⁹ bought this beautiful bracelet at a local market.



4 Regular or irregular verbs? Correct the mistakes.

1 maked	<u>made</u>	7 walked		13 travelled	
2 took	<u>✓</u>	8 eated		14 joinned	
3 visited		9 sitted		15 tryed	
4 goed		10 swimmmed		16 stopped	
5 studied		11 haved		17 finished	
6 buyed		12 took		18 gived	

43 did/didn't (negative and questions)



A: Did you leave home when you were eighteen?

B: Yes, I did. Did you?

A: No, I didn't. I was twenty-four. That's normal in my country.

C: Did you go to university?

D: No, I didn't. I started work after school and then I met my first husband.

C: Did you have any children?

D: No, we didn't and we got divorced a year later. Then I got married to Roger. We celebrated our twentieth anniversary yesterday.

C: Congratulations!

Presentation

Use *didn't* for negative sentences in the past simple.

Use *Did ...?* for questions in the past simple.

Use *did* or *didn't* for short answers.

Negative

I / You / He / She / We / They didn't go to university.

TIP Say *They didn't get married*. (don't say *They didn't got married*.)

Questions

Did I / you / he / she / we / they go to university?

TIP Say *Did you work there?* (don't say *Did you worked there?*)

Short answers

Yes, I / you / he / she / we / they did.

No, I / you / he / she / we / they didn't.

Key vocabulary Life events: leave school, start work, leave home, get married/divorced, have children, celebrate an anniversary/a birthday

People in your life: partner (≠ husband/wife)

Exercises

- 1 Write a past simple sentence for each picture 1–8. Use the phrases in the box.

get divorced get married leave school
meet new partner not get married again not go to university
not have any children start work in an office

1 She left school in 1995.

2 She didn't go to university.

3

4

5

6

7

8

- 2 Complete the questions and answers with *did* or *didn't*.

1 A: Did you study English at school?

B: No, I .

2 A: you get married?

B: Yes, I . I got married to Bill.

3 A: you have children?

B: Yes, we had two. Susie is eight and Stella is five.

4 A: Bill leave home before university?

B: No, he . He left home after university.

- 3 1.52 Write the questions for these answers. Then listen and check.

1 A: Did you get married ?

B: Yes, I did. I got married in 1981.

2 A: Did at university?

B: No, I didn't. I met Bill after university.

3 A: Did any children?

B: Yes, I had a girl. Michelle is three.

4 A: Did last night?

B: No, I didn't. I'm doing my homework now.

5 A: Did to the airport?

B: No, I took a taxi. It's faster than the bus.

6 A: Did to Spain on holiday?

B: No, we didn't. We went to France.

7 A: Did late this morning?

B: No, I didn't. I got up early.



44 Past simple questions

Object and subject questions

- Igor: I'd like to do a language course in England next summer.
- Saskia: Good idea! I did a course in Brighton last summer.
- Igor: Where did you study?
- Saskia: I studied at the Seafront School of English.
- Igor: Who organised your accommodation?
- Saskia: Someone at the language school. I stayed with an English family. They were really nice.
- Igor: How were the meals?
- Saskia: Not bad actually. Breakfast was delicious.



Presentation

Use past simple questions to ask about finished events in the past:

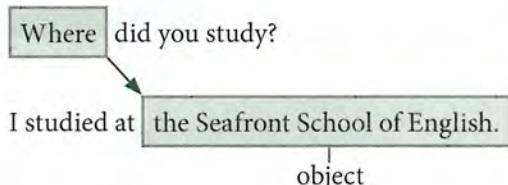
Where did you study?

Who organised your accommodation?

How were the meals?

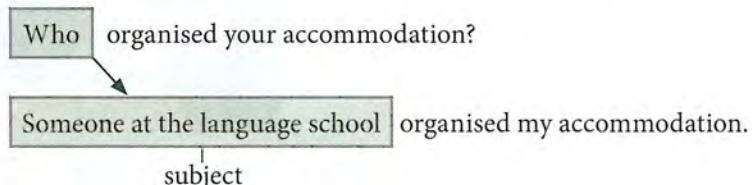
Object questions

You often ask questions in the past simple with *did*. You want information about the object of a sentence.



Subject questions

You can also ask questions about the subject of the sentence. Do not use *did* with a subject question.



TIP Remember not to use *did* with *was/were* questions (see Unit 36).

Say *How were the meals?* (don't say *How did the meals be?*)

Exercises

1 Put the words in order to make questions.

- 1 stay did where you
- 2 stayed there who
- 3 did what you do yesterday
- 4 made sandwich who your
- 5 how many to the party went people
- 6 plans what changed your
- 7 did TV programme the what time start

Where did you stay?

2 Match the responses a–g to the questions 1–7 in exercise 1.

- a I didn't go because the weather was bad.
- b Gordon and Ann.
- c Eight o'clock.
- d I played tennis with Rafa.
- e At the Belvedere Hotel.
- f About thirty people.
- g My mother made it.

3 Are questions 1–7 in exercise 1 subject or object questions? Write S or O.

1 0 2 3 4 5 6 7

4 1.53 Write questions for these answers. Then listen and check.

- 1 A: When did she leave home?
B: She left home in 2006.
- 2 A: What
B: They studied Biology at university.
- 3 A: Who
B: Martin and Rachel studied Biology at university.
- 4 A: When
B: I started my job five years ago.
- 5 A: What
B: The weather changed my plans. It was raining.
- 6 A: Where
B: I met Sheila in Australia.
- 7 A: Why
B: I didn't like my boss so I left my job.
- 8 A: Who
B: My mother lived in this house.
- 9 A: How long
B: We travelled in Patagonia for six months.

45 Review of units 41 to 44

Grammar

1 Write the sentences in the past simple.

1 I eat breakfast at seven o'clock.
I ate breakfast at seven o'clock.

2 They go on Tuesday.

3 We don't have time for lunch.

4 Who lives here?

5 Do you know her?

6 Why do you walk to work?

7 Sorry, I'm not at home.

8 How far do you swim?

2 Correct the mistakes.

1 Did you liked Spain?
Did you like Spain?

2 When do you lived there?

3 Who did wrote that book?

4 I studied in Bologna for a year.

5 We didn't went to the cinema last night.

6 Why you leave university early?

7 Did you visited the Eiffel Tower?

8 She maked a delicious pasta dish.

9 When you get divorced?

3 Complete the timeline with the phrases in the box.

in 1990 last month
last week last year this morning
two weeks ago yesterday

two minutes ago

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

4 Write the past simple of the verbs.

1 do did

2 leave did

3 get did

4 celebrate did

5 go did

6 take did

7 make did

8 graduate did

9 stop did

10 travel did

5 Complete the sentences with the past simple verbs from exercise 4.

- 1 Suzy and Jane shopping for new shoes yesterday.
- 2 Karen school in 2008.
- 3 Tom and Natalie their twentieth wedding anniversary last month.
- 4 David his homework and then he watched a DVD.
- 5 Petra around Europe for six months last year.
- 6 Mel smoking three weeks ago.
- 7 Julia from university with a degree in Physics last June.
- 8 I a taxi to the restaurant because it was raining.
- 9 Matt and Kathy married last summer.
- 10 Jenny dinner but she didn't eat anything.

6 Number the events in order.

- a We joined the same company after university.
- b I left school in 1998.
- c I met my husband in my final year at university.
- d We had our first child last year.
- e I started university straight after.
- f I was born three years later.
- g My parents met in 1977. 1
- h They got married three years later.

Pronunciation: syllables

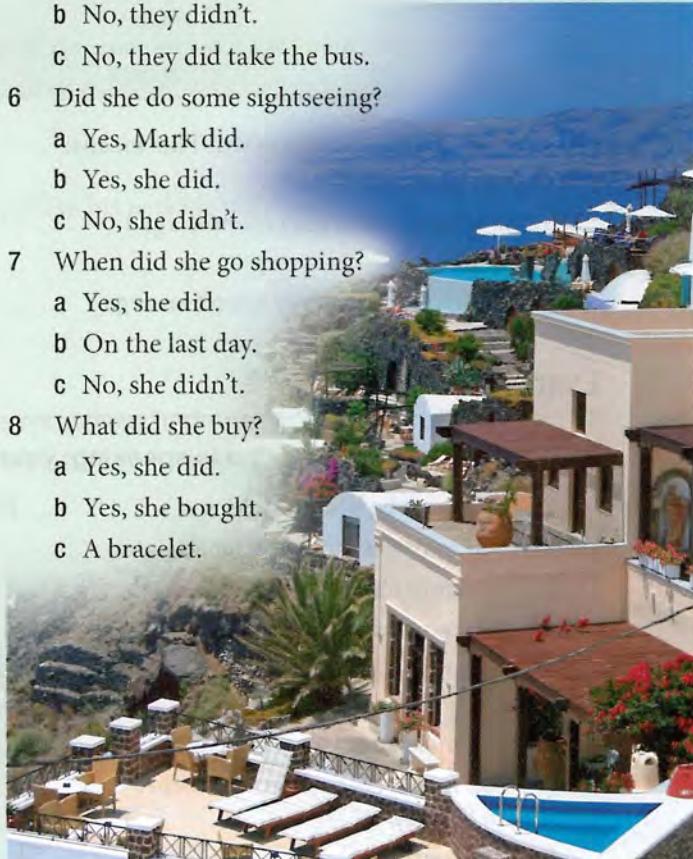
7 1.54 Listen to these verbs. How many syllables are there?

- | | | |
|------------|---|--------------|
| 1 started | 2 | 7 played |
| 2 finished | | 8 stopped |
| 3 studied | | 9 travelled |
| 4 joined | | 10 lived |
| 5 visited | | 11 walked |
| 6 worked | | 12 graduated |

Listen again

8 1.55 Listen and choose the correct answers.

- 1 Did they get up late every day?
 - a Yes, they did.
 - b No, they didn't.
 - c Yes, they got.
- 2 Did they swim in the pool after breakfast?
 - a Yes, they did.
 - b No, they didn't.
 - c No, they swam.
- 3 Was the fish good at the local restaurants?
 - a Yes, it was.
 - b No, it wasn't.
 - c Yes, they were.
- 4 Were they near the coast?
 - a Yes, they were.
 - b No, it wasn't.
 - c No, they weren't.
- 5 Did they walk to the beach?
 - a Yes, they walked.
 - b No, they didn't.
 - c No, they did take the bus.
- 6 Did she do some sightseeing?
 - a Yes, Mark did.
 - b Yes, she did.
 - c No, she didn't.
- 7 When did she go shopping?
 - a Yes, she did.
 - b On the last day.
 - c No, she didn't.
- 8 What did she buy?
 - a Yes, she did.
 - b Yes, she bought.
 - c A bracelet.



46 must/mustn't



Bella: Bye, Dad.

Dad: Bye, Bella. And don't forget – you must be home by ten-thirty.

Bella: What? Ten-thirty? You're joking!

Dad: No, I'm not. You mustn't be late. Bye, Bella.

Bella: But ...

Presentation

Use *must* and *mustn't* to talk about obligation and prohibition.

Affirmative and negative

I / You / He / She / It / We / They	must	be home at ten.
	mustn't	

Must and *mustn't* are modal verbs. This means:

- No third person *s*
Say *He must go*. (don't say *He musts go*.)
- No auxiliary *do*
Say *I mustn't go*. (don't say *I don't must go*.)
- No past tense
(don't say *I musted go*.)
- No *to* before the verb
Say *They must go*. (don't say *They must to go*.)

Exercises

1 Read the sentences. Who is speaking: your boss, your doctor, your parents or a police officer?

- 1 You must be home by eleven.
- 2 You must eat more vegetables.
- 3 You mustn't smoke in the office.
- 4 You must take more exercise.
- 5 You mustn't use your mobile when you're driving.
- 6 You must study for your exam.
- 7 You must visit your grandmother on Sunday.
- 8 You must finish those emails by five o'clock.

parents

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....



Read the imperatives. Write sentences with *must* or *mustn't*.

- 1 Don't use your mobile here!
- 2 Eat more fruit!
- 3 Don't drink the water here!
- 4 Park on the left!
- 5 Visit your grandparents!
- 6 Don't take photographs here!
- 7 Don't talk in class!
- 8 Turn your mobile off!
- 9 Phone me when you arrive!
- 10 Don't phone after ten o'clock!

You *mustn't* use your mobile here.

⑥ 1.56 Complete the conversations with *must* or *mustn't*. Then listen and check.

Conversation 1

A: What did the doctor say?

B: He says I ¹ *must* eat more fruit and vegetables, I ² *mustn't* smoke,
I ³ *must* drink more water and I ⁴ *mustn't* drink wine.

A: You're joking!

Conversation 2

C: What did the teacher say?

D: He says we ⁵ *must* do more homework, we ⁶ *mustn't* talk in class
and we ⁷ *must* study for the exam!

C: Oh, no!

Conversation 3

E: What did your boss say?

F: He says I ⁸ *mustn't* be late, I ⁹ *must* park in his parking place and
I ¹⁰ *must* finish all those emails.

E: Oh.

Conversation 4

G: What did the police officer say?

H: He says I ¹¹ *mustn't* drive faster than 50 kilometres an hour in the town centre and
I ¹² *must* obey the traffic lights. Oh, and I ¹³ *mustn't* pay £250 because I
drove through that red light.

G: Oh, no!

Correct the mistake in each sentence.

- 1 Rachel *must* leave at six.
- 2 You *don't must* do that!
- 3 We *must to* drive on the left in the UK.
- 4 She *doesn't must* be late for her interview.
- 5 I *musts* get up at six every day.
- 6 They *must to* ask their parents.

Rachel *must* leave at six.

47 *have to, have got to, don't have to, must and mustn't*



Presentation

Use *have to, must* and *mustn't* to talk about obligation.

Use *don't have to* to say that there is no obligation to do something.

- *don't have to* doesn't mean the same as *mustn't*
You don't have to do it. = It isn't necessary.
You mustn't do it = Don't do it!
- *have got to* means the same as *have to*
You've got to wash your hands. = *You have to wash your hands.* (*have got to* is informal.)

TIP There isn't much difference between *have to* and *must*. You can use *must* to talk about personal obligations:

I must lose some weight.

Have to is more impersonal:

Police officers have to wear a uniform.

Affirmative and negative

I	have to	wear a uniform.
You	don't have to	
We		
They		
He	has to	
She	doesn't have to	

Yes/No questions

Do	I / you / we / they	have to
Does	he / she	

Short answers

Yes,	I / you / we / they	-	do.
	he / she		does.
No,	I / you / we / they		don't.
	he / she		doesn't.

Key vocabulary Work: clean the kitchen, clear the table, cook the food, job, job description, rules, serve the customers, tidy the clothes, wear a uniform
Clothes: shirt, trousers, uniform

Exercises

1 Choose the correct forms.

- 1 Shop assistants must / mustn't be polite to customers.
- 2 Teachers have to / don't have to wear a uniform.
- 3 Nurses must / don't have to wash their hands.
- 4 Engineers have to / don't have to get a special qualification.
- 5 Taxi drivers in the UK don't have to / mustn't drive on the right.
- 6 Police officers have to / mustn't wear a uniform.
- 7 Waiters have to / don't have to cook the food.
- 8 Journalists have to / don't have to ask questions.

2 1.57 Complete the conversations about jobs with **do**, **does**, **have to**, **has to** or **mustn't**. Then listen and check. What are the jobs in conversations 1 and 2?

Conversation 1

- A: What time do you start work?
B: I ¹ have to be there at nine o'clock. I ² be late.
A: ³ you ⁴ wear a uniform?
B: Yes, I ⁵ .
A: What jobs ⁶ you ⁷ do?
B: I ⁸ clean the restaurant and serve the customers.

Conversation 2

- C: Does Emily like her new job?
D: Yes, because she doesn't ⁹ get up early! The shop doesn't open until ten.
C: ¹⁰ she ¹¹ serve the customers?
D: Yes, she ¹² . And she ¹³ tidy the clothes.
C: Can she smoke?
D: No, she ¹⁴ smoke in the shop so she ¹⁵ smoke on the street.

3 Look at the rules and the job descriptions. Write sentences about Paolo and Macy. Use **has to**, **doesn't have to** or **mustn't**.

- | | |
|-------------|---|
| 1 food | Paulo <u>has to cook the food</u> . |
| | Macy <u>doesn't have to cook the food</u> . |
| 2 smoke | Paulo and Macy <u></u> |
| 3 tables | Paulo <u></u> |
| | Macy <u></u> |
| 4 uniform | Paulo and Macy <u></u> |
| 5 late | Paulo and Macy <u></u> |
| 6 customers | Paulo <u></u> |
| | Macy <u></u> |

RULES

- Work starts at nine – don't be late
- No smoking
- Wear a uniform

JOB DESCRIPTIONS

- Paolo: Cook the food
Macy: Clear the tables, serve the customers

48 *should/shouldn't*



Presentation

Use *should* for strong advice.

Affirmative and negative

I / You / He / She / It / We / They *should* buy that dress.
 shouldn't

Should is a modal verb. This means:

- No third person *s*
Say *He should do it.* (don't say *He shoulds do it.*)
- No auxiliary *do*
Say *You shouldn't do it.* (don't say *You don't should do it.*)
- No past tense
(don't say *You shoulded do it.*)
- No *to* before the verb
Say *You should do it.* (don't say *You should to do it.*)

Yes/No questions

Should I buy that dress?

Short answers

Yes, you should.

No, you shouldn't.

Wh- questions

What should I do?

Key vocabulary Adjectives: awful, beautiful, great, horrible, terrible, terrific, ugly

Exercises

1 Comment on the advice. Use *That's true / not true* and *shouldn't*.

- 1 You should smoke.
- 2 You should take exercise.
- 3 You should eat healthy food.
- 4 You should drink a lot of coffee.
- 5 You should work twelve hours a day.
- 6 You shouldn't go on holiday.

That's not true. You shouldn't smoke.

That's true.

Give advice. Use **should / shouldn't** buy and **it or them**.

www.shopnet.com



buy it

buy it

buy it

buy it

buy it

buy it

- 1 That jacket's terrific. *You should buy it.*
- 2 Those trousers are awful.
- 3 These shoes are great.
- 4 That shirt is horrible.
- 5 This dress is beautiful.
- 6 Those ties are ugly.

1.58 Complete the conversation with **should** or **shouldn't**. Then listen and check.

Joe: You work too hard. You ¹ should work less.

Mark: Yes, but ...

Joe: You ² go on holiday.

Mark: Yes, but ...

Joe: And you ³ drink all that coffee.

Mark: Yes, but ...

Joe: And you smoke? You ⁴ stop now.

Mark: Yes, but ...

Joe: And you look terrible! You ⁵ take more exercise.

Mark: Yes, but ...

Joe: And doughnuts! You ⁶ eat healthier food.

Mark: Yes, but ...

Joe: Yes, but what?

Mark: Oh, nothing.



Correct the mistake in each sentence.

- 1 I think you should to buy those shoes.
- 2 They don't should pay that much money!
- 3 Rita shoulds ask me first.
- 4 Do we should leave now or later?
- 5 Gerald should to do more exercise.
- 6 What shoulds he do about the problem?

49 had to / didn't have to (past obligation)

New Message

To: Rolf

Hi Rolf,
Sorry I couldn't be at your party last night. 😱 I had to study for the Maths exam. 😤
The good news is that my dad said I didn't have to do my English homework – the teacher's ill!!! 😊
See you at the weekend?

Maria

Presentation

Had to is the past of *have to*.

Affirmative and negative

I / You / He / She / It / We / They	had to	study for the Maths exam.
	didn't have to	

Yes/No questions

Did you have to study for the Maths exam?

Short answers

Yes, I did. No, I didn't.

TIP Say *I didn't have to do it*. (don't say *I hadn't to do it*.)

Say *Did you have to do it?* (don't say *Had you to do it?*)

Key vocabulary Education: do homework, English, French, Geography, Maths, Music, Science, study for an exam

Exercises

- 1 Tony and Lisa were at school five years ago. What did they have to study? Use *had to* or *didn't have to*.

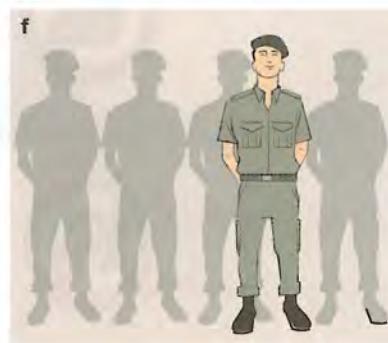
		Tony	Lisa
Maths	$x=4y-3$		
French	Bonjour		
Geography			
Science			

- 1 Tony + Lisa / Maths
They had to study Maths.
- 2 Lisa / French
- 3 Tony / French
- 4 Tony + Lisa / Geography
- 5 Tony + Lisa / Science

2 Last year, Simon was a soldier. Match the sentences to the pictures.

- 1 He had to be fit. e
 2 He had to call the officers 'sir'.
 3 He had to clean the floor.

- 4 He had to get up early.
 5 He had to type letters.
 6 He had to wear a uniform.



3 1.59 Simon is talking to David, a friend, about being a soldier. Complete the conversation with *did*, *didn't*, *have to* or *had to*. Then listen and check.

David: ¹ Did ² you ³ have to ⁴ get up early?

Simon: Yes, I ⁵ . We all ⁶ get up at half past five.
 And I ⁷ clean the floor every morning.

David: ⁸ you ⁹ clean the toilets?

Simon: No, I ¹⁰ . But I ¹¹ type a lot of letters.

David: ¹² you ¹³ call the officers 'sir'?

Simon: Yes, I ¹⁴ . And I ¹⁵ wear a uniform.

David: Was there a lot of sport?

Simon: Yes, there was. We ¹⁶ be very fit.

4 Write past simple questions. Use *have to*.

- 1 he / do that? Did he have to do that?
 2 Mike and Lelia / stay late?
 3 what time / you / get up?
 4 you / clean the house today?
 5 why / we / pay for the ticket?
 6 she / study French at school?

50 Review of units 46 to 49

Grammar

1 Write sentences with *mustn't*.



1 You mustn't smoke.



2 _____



3 _____



4 _____



5 _____



6 _____

2 Read what the boss says to Josh. Write what Josh says to his friend. Use *have to*, *don't have to* or *mustn't*.

- 1 Work starts at eight o'clock.
I have to start work at eight o'clock.
- 2 Don't park in my parking space.
I mustn't park in the boss's parking space.
- 3 Don't be late.
- 4 Learn the rules.
- 5 There's no uniform.
- 6 You must wear a jacket and tie.
- 7 It isn't necessary to call me 'sir'.
- 8 It isn't your job to make coffee.

3 Delia would like to be healthier. Look at her notes and write what she says with *should* or *shouldn't*.

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	1 drink coffee
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	2 drink water
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	3 eat doughnuts
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	4 do exercise
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	5 eat vegetables
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	6 drink wine

1 I shouldn't drink coffee.

2 _____

3 _____

4 _____

5 _____

6 _____

4 Complete the conversation with *did*, *didn't*, *have to* or *had to*.

- A: Monday was terrible! I ¹ had to
start work at eight. I ²
phone fifty people ...
B: ³ you ⁴
clean the toilets?
A: No, I ⁵ .
B: Well, I ⁶ clean the toilets.
A: That's awful.
B: Yes, it was. I ⁷ be at work
at six and I finished late.
A: You're joking!
B: No, I'm not.
A: But you ⁸
⁹ phone fifty people.
B: That's true.

Pronunciation: *n't*

5 ⑤ 1.60 Listen and circle the form you hear.

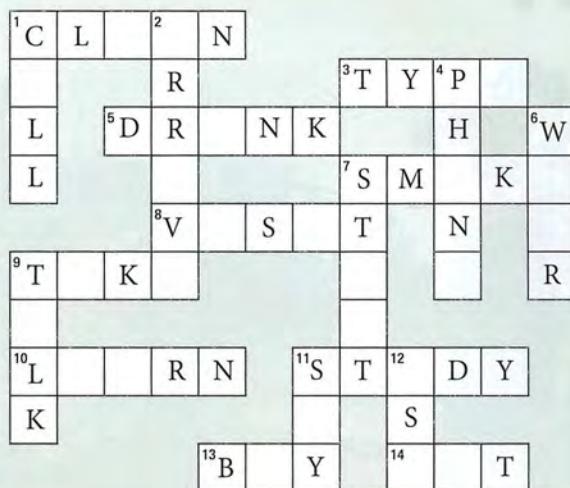
- 1 You *must* / *mustn't* go.
- 2 He *should* / *shouldn't* eat healthy food.
- 3 You *do* / *don't* have to wear a uniform.
- 4 I *could* / *couldn't* play the piano.
- 5 We *should* / *shouldn't* call.
- 6 We *must* / *mustn't* leave at nine.

Vocabulary

6 Circle the word that is different.

- 1 beautiful great terrific awful
- 2 boss shirt trousers uniform
- 3 Maths Geography homework Science
- 4 great horrible awful ugly
- 5 clean serve job cook

7 Complete the verbs with vowels (*a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, *u*).



Listen again

8 ⑥ 1.61 Listen and put the lines from the conversation in order.

- And you look terrible! You should take more exercise.
- And you shouldn't drink all that coffee.
- And you smoke? You should stop now.
- You work too hard. You should work less.
- Yes, but what?
- You should go on holiday.
- And doughnuts! You should eat healthier food.



51 Present perfect



Boy: Dad, I'm going to the cinema with Jordi.
Can I have £20?

Dad: Hmm. Have you cleaned the car?

Boy: Yes, I have.

Dad: Have you tidied your room?

Boy: Yes, I have.

Dad: Well, OK then.

Presentation

Use the present perfect to talk about a past action which has a present result.



I've cleaned the car. =
The car is clean now.



I haven't cleaned the car. =
The car is dirty now.

You don't say exactly when it happened. (don't say *I have cleaned the car yesterday*.)

Form the present perfect with *have/has + past participle*.

Affirmative and negative

I	've	
You	've	
We	haven't	cleaned the car.
They		tidied your room.
He	's	
She	hasn't	

Yes/No questions

Have	you we they	cleaned the car? tidied your room?
Has	he she	

Past participle

- Regular past participles end in *-ed*:
borrow → *borrowed*.
- Many verbs have irregular past participles:
buy → *bought*, *break* → *broken*.

See page 235: Irregular verbs

Short answers

Yes,	I / you / we / they he / she	have. has.
No,	I / you / we / they he / she	haven't. hasn't.

Key vocabulary Daily events: do the washing-up, comb your hair, clean your shoes, clean your teeth, have a shower, iron your clothes, tidy your desk

Exercises

1 Write affirmative and negative sentences. Use the present perfect.

comb his hair

1 Mark 's combed his hair.

2 Rick hasn't combed his hair.

iron his shirt

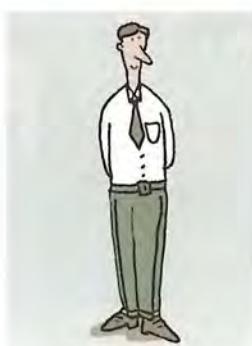
3 Mark _____

4 Rick _____

clean his shoes

5 Mark _____

6 Rick _____



Mark



Rick

2 Complete the sentences. Use the present perfect.

1 I 've cleaned (clean) my teeth.

2 She (leave) her bag on the table.

3 We (not finish) our homework.

4 They (have) breakfast.

5 You (not do) the washing-up.

6 He (tidy) his desk.

7 We (buy) a new car.

8 He (made) lots of mistakes.

3 Write sentences using the verbs in brackets.

1 I can't find my credit card. (lose) I've lost my credit card.

2 Julio's got my dictionary. (borrow) _____

3 Christina's wearing a new top. (buy) _____

4 The car was moving. Now it isn't. (stop) _____

5 I dropped my phone and now it doesn't work. (break) _____

4 ② 2.02 Complete the conversation with questions. Then listen and check.

Mother: Peter! It's five to nine. Are you ready?

Peter: Yes, Mum.

Mother: 1 Have you cleaned your teeth?

Peter: Yes, of course I have.

Mother: 2 a shower?

Peter: Yes, Mum.

Mother: 3 your hair?

Peter: Yes, I have.

Mother: 4 your shoes?

Peter: Yes, I have.

Mother: No, you haven't. They're dirty. Oh, Peter ...



52 Present perfect with *just*, *already* and *yet*



A: Hi, Mum. I passed!

B: Oh, well done. Let me get your father ... Jack! It's Susie on the phone. She's just passed her driving test!

C: Are you going to tidy your room?

D: I've already tidied it!

C: Well, I don't think it's very tidy.

E: Have you talked to Mark yet?

F: No, I haven't.

E: When are you going to tell him?

F: I don't know. I haven't decided yet.

Presentation

Just, *yet* and *already* are adverbs. They add extra meaning to the present perfect.

- *Just* shows that an action is very recent. Use *just* in affirmative sentences. It usually goes before the past participle: *She's just passed her driving test.*
- *Yet* shows that something is expected. Use *yet* in negative sentences and yes/no questions. It usually goes at the end of the sentence: *I haven't decided yet. Have you decided yet?*
- *Already* shows that something happened sooner than expected. Use *already* in affirmative sentences. It usually goes before the past participle: *I've already tidied it.*

Key vocabulary Life events: have a baby, get married, graduate from university, move house, pass your driving test
Housework: clean the bathroom, do the shopping, do the washing-up, make dinner, make your bed, tidy the living room

Exercises

- 1 Write sentences with *just*. Use the present perfect and the phrases in the box.



get married graduate from university
have a baby move house

1 They've just moved house.

2

3

4



Write questions with *yet*.

- 1 you / do the washing-up?
- 2 he / make his bed?
- 3 they / clean the bathroom?
- 4 she / tidy the living room?
- 5 you / make dinner?
- 6 he / do the shopping?

Have you done the washing-up yet?

Complete the sentences with *already* or *yet*.

- 1 They're going to be here in ten minutes and I haven't made dinner _____ yet !
- 2 Have you tidied your room _____ ?
- 3 I've _____ done the washing-up.
- 4 You don't have to tidy the living room: I've _____ done it.
- 5 I've haven't cleaned the bathroom and I haven't made the beds _____ .
- 6 The kitchen's OK. I've _____ cleaned it.

Tick (✓) the things on the list that Nina has done this morning. Write when she's going to do the other things.



I've already phoned Jack. I haven't talked to Julia yet. I'm going to do that at two o'clock. I haven't emailed Brad yet. I'm going to do that this afternoon. I've already texted Leo. I've already talked to Anthony.

- 1 phone Jack ✓
2 talk to Julia
3 email Brad
4 text Leo
5 talk to Anthony

2.03 Look at Martin's list and write what he says. Use *going to* or the present perfect with *already* or *yet*. Then listen and check.



- 1 phone Angelina at four o'clock
2 phone Tom ✓
3 talk to Kevin ✓
4 email Sharon this afternoon
5 talk to Martin after lunch

I haven't phoned Angelina yet. I'm going to do that at four o'clock.

53 Present perfect with *for* and *since*

How long ...?



- Woman: Where do you live?
Man: In London.
Woman: How long have you lived there?
Man: For five years.
Woman: And you've started your own business.
Man: Yes, I have. I've had the business for two years.

Presentation

Use the present perfect to talk about actions that started in the past and continue in the present.

I've lived in London for five years (and I live there now).



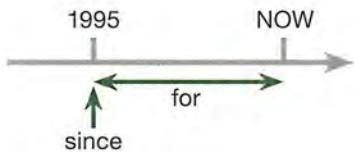
for and *since*

- Use *for* with the present perfect to show the duration of a present situation.

My brother's a doctor. He became a doctor five years ago: *He's been a doctor for five years.*

- Use *since* with the present perfect to show the starting point of a present situation.

I support Real Madrid. I started supporting them since 1995: *I've supported Real Madrid since 1995.*



How long ...?

Use *How long ...?* with the present perfect to ask about the duration of a present situation.

How long have you lived there? For five years.

Key vocabulary Life events: become/be a (doctor), buy/have a car, get/be married, meet/know somebody, move to / live in a town, start/have your own business, start supporting / support a football team, make/have a million dollars

Complete the phrases with **for** or **since**.

since	1972	5	I was fourteen years old
	Tuesday	6	August
	two weeks	7	four days
	eleven o'clock	8	two hours

Answer the questions about Sarah.

Sarah got married when she was 24. She's been married for four years. How old is she now?

She's 28.

Her husband's name is Jeff. She met him at university when she was 21 years old. How long has she known him?

For 3 years.

She became a teacher when she was 22. How long has she been a teacher?

For 1 year.

Sarah and Jeff have lived in London for three years.

How old was she when they moved to London?

She was 21.

She's supported Chelsea FC since she moved to London. How long has she supported Chelsea FC?

For 1 year.

She's got an old Volkswagen. She's had it for ten years. How old was she when she bought it?

She was 11.



04 Choose the correct words and complete the interview with the present perfect of the verbs. Then listen and check.

amy: Hi, Dmitri. Thanks for talking to us. First of all, how long ¹ have you lived (live) in California?

dmitri: I ² been (be) here ³ *for / since* six years. I came from Russia when I was 24 years old. I love it here.

amy: And how long ⁴ have (have) your own business?

dmitri: ⁵ *For / Since* I was 25. I started it one year after I arrived here.

amy: And now you're a millionaire.

dmitri: That's right. In fact I ⁶ been (be) a millionaire ⁷ *for / since* I was 27.

amy: What's the best thing about being rich?

dmitri: My car. It's a yellow Porsche Carrera. I ⁸ had (have) it ⁹ *for / since*

I was 28. But the best thing in my life is Ana. We ¹⁰ were (be) married

¹¹ *for / since* about a year but I ¹² met (know) her ¹³ *for / since* I was 26.

Answer these questions. Use **for** or **since**.

How long have you lived in your home? _____

How long have you studied English? _____

How long have you known your best friend? _____

54 Have you ever ...? been and gone



A: Have you ever eaten sushi?
B: No, never. Is it nice?
A: It's delicious.

C: Have you ever been to the USA?
D: Yes, we have. We went to Florida last year.
C: Was it nice?

E: Have you ever played badminton?
F: Yes, I have. I played it on holiday. It's brilliant.
E: Is it hard to play?

Presentation

Have you ever ...?

Use *Have you ever ...?* questions to ask about life experiences:

Have you ever been to the USA?

ever and never

You often use *ever* with present perfect questions. It means 'at any time' in the past. *Never* means 'at no time'.

A: *Have you ever eaten sushi?*

B: *No, never.*

been and gone

Use *been* to talk about a place you went to but you are back now: *I've been to the USA three times.*

Use *gone* to talk about a person who is away and hasn't returned yet: *He's gone to the USA.*

TIP The present perfect and the past simple talk about the past.

With the past simple you know (or say) when the action happened.

I've been to Florida.

I went to Florida last year.

Exercises

Look at the photos. Write six questions with **Have you ever ...?** Use the verbs and nouns in the boxes.

verbs: -be- drink eat see play ride

nouns: Red Bull basketball to Australia

a James Bond film a motorbike Greek yoghurt

1 Have you ever been to Australia?

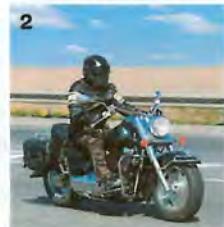
2

3

4

5

6



Match the responses a-f to the questions in exercise 1.

- a No, I haven't. I don't like fizzy drinks.
- b No, I haven't. I prefer tennis.
- c No, I haven't. I haven't got a licence.
- d No, I haven't, but my sister went to New Zealand last year.
- e No, I haven't. I don't like action films.
- f No, I haven't. I can't eat milk products.

Write sentences with **never**.

1 Canada ✓ the USA ✗ I've been to Canada but I've never been to the USA.

2 Coca-Cola® ✓ Pepsi-Cola® ✗

I've never drunk Coca-Cola.

3 table tennis ✓ tennis ✗

I've never played table tennis.

4 bicycle ✓ motorbike ✗

I've never ridden a motorbike.

5 French ✓ Spanish ✗

I've never spoken Spanish.

6 piano ✓ guitar ✗

I've never played the guitar.

7 sushi ✓ curry ✗

I've never eaten curry.

8 dolphin ✓ blue whale ✗

I've never seen a blue whale.

2.05 Write conversations. Then listen and check.

1 Canada? → yes: Montreal last year

3 curry? → yes: in London last summer

A: Have you ever been to Canada?

B: Yes, I have. I went to Montreal last year.

A:

B:

2 rugby? → yes: when I was at school

4 Romeo and Juliet? → yes: at the Globe Theatre in May

A:

B:

B:

55 Review of units 51 to 54

Grammar

1 Complete the sentences with the correct form of **have**. Add **n't** where necessary.

- 1 You haven't cleaned your shoes. They look terrible.
- 2 Let's go inside. It started raining.
- 3 She's hungry. She had breakfast yet.
- 4 We're just in time. The film started yet.
- 5 Oh no! It's my girlfriend's birthday and I bought her anything.
- 6 They left their books in my car.
- 7 He was really tired so he gone to bed.
- 8 Oh, no! I broken my camera.

2 Complete the letter with **just**, **yet** or **already**.

Hi Jenny,

We've been in New York for one day and we've ¹ already visited the Empire State Building! We haven't been to the Statue of Liberty ² - we're going there this afternoon.

Peter's ³ taken about 100 photos. I haven't taken any - I lost my camera and I haven't bought a new one ⁴ .

Right now we're in a Japanese restaurant. We've ⁵ had lunch - it was great. Have you ever had sushi?

See you soon,

Graz

3 Write sentences with **since** or **for**. Use the present perfect of the verb in brackets.

- 1 My cousin Tom's a dentist. He became a dentist fifteen years ago. (be)
He's been a dentist for fifteen years.
- 2 He's from London but he lives in Edinburgh. He moved there five years ago. (live)
- 3 He supports Arsenal FC. He started supporting them when he was five. (support)
- 4 He's got a BMW. He bought it when he was eighteen. (have)
- 5 His wife's name is Meg. He met her eight years ago. (know)

- 6 They got married in January. (be)

- 7 Rosey's got her own business. She started it in 2005. (have)

4 Write questions with **Have you ever ...?** and the correct form of the verbs in the box.

drink	read	play	be	eat
-------	------	------	----	-----

- 1 Have you ever been to Canada?
- 2 Greek wine?
- 3 golf?
- 4 Hamlet?
- 5 caviar?

Match responses a–e to questions 1–5 in exercise 4.

- a No, I haven't. But I've played tennis.
- b Yes, I have. I saw it last month at the theatre.
- c Yes, I have. I drank it in Athens on holiday.
- d No, I haven't. Is it delicious?
- e Yes, I have. I went there last year.

onunciation: have

2.06 Listen to the sentences. Do you hear the full form or the contracted form of *have*?

1 have	've
2 have	've
3 have	've
4 have not	haven't
5 have not	haven't
6 has	's
7 has	's
8 has not	hasn't

vocabulary

Match the verbs with the life events phrases.

1 buy	<input type="checkbox"/> b	a a baby
2 get	<input type="checkbox"/>	b a car
3 graduate	<input type="checkbox"/>	c your driving test
4 have	<input type="checkbox"/>	d house
5 move	<input type="checkbox"/>	e married
6 pass	<input type="checkbox"/>	f from university

8 Complete the daily events and housework with the verbs in the box.

clean comb do have iron
make ride tidy

- 1 clean your shoes / your teeth / the bathroom
- 2 _____ a shower / lunch / an idea
- 3 _____ your shirt / clothes
- 4 _____ the washing-up / the shopping
- 5 _____ the bed / dinner / money
- 6 _____ your hair
- 7 _____ your room / your desk
- 8 _____ a bicycle / a motorbike

Listen again

2.07 Listen and answer the questions.

- 1 Has he phoned Angelina yet?
No, he hasn't.
- 2 When is he going to phone her?
At four o'clock.
- 3 Has he phoned Tom yet?

- 4 Has he talked to Kevin yet?

- 5 Has he emailed Sharon yet?

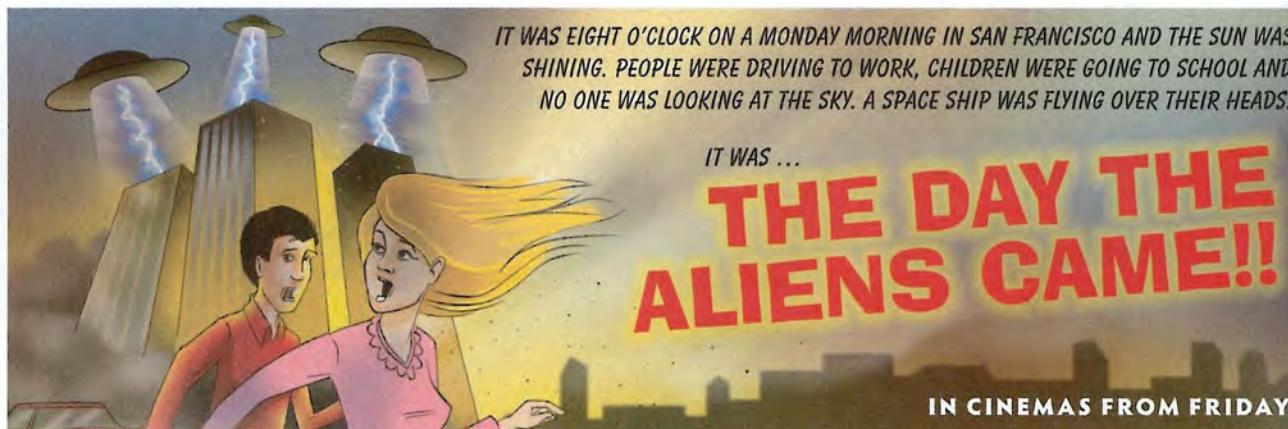
- 6 When is he going to email her?

- 7 Has he talked to Martin yet?

- 8 When is he going to talk to him?



56 Past continuous



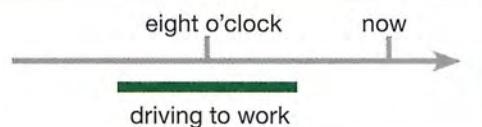
Presentation

Use the past continuous to talk about ...

- actions and events around a time in the past: *It was eight o'clock. People were driving to work.*
- background events: *The sun was shining.*

It was eight o'clock. People were driving to work.

(People started driving before eight o'clock and continued after eight o'clock.)



Affirmative and negative

I He She	was wasn't	driving to work. going to school.
You We They	were weren't	

Yes/No questions

Were	you they	driving to work? going to school?
Was	he she	

Wh- questions

What	were was	you / we / they I / he / she	doing?
------	-------------	---------------------------------	--------

Short answers

Yes,	I / he / she you / we / they	was, were.
No,	I / he / she you / we / they	wasn't. weren't.

TIP You don't normally use state verbs (e.g. *be, like, believe*) in the continuous form.

Key vocabulary Background events: the moon/sun was shining, it was raining, the wind was blowing, a dog was barking, bells were ringing, snow was falling

Exercises

1 Write affirmative and negative sentences. Use the past continuous.

- 1 the snow / fall / and the children / play / in it

The snow was falling and the children were playing in it.

- 2 the telephone / ring but Mike / work / in the garden

- 3 the students / not / do their work when the teacher came in

- 4 the baby / cry / because / a dog / bark

- 5 it / not / rain / so we ate outside

- 6 I / not plan / to go out but my friend was bored

2 Read the first part of the story. Then answer the questions.



It was midnight and the moon was shining in the sky. The church bell was ringing and dogs were barking. The wind was blowing but it wasn't raining. A baby was crying but her parents were sleeping ...

- 1 Was the sun shining? No, it wasn't.

- 2 Was the church bell ringing? _____

- 3 Were the dogs barking? _____

- 4 Was it raining? _____

- 5 Were the baby's parents watching TV? _____

3 ⑥2.08 Complete the conversation with the past continuous of the verbs.

A: I loved Paris. I was there in 1999.

B: Really? How long ¹ _____ were you living _____ (live) there?

A: For six months. I was a student.

B: What ² _____ (you study)?

A: Art.

B: That's amazing. My two brothers ³ _____ (study) art in Paris in 1999. Maybe you know them.

A: Which part ⁴ _____ (they live) in? I was in Montmatre.

B: No, I ⁵ _____ (not talk) about Paris in France.

They ⁶ _____ (live) in Paris in Texas!

A: Oh, I see.



57 Past simple and past continuous

while, when and suddenly

WHO KILLED LORD HUNTER?

LORD HUNTER was reading in the library when he died. Only three people lived with him. Detective Blane was looking at them – Lord Hunter's brother, his wife and his butler. First, the detective asked Lord Hunter's brother, Richard Hunter, a question. 'What were you doing this evening, Mr Hunter?' 'I was having dinner in the dining room at eight o'clock.' 'And were you having dinner, Lady Hunter?' 'No, I wasn't. I was sleeping in my bedroom at eight o'clock because I was tired.' 'What about you?' The detective was looking at the butler.

'I was tidying the library at eight o'clock. Suddenly I found Lord Hunter on the floor.'



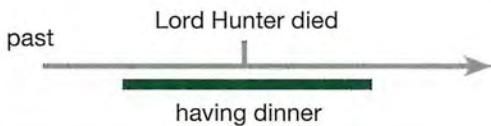
'It's interesting,' said Blane. 'When Lord Hunter died at eight o'clock, you were having dinner and you were sleeping. But I didn't say eight o'clock. In fact, Lord Hunter died at half past eight.'

Presentation

You often use the past continuous and the past simple together to talk about two actions in the past.

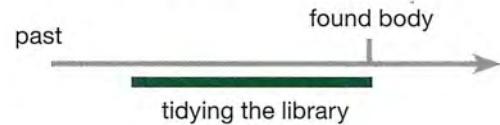
- Use the past continuous to talk about an action that was in progress around a time in the past.
- Use the past simple to talk about an action that 1) happened during, or 2) stopped the action in the past continu

When Lord Hunter died at eight o'clock, you were having dinner.



The butler found Lord Hunter's body while/when he was tidying the library.

The butler was tidying the library when he found Lord Hunter's body.



while, when and suddenly

- You often use *while* with the past continuous: *He died while I was sleeping.*
- Use *when* with the past continuous and past simple: *He died when I was sleeping. I was sleeping when he died.*
- Use *suddenly* to describe an immediate change: *The sun was shining. Suddenly, it started raining.*

Key vocabulary Rooms: bedroom, dining room, kitchen, library, living room, study

Choose the correct forms.

I was cooking when the doorbell rang / was ringing.

I watched / was watching my favourite TV programme when the baby started to cry.

The dogs barked / were barking. Suddenly, they were quiet.

When we were tidying the study, we found / were finding my old school photographs.

I was waiting at the train station when I saw / was seeing my brother.

While I had / was having lunch my friend called.

We were driving home. Suddenly, the car engine stopped / was stopping.

While she was cleaning the kitchen, another guest arrived / was arriving.

2.09 Complete the conversation with the past simple or past continuous of the verbs. Then listen and check.

detective: What ¹ were you doing (do) here at midnight?

itness: I ² (drive) along this road when my car suddenly ³ (stop). So I walked to the house and rang the doorbell.

detective: Did you see anyone while you ⁴ (wait)?

itness: No. It ⁵ (rain) and a dog ⁶ (bark). Suddenly the door ⁷ (open) but no one was there.

etective: ⁸ you (enter) the house?

itness: Yes. And while I ⁹ (walk) through the house, I ¹⁰ (see) the woman. She was crying.

etective: What ¹¹ you (do) next?

itness: I asked her name.

Take sentences. Use the past continuous and past simple.

I / meet / old friend / while / wait / at the bus station

I met an old friend while I was waiting at the bus station.

they / not work / when / we / arrive

when / she / call, I / have / a bath

everyone / look / at the sky. Suddenly, they / see / the aliens!

while / we / eat / breakfast, my taxi / arrive

I / read / my book when / the lights / go out

while / we / watch / TV / Molly / tell us / her / news

my parents / live / Italy / when / I / born

58 Conjunctions

and, or, but, before, after, while, when, because and so

Rome, 17th April

Dear Megan

We're in Rome at last. The trip began in London. I didn't like England but I loved Scotland. There wasn't time to see Ireland or Wales so we went straight to Paris. And guess what? While we were visiting the Eiffel Tower, we met some old college friends. We travelled with them in their car to Spain because it was cheaper than the train. After we reached Barcelona, we took a boat to Italy.

Presentation

Use *and, or, but* to connect words or parts of sentences.

- Use *and* to add information or to talk about a sequence: *We visited Austria and Russia. We left England and crossed to France.*
- Use *or* for choices and alternatives: *Which do you prefer: England or Scotland?* Also use *or* for two negative facts: *There wasn't time to visit Ireland or Wales.*
- Use *but* to talk about differences: *The hotel was good but expensive. I liked Paris but I didn't like London.*

Use *before, after, while, when, because, so* to connect two parts of a sentence.

- Use *before, after* and *when* to show a sequence: *Before we went to Paris, we visited London. We were in London before we went to Paris.*
- Use *while* and *when* to talk about two actions at the same time: *While I was travelling, I met an old friend. I often meet old friends when I go to Paris.*
- Use *because* to give a reason: *We travelled in their car because it was cheaper than the train.*
- Use *so* to show a result: *They were driving to Spain so we travelled in their car.*

Key vocabulary Travel verbs: begin (in), go, visit, travel, drive, reach, take (a boat, a taxi, a train)

Places to visit: museum, art gallery, palace, park, monument, beach

Exercises

1 Choose the correct conjunctions.

- 1 After/ When we visited the museum, we went to the park.
- 2 We didn't go to the palace *so / because* it was too expensive.
- 3 They visited the museum *and / or* the monument on the same day.
- 4 I didn't see the palace *but / or* the museum.
- 5 *And / Before* we went to the park, we visited the museum.
- 6 *When / While* we reached Sicily, we spent two days on the beach.
- 7 The gallery was closed *so / and* we sat in the park.
- 8 *While / After* I was waiting for the boat, I had lunch.
- 9 The hotel wasn't very nice *when / but* the restaurant was great.



2 ②.10 Complete the conversation with the words in the boxes. Then listen and check.

-and after but so while

A: Have you ever been to Australia?

B: Yes, in fact I went when I was sixteen ¹ _____ and again when I was twenty. I went the second time ² _____ I was taking a gap year.

A: Wow! Did you go to New Zealand, too?

B: Yes ... ³ _____ Australia, I went to New Zealand ⁴ _____ I only travelled round the North Island. I was only there for a week ⁵ _____. I didn't have time for the South Island as well.

because or when

A: So which did you prefer, Australia ⁶ _____ New Zealand?

B: I suppose Australia but only ⁷ _____ we had problems at the airport in New Zealand. ⁸ _____ we were leaving for Los Angeles, there was a 36-hour delay!



3 Join the sentences. Use the conjunction in brackets.

1 We went to London. We went to Paris. (and)

We went to London and Paris.

2 We didn't have time to visit the palace. We didn't have time to visit the park. (or)

3 We booked tickets. We went to the theatre. (before)

4 We had dinner. We went to the theatre. (after)

5 She liked the theatre. She didn't enjoy the opera. (but)

6 I was waiting for a taxi. My friend arrived with his car. (while)

7 The art gallery closed. I went for a drink. (when)

8 We didn't go to the palace. We were hungry. (because)

9 The museum was closed. He went shopping. (so)

59 used to



- Fred: Is that really you?
Mandy: Yes, I used to have pink hair.
Fred: Amazing! And did you use to wear uniforms?
Mandy: Yes, we did. I hated it.
Fred: Where's your hat?
Mandy: I didn't use to wear mine. My teacher used to get really angry with me.

Presentation

Use *used to* to talk about states or habits in the past.

- State: *I used to have long hair.*
- Habit: *I used to get up at six o'clock.*

Affirmative and negative

I / You / He / She / We / They	used to	have pink hair. wear a uniform.
	didn't use to	

Questions and short answers

Did	I / you / he / she / we / they	use to	have pink hair? wear a uniform?
Yes, I / you / he / she / we / they	did.	No, I / you / he / she / we / they	didn't.

TIP The past simple is also correct for states and habits in the past but you often use *used to*.

With *used to*, you don't need to give a particular time.

I worked in my father's shop when I was young.
I used to work in my father's shop.

Exercises

1 Correct the mistakes. Two sentences are correct.

- 1 I use to work in a shop.
- 2 My grandparents used to visit us every Sunday.
- 3 We didn't use to have aeroplanes.
- 4 Television didn't used to be in colour.
- 5 I used to loved chocolate!
- 6 Did you used to live here?

I used to work in a shop.

2 **2.11** Complete the conversation with *used* or *use*. Then listen and check.

- Child: Grandfather, did you ¹ _____ to go to school?
- Grandfather: Yes, I did. But I ² _____ to walk. We didn't have a car in those days.
- Child: How long did it ³ _____ to take?
- Grandfather: I ⁴ _____ to get up at six o'clock and my sisters and I walked for an hour. The school was in the next village.
- Child: What was your favourite subject?
- Grandfather: Well, I didn't ⁵ _____ to like school very much. The teachers didn't ⁶ _____ to be very nice. But I suppose reading books was my favourite lesson. I ⁷ _____ to enjoy that and I still do!

3 Complete the sentences. Use the correct form of *used* to.



1 She didn't use to wear lots of make up.



2 He _____



3 He _____



4 They _____

4 Complete the sentences so that they are true for you.

- 1 I used to _____ but I don't now.
- 2 I didn't use to _____ but I do now.

60 Review of units 56 to 59

Grammar

1 Complete the sentences with the past continuous of the verbs in the box.

have not look run study talk not work

- 1 I met some friends while I was running in the park.
- 2 Who was talking to you on the phone just now?
- 3 I tried to call you earlier but my phone wasn't working.
- 4 I've just seen my sister and Jamie. They were having lunch in a café.
- 5 Was Karen studying for her exam last night?
- 6 John took a photo of me while I was sitting.

2 Complete the texts with the past simple or past continuous of the verbs.



Matthew¹ was sleeping (sleep) but suddenly he² woke up (wake up). He³ looked (look) out of the window and on the hillside a strange dog⁴ barked (bark).



I⁵ cycled (cycle) to the supermarket when a car⁶ drove (drive) in front of me. I shouted: You⁷ weren't looking (not look) where you were going! The driver⁸ said (say) he was sorry.

3 Complete the conjunctions.

- 1 I always like to eat chocolate after a evening meal.
- 2 Roger and Betty are married.
- 3 I left the cinema early because the film was boring.
- 4 Before you go to bed, please tidy your room.
- 5 Normally, I like any music but this is awful!
- 6 Would you like tea or coffee?
- 7 I was tired so I went to bed.
- 8 We were talking when the teacher came in.
- 9 What were you doing while I was working?

4 Rewrite the sentences using the correct form of used to.

- 1 I lived in Beijing when I was a child.
I used to live in Beijing when I was a child.
- 2 What did you do when you worked there?

- 3 He didn't like carrots before he left home.

- 4 They had long hair in 1975.

- 5 She didn't drive before last year.

- 6 As a student, when did you go to bed?

Pronunciation: /s/ or /z/

- 5 **2.12** Listen to these sentences. Do you hear /s/ or /z/ in used or use?

- 1 I used all the cheese for my sandwich. /z/
- 2 He didn't use to be lazy. /s/
- 3 Did she use to live here?
- 4 We used dictionaries in the exam.
- 5 It used to be harder to travel abroad.
- 6 I didn't use your mobile phone.

Vocabulary

- 6 Write the words for rooms.

- 1 b~dr~m bedroom
- 2 d~n~ng r~~m
- 3 k~tch~n
- 4 l~br~ry
- 5 l~v~ng r~~m
- 6 st~dy

- 7 Complete the postcard with the words in the box.

gallery palace monument beach park

Hi Felicity

From my hotel room I can see the King's
1 palace but I haven't seen him
yet! Yesterday we visited the national art
2 . After that we ate bread and
cheese in the 3 next to a large
4 of another king on his horse.
Tomorrow, we're leaving the city for a few days.
We want to sit on a 5 for a
few days after all this sightseeing!

See you soon
Andrew

Listen again

- 8 **2.13** Listen and write in the missing words.

- A: Have you ever been to Australia?
B: Yes, in fact I went
1 _____ and
again when I was twenty. I went the second time
2 _____ a gap
year.
A: Wow! Did you go to New Zealand too?
B: Yes ...
I went to New Zealand
4 _____
round the North Island. I was only there for a
week 5 _____
for the South Island as well.
B: So which did you prefer,
6 _____ ?
A: I suppose Australia but only
7 _____ at the
airport in New Zealand.
8 _____ for
Los Angeles, there was a 36-hour delay!



61 *all, most, some, none*

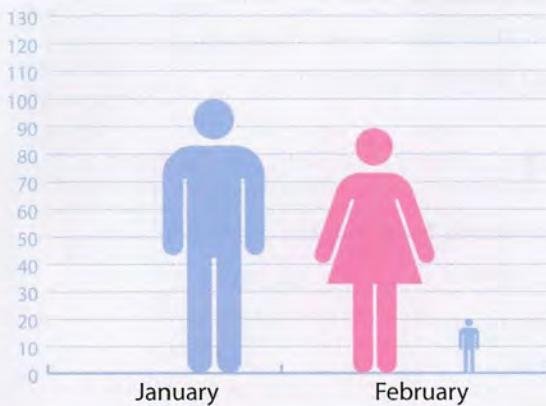
Report



Students: January and February

In January, none of the students was female. All of them were male.

In February, some students were male but most of them were female.



Presentation

all

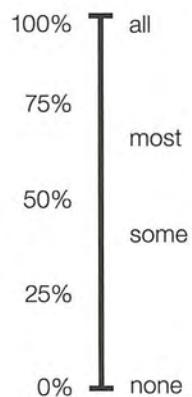
All	students the students	are	married.
All of	the students them		

most and some

Most Some	students	are	married.
Most of Some of	the students them		

none

None of	the students them	is	married.
---------	----------------------	----	----------



Use *all, most* or *some* without *of*, to talk about people or things in general:

Some people don't like cats. Most people like ice cream.

Key vocabulary Learning a language: listening, speaking, reading, writing, grammar, vocabulary, literature

Exercises

1 Look at the charts. Complete the sections from the report with *all*, *most*, *some* or *none*.

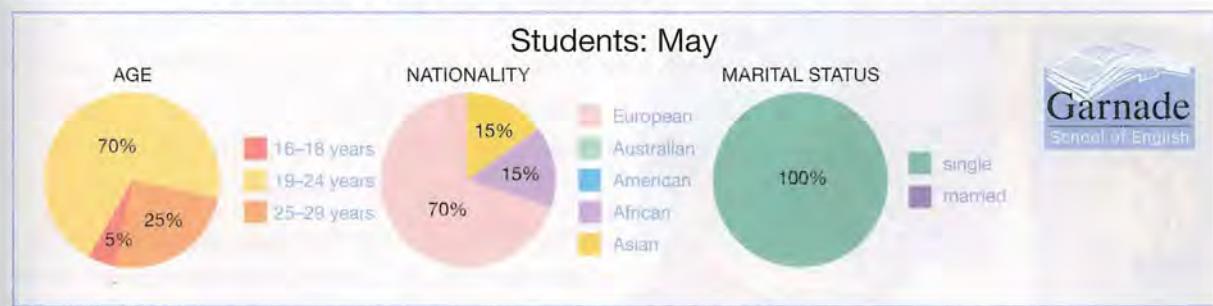


CHART 1: AGE

- 1 None of the students is younger than 16 years old or older than 29.
2 _____ of them are between 25 and 29 but ³ _____ of them are between 19 and 24.

CHART 2: NATIONALITY

- 4 _____ of the students are European. ⁵ _____ of them are Asian or African.
6 _____ of them is American or Australian.

CHART 3: MARITAL STATUS

- 7 _____ of the students is married. ⁸ _____ of them are single.

2 Add *of* to the sentences where necessary.

- 1 All ⁰ students are older than 15. 5 Some _____ students are from Asia.
2 None ^{of} the students is older than 29. 6 Most _____ them are from Europe.
3 Most _____ students are between 19 and 24. 7 None _____ the students is from Australia or America.
4 Some _____ them are from Africa. 8 All _____ them are single.

3 Put the phrases in order to make a report about the chart. Then listen and check.

- is Literature: none of
 studying Grammar and Vocabulary (70%). Some of
 the students has chosen it.
 the students have chosen it. Most of them are also
 them are studying Reading and Writing (30%). The worst
 Listening and Speaking has been a success: all



62 *any-, every-, no-, some- / -thing, -where, -body, -one*



Boss: Did anyone call for me while I was at lunch?
 Secretary: Oh, yes. Everybody wants you today! First of all, somebody rang about your car – it's ready to collect. Then, you need to call your wife back. And finally, your friend Malcolm rang. He wants to meet somewhere for a drink this evening.
 Boss: Were there any calls about work?
 Secretary: No, nothing like that.

Presentation

	-thing	-where	-one	-body
any-	anything	anywhere	anyone	anybody
every-	everything	everywhere	everyone	everybody
no-	nothing	nowhere	no one	nobody
some-	something	somewhere	someone	somebody

Use these pronouns with the verb in the singular form: *Everybody wants you today.*

- Use *any-* in questions: *Is there anything to do?*
- Use *not any-* in negative sentences: *There wasn't anything to do.*
- Note that *not any- = no-:* *There was nothing to do.*

You can use these pronouns before adjectives to add more detail: *She's cooking something special for dinner.*

TIP You can use *one* instead of *body*: *anyone, everyone, no one, someone.*

Exercises

1 Complete the sentences with the words in brackets.

- (nothing, everybody) Everybody was hungry but there was nothing to eat.
- (nobody, everybody) There's in the house. has gone to the beach.
- (anything, anybody) There isn't good on at the cinema. Does want to go out for a meal?
- (anybody, somebody) There's at the door – are you expecting ?
- (nobody, everything) I phoned but answered. Is OK?

2 Complete the sentences with the pairs of words in the box.

somewhere + nowhere something + somebody everywhere + anywhere
anything + nothing anybody + anywhere

- 1 Has anybody got José's number? I can't find it anywhere.
- 2 I've got something exciting to tell you about anywhere you know.
- 3 We didn't do anything interesting all weekend – we stayed at home and did nothing.
- 4 I've lost my keys. I've looked for them everywhere but I can't find them anywhere.
- 5 I'm looking for anywhere to park, but there's nowhere in this street.

3 Rewrite the sentences. Change **no-** to **not any-** and **not any- to no-**.

- 1 There's nobody in the house. There isn't anybody in the house.
- 2 There isn't anything to do. There's nothing to do.
- 3 There's nowhere to go. There's not anywhere to go.
- 4 There's nothing on TV. There's not anything on TV.
- 5 There isn't anybody I want to phone. There's not anybody I want to phone.
- 6 There isn't anywhere worse than here. There's not anywhere worse than here.

4 ②.15 Complete the conversations. Then listen and check.

Conversation 1

- A: Polly, I've got ¹ something to tell you. I'm leaving.
B: But why John? I did ² something for you.
A: I know you did. But it will never work between us.
B: Oh, John. Is there ³ anything I can do to change your mind?
A: No, ⁴ nothing.

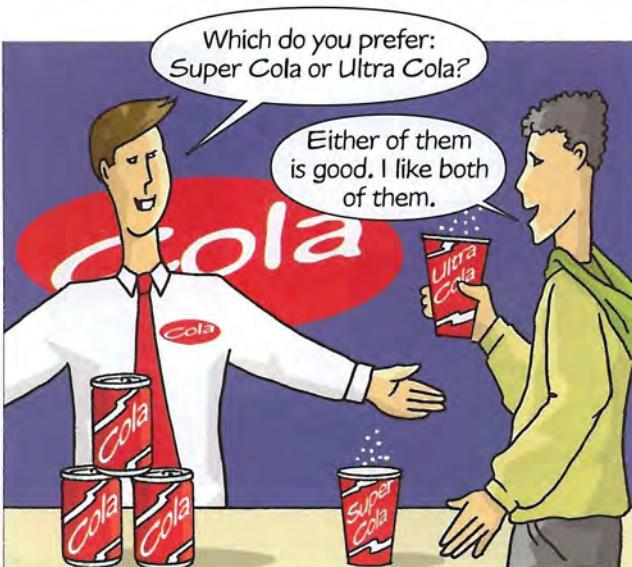
Conversation 2

- C: Did you hear that?
D: No, I didn't. I didn't hear ⁵ anything.
C: I think there's ⁶ something downstairs.
D: No, there isn't. There's ⁷ nothing downstairs. Go to sleep.
C: Then what was THAT?

Conversation 3

- E: Your travel photos are wonderful. You've been ⁸ anywhere.
F: Not really. Only to India and Thailand.
E: Well, it's more than me. I haven't done ⁹ anything with my life and I haven't been ¹⁰ anywhere.
F: That's not true. What about your camping holiday last year, for example?

63 both, neither and either



Presentation

both and neither

Use *both* and *neither* to say that two things or people are the same. *Both* is positive. *Neither* is negative.



Both of them are happy.
Both students are happy.



Neither of them is happy.
Neither student is happy.

either

Use *either* to say that the choice between two people or things is not important:

Either of them is fine. (= I like both of them. I don't mind which one I have.)

TIP not + either = neither: *I don't want either of them.* = *I want neither of them.*

- *Both* is plural: *Both of them are students. Both teenagers are students.*
- *Either* is singular: *Either of them is fine.*
- *Neither* is singular: *Neither of them is British. Neither student is British.*

TIP You can use these words with a noun: *both students, neither country, either drink.*

Exercises

1 Look at the interview notes. Complete the sentences with *both* or *neither*.



- | | |
|-------------------------|----------------|
| What's your name? | Hans |
| Where are you from? | Austria |
| Where do you live? | In London |
| How old are you? | I'm 21. |
| What do you do? | I'm a student. |
| How tall are you? | I'm 1m 85. |
| Have you got a car? | No, I haven't. |
| Do you like rock music? | Yes, I do. |
| Do you like jazz? | No, I don't. |
| Do you play tennis? | Yes, I do. |
| Do you play basketball? | No, I don't. |
| Can you speak French? | No, I can't. |
| Can you speak Italian? | Yes, I can. |

- | |
|----------------|
| Carlo |
| Uruguay |
| In London |
| I'm 21. |
| I'm a student. |
| I'm 1m 86. |
| No, I haven't. |
| Yes, I do. |
| No, I don't. |
| Yes, I do. |
| No, I don't. |
| No, I can't. |
| Yes, I can. |

- | | | | |
|--------|----------------------------|----|---------------------------|
| 1 Both | of them are tall. | 7 | of them play tennis. |
| 2 | of them are 21. | 8 | of them plays basketball. |
| 3 | of them can speak French. | 9 | of them is British. |
| 4 | of them like rock music. | 10 | of them live in London. |
| 5 | of them likes jazz. | 11 | of them are students. |
| 6 | of them can speak Italian. | 12 | of them has got a car. |

2 Write sentences with *either* and *neither* and the words in the box.

country language sport type of music

- | | | | |
|---|---|---|--|
| 1 | I don't like jazz and I don't like rock music.
I don't like either type of music.
I like neither type of music. | 3 | I can't speak French and I can't speak Italian.

 |
| 2 | I haven't been to Austria and I haven't been to Uruguay.

 | 4 | I don't play tennis and I don't play basketball.

 |

3 ②.16 Complete the sentences with *both*, *either* or *neither*. Then listen and check.

- | | | | |
|---|---|---|--|
| 1 | Oh, no! I've lost _____ of my earrings. | 4 | _____ of the women were in the train station at eight o'clock. |
| 2 | _____ of those men is my husband. | 5 | You can take the bus or go by train. _____ is just as fast. |
| 3 | I haven't tried _____ of these drinks. | 6 | _____ of my parents is English. |

64 *much, many and a lot*

Countable and uncountable nouns



- A: OK. How much rice have we got?
B: We've got a lot. We've got 10,000 kilos.
A: And how many tins of vegetables?
B: Not many. Just 2,500 tins.
A: That's not good. How much flour have we got?
B: Not much. Just 1,000 kilos.



Presentation

Countable and uncountable nouns

- Some nouns are countable: *one tin, two tins, three tins ...*
Countable nouns have singular and plural forms.
- Some nouns are uncountable: *rice, flour ...*
Uncountable nouns are always singular.

much, many and a lot

- Use *much* with uncountable nouns.
- Use *many* with countable nouns.
- Use *much* and *many* in questions (with *how*) and in negatives: *How much rice? There isn't much rice.* *How many tins? There aren't many tins.*
- Use *a lot* with both countable and uncountable nouns: *a lot of tins, a lot of rice.*

Exercises

1 Are these things countable or uncountable? Write C or U.

1 rice	U	9 air	
2 flour		10 light	
3 tin of soup		11 space	
4 people		12 window	
5 money		13 CD	
6 time		14 book	
7 petrol		15 DVD	
8 oil		16 milk	

② 2.17 Complete the conversations with **much** or **many**. Then listen and check.



Conversation 1

- A: How ¹ **much** time have we got?
 B: We've got about an hour before everyone arrives.
 A: How ² people are coming?
 B: Not ³ – about twenty.
 A: Twenty? And how ⁴ money have we spent?



Conversation 2

- C: Is the car ready?
 D: Well, we haven't got ⁵ petrol.
 C: OK, and how ⁶ oil have we got?
 D: Not ⁷ and there isn't ⁸ air in the tyres.



Conversation 3

- E: Did you like the apartment?
 F: No, I didn't. There wasn't ⁹ light.
 E: Really?
 F: No, and there weren't ¹⁰ windows. And there wasn't ¹¹ space either.



Conversation 4

- G: How ¹² CDs are there?
 H: About five hundred.
 G: What about books? How ¹³ books are there?
 H: About a thousand.
 G: And how ¹⁴ DVDs are there?
 H: About two hundred.

Correct the sentences. Five are correct.

- 1 There are a lot of tins in that cupboard.
- 2 We don't have many salt.
- 3 How many milk do you need?
- 4 I have a lot of information about it.
- 5 There isn't a lot time. Let's go!
- 6 How much rooms do you need?
- 7 There aren't many chairs.
- 8 How a lot of rice do you want?
- 9 How much sugar have we got?
- 10 There aren't much milk in the fridge.
- 11 Are there much people at the party?
- 12 A lot of people is vegetarians these days.

correct

We don't have much salt.

65 Review of units 61 to 64

Grammar

- 1 Complete the second sentence with **all**, **most**, **some** or **none**.



- 1 100% of the students are studying English.
All the students are studying English.
- 2 30% of them are studying Chinese.
Some of them are studying Chinese.
- 3 75% are studying business.
Most are studying business.
- 4 0% are studying Latin.
None is studying Latin.
- 5 100% of the students are between 14 and 18 years old.
All of the students are between 14 and 18 years old.
- 6 80% are older than 16.
Most are older than 16.
- 7 70% of them are from Europe.
Many of them are from Europe.
- 8 25% are from Asia.
Some are from Asia.
- 9 0% are from America.
None is from America.

- 2 Complete the sentences with **everybody**, **somebody**, **anybody** or **nobody**.

- 1 Everybody in my family likes ice cream.
- 2 Is there anybody in the house?
- 3 I'm sure I saw somebody in the garden.
- 4 Somebody came to my party – it was terrible.
- 5 Nobody came to my party – it was wonderful.
- 6 Somebody knows where they went on holiday. They didn't tell us.
- 7 Has anybody seen my car keys?

- 3 Complete the sentences with **everywhere**, **somewhere**, **anywhere** or **nowhere**.

- 1 Are you going anywhere this week?
- 2 I've looked everywhere and I can't find my keys.
- 3 There's somewhere nicer than home.
- 4 There isn't anywhere to park here.
- 5 Every year we go somewhere different for our holidays.
- 6 The café was really busy and there was nowhere for me to sit.
- 7 I've seen that man somewhere before, but I just can't remember where.

- 4 Complete the sentences with **everything**, **something**, **anything** or **nothing**.

- 1 Wait a minute – I've got something in my shoe.
- 2 There isn't anything on TV.
- 3 I'd like to do something fun today.
- 4 We have to go to the shops: there's nothing to eat in the house.
- 5 Don't worry. Everything is going to be OK.
- 6 He wasn't hungry, so he didn't have anything to eat.
- 7 There was nothing in the room. It was completely empty.

Complete the sentences with *both*, *either* or *neither*.

- 1 I've got two brothers. Both of them live in London.
- 2 _____ of my parents speaks English.
- 3 _____ of us wants to go out tonight.
- 4 We can see _____ film, I don't mind.
- 5 Hmm, apple pie or ice cream ... Could I have _____, please?
- 6 I don't like _____ of these CDs very much.
- 7 We tried two hotels but _____ of them had any rooms.
- 8 I can't decide. _____ of them is fine.

Choose the correct options.

- 1 How much / many petrol is / are there?
- 2 How much / many time is / are there?
- 3 How much / many books is / are there?
- 4 How much / many DVDs is / are there?
- 5 How much / many money is / are there?
- 6 How much / many space is / are there?
- 7 How much / many people is / are there?
- 8 How much / many CDs is / are there?

Pronunciation: *of*

②.18 We often pronounce *of* like this: /əv/.

Listen and repeat each line.

All of

All of the students

All of the students have a lot of

All of the students have a lot of homework

All of the students have a lot of homework but none of

All of the students have a lot of homework but none of them has done it.

Vocabulary

8 What are the students learning in English? Match the words in the box to the sentences.

listening speaking reading writing
grammar vocabulary literature

- 1 How do you say this word? speaking
- 2 Sorry, I didn't understand. Can you play it again, please?
- 3 What is the opposite of 'happy'?
- 4 What's the past tense of 'do'? _____
- 5 I don't understand what Shakespeare means.
- 6 What does this sentence mean?

- 7 How do I finish a letter?

Listen again

9 ③.19 Listen and answer the questions.

Conversation 1

- 1 How much time have they got?
About an hour.
- 2 How many people are coming?

Conversation 2

- 3 How much oil have they got?

Conversation 3

- 4 Was there much light in the apartment?

- 5 Were there many windows?

Conversation 4

- 6 How many CDs are there?

- 7 How many books are there?

- 8 How many DVDs are there?

66 *a/an* (indefinite article)



Presentation

a or an?

Use *a* before a consonant sound: *a doctor, a celebrity, a university.*

Use *an* before a word beginning with a vowel sound: *an animal, an hour.*

Use *a/an* (indefinite article) with ...

- singular countable nouns: *a girl*
- adjective + noun: *a small dog*
- occupations: *I'd like to be a pop star.*
- possessions and residences: *I've got a huge car. She lives in an enormous house.*

TIP Don't use *a/an* with plural nouns (*a girls*) or uncountable nouns (*an information*).

Key vocabulary Occupations: actor, celebrity, chef, composer, engineer, pop star, shop assistant, teacher

Exercises

1 Complete the phrases with *a* or *an* where possible.

1	<i>an</i>	actor	7	Australian rock band
2	<i>Ø</i>	exercises	8	shop assistants
3	German actor	9	beautiful place
4	water	10	cheese
5	difficult exercises	11	old car
6	engineer	12	rock band

2.20 Complete the conversations with **a** or **an**. Then listen and check.

Conversation 1

What would you like to be when you leave school?

I'd like to be ¹ **a** great composer.

Really? Do you play music?

No, but I got ² **a** guitar for my birthday so I'm going to learn.

Conversation 2

Did you read about Robbie?

Yes, he's bought ³ **an** enormous house in Hollywood.

Can you believe it? I remember when he was ⁴ **a** assistant in our local shop.

Conversation 3

Is there ⁵ **a** library in the centre of town?

Yes, it's straight ahead and on the right. It's ⁶ **a** huge building and it's got ⁷ **a** sign outside. You can't miss it.

Conversation 4

How was the interview? Did they offer you ⁸ **a** job?

Yes, and I get ⁹ **a** office with my own computer!

Sounds great. How much holiday do you get?

I think I have ¹⁰ **a** holiday after two years.

What?!

Correct the sentences.

He lives in ^a small apartment.

6 Would you like **a** table for two?

Maria was ^a Maths teacher for three years.

7 Robert De Niro is **a** American actor.

They've got **a** tickets for the match.

8 Have you seen **a** umbrella anywhere?

My uncle is **a** engineer.

9 I'm going to be **a** chefs when I'm older.

That's **a** beautiful bracelet!

10 Is there **an** bank near here?

Read the text. The indefinite articles are missing. Write them in.

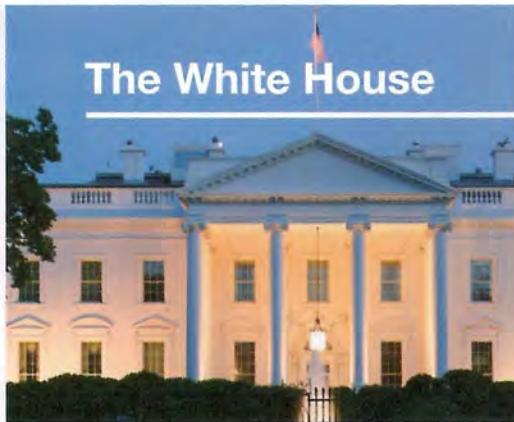


Why do we love celebrities? Perhaps it's because our favourite star is ^a singer or ^a actor. But what about celebrities who are famous because they are 'famous'? For example, Paris Hilton grew up in rich family. Then, as adult, she was always in magazine. She spent all her time at parties with other famous people. She has had many different jobs. She was model for a while. She made album, worked as actress in some TV commercials and films and has also written book. But her most successful job is as celebrity – whatever that is!

67 **the** (the definite article)



The sun is the star at the centre of our solar system.



The White House is the official home and workplace of the President of the United States of America.



blue whale

Blue whales are the largest animals in the world. They lived in all the oceans before the twentieth century. Nowadays, they normally live in the Antarctic, the Indian Ocean, the ...

Presentation

Use *the* (definite article) with ...

- singular and plural countable nouns: *the house, the houses*.
- unique things (where there is only one): *the world, the White House, the Indian Ocean*.
- superlatives: *Blue whales are the largest animals in the world*.
- groups of countries or countries which are plural: *the United Kingdom, the European Union, the United States of America, the Philippines*.
- locations: *in the middle, on the left/right, in the north/south/east/west*.
- musical instruments: *I play the saxophone*.

Key vocabulary The world: the Earth (the world), the sun, the moon, the Indian Ocean, the United States of America (USA), the Netherlands, the Philippines, the United Kingdom (UK), the European Union (EU), the Indian Ocean, the Black Sea, the Atlantic Ocean, the North Pole, the Arctic, the Suez Canal, the Mediterranean Sea, the Red Sea
Places to visit: the White House, the Eiffel Tower, the Statue of Liberty, the Atomium monument

Exercises

1 The definite items are missing. Write them in the sentences.

1 This is Anouk. She's from ^{the} Netherlands.

7 Can you play piano?

2 Sri Lanka is in Indian Ocean.

8 Paris is famous for Eiffel Tower.

3 Cheetahs are fastest animal on land.

9 That was worst film I've ever seen!

4 Harald V is King of Norway.

10 Black Sea used to be part of Atlantic Ocean.

5 Earth is 384,000 km from moon.

11 There are twenty-seven countries in European Union.

6 My mother cooks best cakes in world!

12 I love to listen to violin.

2.21 Write sentences. Add the definite article and make any other necessary changes. Then listen and check.



1 tortoises / live / longest

Tortoises live the longest.



4 / North Pole / be /
in / Arctic



5 / Suez canal connects /
Mediterranean Sea to / Red Sea



2 Yuri Gagarin / be /
first man in space



3 / Atomium
monument / be /
Brussels



6 Ferdinand
Magellan / go round /
world in 1519

68 *a/an* and *the*



Presentation

- Use *a/an* for things in general and *the* for specific things.

A: *Can I borrow a pen?* (any pen)

B: *Sorry, this is the only pen I've got.* (a specific pen)

- Use *the* for things you know about.

A: *The exams start next week.*

B: *Yes, I know.*

- Use *a/an* for the first mention. Use *the* for the second mention.

A: *Is there a football match tonight?*

B: *No, there isn't. The next match is on the 25th.*

Exercises

1 Complete the sentences and questions with *a/an* or *the*.

- 1 Can I have a drink, please?
- 2 Is this the only pen you've got?
- 3 We'd like the table for two, please.
- 4 When does the History exam start?
- 5 What time is the last bus?
- 6 Is there an airport near your town?
- 7 What's the name of your new teacher?
- 8 Could you close the back door, please?
- 9 Who's the girl with long hair?
- 10 I've got a terrible headache.

2 Match the responses to a–j to the questions in exercise 1.

- | | | | |
|---|-------------------------------------|---|--------------------------|
| a Mr Baines. | <input type="checkbox"/> | f Of course. | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| b At midnight, I think. | <input type="checkbox"/> | g Would you like an aspirin? | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| c Sure. Tea or coffee? | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | h Yes, it is. | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| d My sister. | <input type="checkbox"/> | i At nine thirty. | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| e Yes, there's one about fifteen kilometres away. | <input type="checkbox"/> | j Certainly. There's one by the window. | <input type="checkbox"/> |

3 2.22 Choose the correct options. Then listen and check.

Conversation 1

- A: It's hot in here. Can I open ¹a / the window?
B: Yes, but open ²a / the window in the middle. The other two don't open.

Conversation 2

- C: Is there ³a / the hotel near here?
D: Yes, there's ⁴a / the Hilton down there.
C: Thanks.

Conversation 3

- E: Have you got ⁵a / the computer at home?
F: Yes, I have. In fact, I've just bought ⁶an / the Apple Mac.
E: What's it like?
F: It's fantastic. ⁷A / The screen is enormous and it's really easy to use.

Conversation 4

- G: Hello. I'm on ⁸a / the ten-thirty flight to ⁹a / the USA.
H: Can I see your ticket and passport?
G: Sure.
H: Would you like ¹⁰a / the window or ¹¹an / the aisle seat?
G: Window, please.

Conversation 5

- I: Who's ¹²a / the man on the bicycle? He's very good-looking.
J: I'm not sure, but I think he's one of ¹³a / the new teachers.
I: Oh.

Conversation 6

- K: Can I have ¹⁴a / the coffee?
L: Sure. There's ¹⁵a / the cup in ¹⁶a / the kitchen cupboard.
K: Thanks.

Conversation 7

- M: ¹⁷A / The film I told you about is on TV tonight.
N: Really? I was going to relax and read ¹⁸a / the book this evening.
M: You should watch ¹⁹a / the film. It's ²⁰a / the best film I've ever seen.

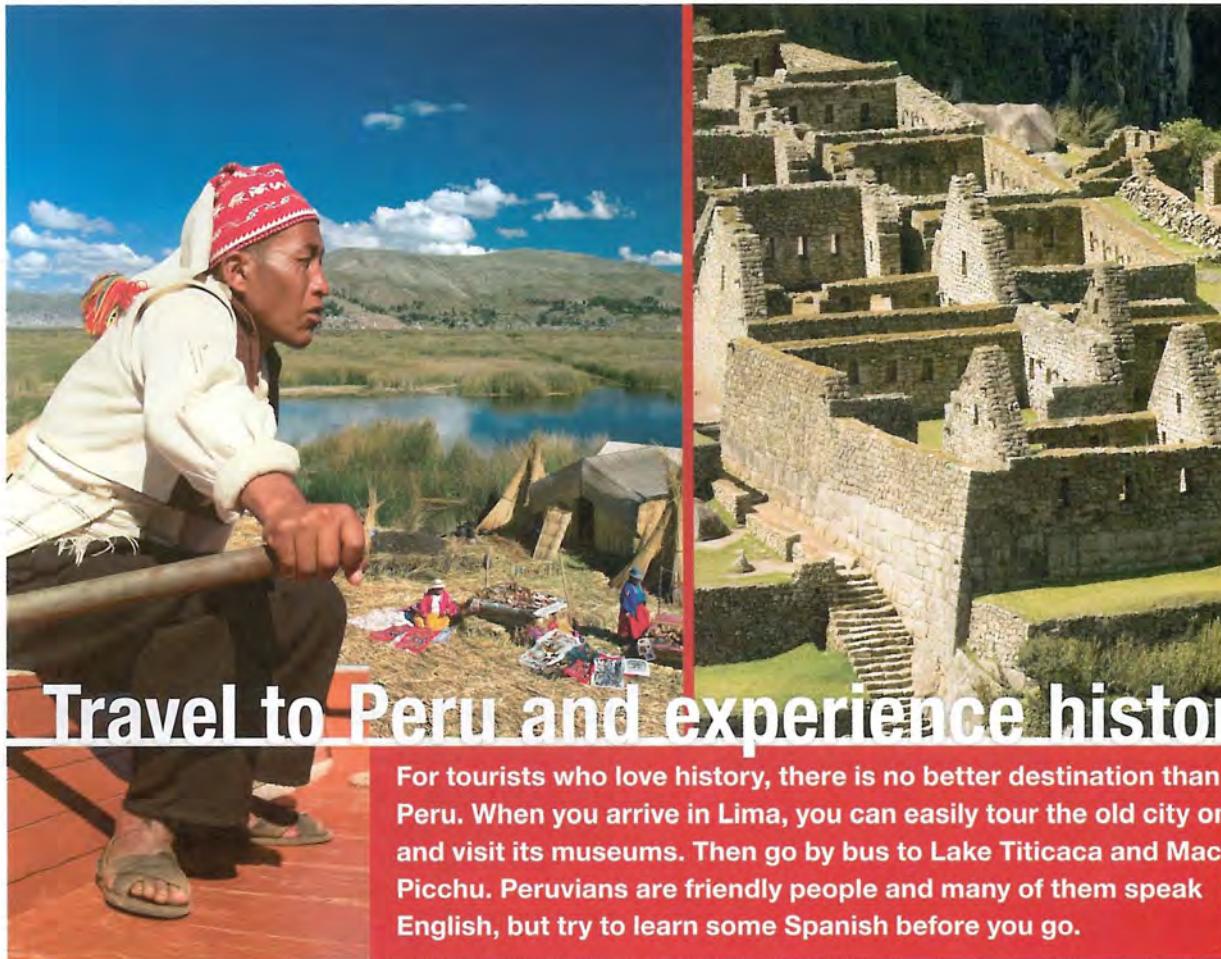
Conversation 8

- O: I haven't had ²¹a / the good meal in ages.
P: We should try ²²a / the new Italian restaurant in town. I've heard ²³a / the pizzas are great.
O: Good idea. Let's go tonight.

4 Write articles in the boxes. Then complete the sentences so that they are true for you.

- 1 The most famous place in my country is _____
- 2 My birthday is on _____
- 3 I've got _____
- 4 Next week, I'm going to _____
- 5 I'm _____
- 6 best holiday I had was in _____
- 7 leader of my country is _____
- 8 My favourite musical instrument is _____

69 No article



Travel to Peru and experience history

For tourists who love history, there is no better destination than Peru. When you arrive in Lima, you can easily tour the old city and visit its museums. Then go by bus to Lake Titicaca and Machu Picchu. Peruvians are friendly people and many of them speak English, but try to learn some Spanish before you go.

Presentation

You don't often use an article with plural and uncountable nouns: *There are buses to every destination. For more information, contact us.*

Don't use an article ...

- to talk about things in general: *I like cats. English people drink tea in the afternoon.*
- for many place names: *I live in Lima.*
- for languages, countries and subjects: *Take a holiday in Peru. Learn to speak Spanish. I like studying Geography.*
- with geographical features: *Lake Titicaca, Mount Everest.*
- with forms of travel and transport: *Travel through the mountains on foot or by bicycle.*

TIP Don't use an article for these special cases: *at school/home.*

Key vocabulary Travel: by bicycle, on foot, by car, by train, by taxi, tour, destination, arrive, travel round by bus, by subway, take a taxi, tourist

Exercises

1 Choose the correct options.

- 1 *The Italian food / Italian food* is the best in the world!
- 2 *The people / People* over there are from Germany.
- 3 Try *the sandwiches / sandwiches* at this café.
- 4 Who is *the girl / girl* on the bike?
- 5 I like *the rock music / rock music*.

2 Cross out the *the* where it isn't necessary.

- 1 We visited the Eiffel Tower last year. ✓
- 2 Have you ever been to the Disneyland?
- 3 I go to the school at eight o'clock.
- 4 My father works at the home.
- 5 She goes to work by the bicycle.
- 6 I would love to see the Mount Everest.

3 Choose the correct answers.

- 1 I love **c** dogs. I have three of them.
a a b the c Ø
- 2 I live in **a**.
a United States b United Kingdom c Uruguay
- 3 Do you speak **a** local language?
a a b the c Ø

- 6 There's never enough *the time / time*.
- 7 Are *the elephants / elephants* really afraid of mice?
- 8 *The life / Life* is harder for children these days.
- 9 I prefer to travel round cities on *the foot / foot*.
- 10 Do you speak *the Chinese / Chinese*?

- 7 I hate *the golf*. I never play it.
- 8 We study *the Urdu* at school. It's a great language.
- 9 The Spanish people are very friendly.
- 10 My mother works at the hospital in Oxford.
- 11 My grandmother lives in *the Berlin*.
- 12 I eat a lot of *the apples*.

- 4 You can only travel to the village on **a** foot.
a a b the c Ø
- 5 There's **a** bus every fifteen minutes.
a a b the c Ø
- 6 There are always **b** taxis outside the station.
a a b the c Ø

4 ④ 2.23 Complete the text with *the*, *a*, *an* or Ø (no article). Then listen and check.



Travel tips for visitors to Beijing

Transport

¹ **Ø** Beijing's metro and buses are often crowded so visitors should take ² **a** taxi. Don't worry if you don't speak Chinese – many taxi drivers are now learning ³ **some** English.

Sightseeing

⁴ **the** Great Wall of ⁵ **China** is about two hours by ⁶ **car** from ⁷ **Beijing**. Or you can see ⁸ **a** panda in Beijing Zoo and then have ⁹ **an** excellent meal in ¹⁰ **the** CCTV (China Central Television) Tower restaurant.



Eating

You can buy ¹¹ **cheap** Chinese food in the street or there are ¹² **international** restaurants in ¹³ **the** centre. Try Peking duck.

70 Review of units 66 to 69

Grammar

1 Choose the correct options.



¹ The A space tourism industry is now open for ² the / Ø business! Tickets cost \$20 million for ³ a / an ten-day stay in space. Dennis Tito was ⁴ the / Ø world's first space tourist. ⁵ Ø / A Russia took ⁶ an / the American businessman into space in ⁷ the / a rocket. It arrived at ⁸ an / the International Space Station on ⁹ Ø / the 30th of April, 2001. In 2006, Anousheh Ansari, who is ¹⁰ a / Ø telecommunications entrepreneur, became ¹¹ a / the first female space tourist.

As ¹² Ø / a space travel becomes more and more normal, travel companies are planning to offer ¹³ a / Ø regular flights. They are also designing hotels in space and holiday resorts on ¹⁴ Ø / the moon.

2 Complete the second sentence so that it means the same as the first. Use an article.

- 1 Elephants are larger than any other land animal.
Elephants are _____ the largest _____ land animal.
- 2 Pam is a US citizen.
Pam lives in _____ of America.
- 3 My uncle plays football.
My uncle is _____ player.
- 4 Your town is small.
You come from _____.
- 5 Julia has two younger brothers. She's 24 and they're 23 and 21.
Julia is _____ in her family.
- 6 My degree is in Spanish.
I have _____ degree.
- 7 Coffee for me, please.
I'd like _____, please.
- 8 My head aches.
I have _____.
- 9 Hollywood's most popular actress is currently Nicole Kidman.
Nicole Kidman is currently _____ in Hollywood.
- 10 History starts at three.
_____ lesson starts at three.
- 11 My sister's flat is in Berlin.
My sister has _____ in Berlin.
- 12 There are two red cars and my car is between them.
There are two red cars and my car is in the middle.
- 13 This machine washes dishes.
This is _____ washer.
- 14 This song is by Abba.
This is _____ by Abba.

Pronunciation: *the*

- 3 **2.24** There are two ways to pronounce *the*. Say /ði:/ before words that start with a vowel sound. Say /ðə/ before words that start with a consonant sound. Listen.

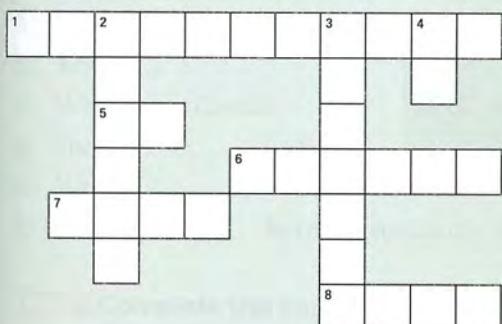
/ði:/ /ðə/
the elephant the panda

Now listen and tick /ði:/ or /ðə/.

- | | | | |
|--------------------|-------|---|------|
| 1 the address | /ði:/ | ✓ | /ðə/ |
| 2 the mountain | /ði:/ | | /ðə/ |
| 3 the school | /ði:/ | | /ðə/ |
| 4 the umbrella | /ði:/ | | /ðə/ |
| 5 the celebrity | /ði:/ | | /ðə/ |
| 6 the ocean | /ði:/ | | /ðə/ |
| 7 the town | /ði:/ | | /ðə/ |
| 8 the bicycle | /ði:/ | | /ðə/ |
| 9 the Eiffel Tower | /ði:/ | | /ðə/ |
| 10 the White House | /ði:/ | | /ðə/ |

Vocabulary

- 4 Complete the crossword with travel words.



Across

- 1 place you travel to
- 5 go _____ train
- 6 opposite of *leave*
- 7 a good way to travel around a crowded city
- 8 _____ the old city

Down

- 2 a train under the ground
- 3 a person who visits places (on holiday)
- 4 you walk _____ foot

5 Match to make six occupations.

1 com	brity	composer
2 pop	acher	
3 ch	ef	
4 cele	poser	
5 engi	star	
6 te	neer	

6 Match to make places around the world.

1 the Indian	Pole
2 the United	House
3 the European	Union
4 the North	Liberty
5 the White	Ocean
6 the Statue of	Kingdom

Listen again

7 Test your general knowledge!

Quiz

- 1 Which animal lives the longest?
- 2 Who was the first man in space?
- 3 Where is the Atomium monument?
- 4 Is the North Pole in the Arctic or the Antarctic?
- 5 Which canal connects the Mediterranean Sea to the Red Sea?
- 6 Who travelled round the world in 1519?

2.25 Listen and check your answers.

71 will (for future and predictions)

THE WORLD IN THE YEAR 2100



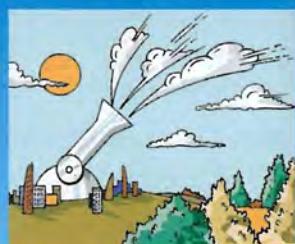
Most people will have private aeroplanes.



Pills will replace food.



There will be cities on the moon.



We will control the weather.

Presentation

Use *will* to ...

- talk about facts in the future: *I was born in 1975. I'll be 75 in the year 2050.*
- make predictions about the future:

Pills will replace food. (= It's certain.)

Pills won't replace food. (= It's certain not to happen.)

I (don't) think pills will replace food. (= It's my opinion.)

Affirmative and negative

I / You / He / She / It / We / They	<u>will ('ll)</u>	be	75 in the year 2050.
	will not (won't)		

Yes/No questions

Will	I / you / he / she / it / we / they	be	75 in the year 2050?
------	-------------------------------------	----	----------------------

Short answers

Yes,	I / you / he / she / it / we / they	will.	No,	I / you / he / she / it / we / they	won't.
------	-------------------------------------	-------	-----	-------------------------------------	--------

Exercises

1 Add '*'ll* or *will* to the sentences.

1 Tomorrow ^{will} ^ be a beautiful day.

2 One day I ^ be famous.

3 We ^ be in Rome tomorrow so meet us there.

4 Your new girlfriend ^ be at the party?

5 I think John ^ pass all his exams.

6 When you ^ be eighteen?

7 Who ^ win: Real Madrid or AC Milan?

8 Don't worry: I'm sure you ^ get better.

9 Next week it ^ be the summer holidays!

10 Do you think it ^ rain tomorrow?

11 Nobody ^ be in the office tomorrow so don't call.

12 We ^ ever find a cure for cancer?

2 Are the sentences in exercise 1 facts in the future (F) or predictions about the future (P)? Write P or F.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

11

12

3 Put the words in order to make predictions.

1 become China country in richest the the will world

China will become the richest country in the world.

2 buy everything internet on people the will

3 get hotter the will world

4 English everybody speak will

5 reach in 2020 Mars humans will

6 a hundred will everybody for years live

4  2.26 Complete the conversation with *will*, *'ll* or *won't*. Then listen and check.

A: ¹ Will you be here tomorrow?

B: Yes, I ² . I ³ be in the Sol Café at eleven o'clock.

A: ⁴ you be alone?

B: Yes, I ⁵ .

A: What about Cassia?

B: She ⁶ be here.

A: Where ⁷ she be?

B: She ⁸ be in Amsterdam with Henri.



5  2.27 Complete the conversation. Then listen and check.

A: Cassia? This is Bernardo. Can you talk?

C: Yes, of course.

A: When ¹ will you be in Amsterdam?

C: ² in Amsterdam on 1st August.

A: ³ alone?

C: No, ⁴ . ⁵ with Henri.

A: Which hotel ⁶ in?

C: ⁷ in the Four Seasons.

A: Be careful.

C: Don't worry. ⁸ very, very careful.



72 will (offers, promises and requests)



Presentation

Use *will* for ...

- offers: *I'll come and pick you up.*
- promises: *I'll be there in twenty minutes.*
- requests: *Will you lend me your car?*

Exercises

1 Add '*'ll* or *will* to the conversations.

- 1 A: This exercise is difficult!
B: Don't worry. I ^{'ll} _^ help you.
- 2 A: Have we got a cake for Nell's birthday?
B: No, but I make one.
- 3 A: This suitcase is heavy!
B: I carry it for you.
- 4 A: I don't want to go to bed without a story.
B: I read you one, I promise.
- 5 A: Are you going to the party tonight?
B: I don't know yet. You pick me up?
- 6 A: I can't find my tennis racket.
B: I lend you mine.
- 7 A: I help you if you like.
B: No, thanks. I can do it.
- 8 A: Should I text you to remind you about the meet?
B: Don't worry. I remember.
- 9 A: I bought this from your shop but it doesn't work.
B: That's OK. We change it.
- 10 A: You send the books by post?
B: Yes, of course. What's your address?

2 Write offers with *will*.

- 1 I'm thirsty! (make / a cup of tea)
- 2 I'm hungry! (make / a sandwich)
- 3 I've just arrived at the station. (pick up)
- 4 I'm going to be late. (wait for)
- 5 I haven't got any money! (lend some)
- 6 I'm hot! (get / glass of cold water)

I'll make you a cup of tea.

3 Eddie and Flo have just got married. Complete their promises with *I'll always* or *I'll never*.

- 1 I'll always love you.
- 2 never leave you.
- 3 always be there for you.
- 4 never look at another woman.
- 5 never speak to James again.
- 6 always put you first.
- 7 never forget your birthday.



Eddie and Flo

4 2.28 Write the son's requests. Then listen and check.

- 1 lend me / car?



- 2 drive me to / party?



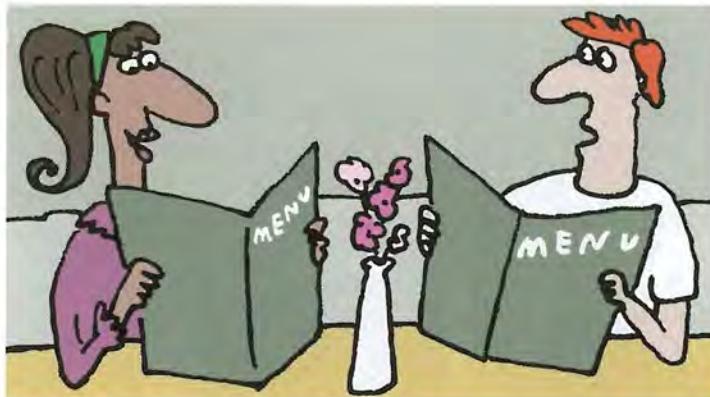
- 3 pay for / taxi?



- 4 give me money / bus ticket?



73 will and going to (for decisions)



Woman: What are you going to have?
Man: I'm not sure. I think I'll have the fish.
What about you?
Woman: Oh, I've already decided. I'm going to have the steak with fried potatoes.
Man: That sounds nice. Maybe I'll have steak too ...

Presentation

Use *will* to show you are making a decision at that moment. (You often use it with *I think*.)

The man isn't sure what he wants so he uses *will*: *I think I'll have the fish*.

Use *going to* to show that you have already made a decision.

The woman has decided so she uses *going to*: *I'm going to have the steak*.

Key vocabulary Adjectives: beautiful, bored, cold, hot, hungry, thirsty, tired

Food: chicken, fish, fried potatoes, pasta, pizza, salad, sandwich, steak, tomato, soup

Exercises

1 Put the words in order.

- 1 have I I'll soup the think tomato
- 2 a have I I'll pizza think
- 3 a chicken have I I'll sandwich think
- 4 have I I'll salad steak the think with

I think I'll have the tomato soup.

2 Make decisions for the situations. Use *go*, *have* or *turn on* and the phrases in the box.

home the air conditioning some pasta for a walk a glass of water the heating to bed

Situations

- 1 I'm hungry.
- 2 I'm cold.
- 3 I'm thirsty.
- 4 I'm tired.
- 5 I'm hot.
- 6 It's a beautiful day.
- 7 It's started raining.

Decisions

I think I'll have some pasta.

3 Complete the sentences with *I'm going to* or *I think I'll*.

- 1 I'm going to see Real Madrid play AC Milan: I've got tickets.
- 2 The sun's come out. go to the beach.
- 3 I've sold my car. buy a new one.
- 4 It's getting dark. turn on the light.
- 5 I'm going to Tokyo for six months. study Japanese.

4 ②.29 Put the conversation in order. Then listen and check.

- I don't know. I think I'll travel around India for six months.
- What about you? Mark said you've got a job.
- What are you going to do when you finish university?
- That sounds interesting.
- Yes, I have. I'm going to work for a bank.

5 Look at the pictures. Tick what the person says.



- 1 I'm going to pay for it.
I'll pay for it. ✓



- 4 I'll be a doctor like my father.
I'm going to be a doctor like my father.



- 2 I'm going to have a holiday in Florida!
I'll have a holiday in Florida.



- 5 I'll get it.
I'm going to get it.



- 3 I'll help you.
I'm going to help you.



- 6 I'll have a dinner party tonight.
I'm going to have a dinner party tonight.

74 going to, will and the present continuous



- Woman: What do you see?
Fortune teller: I can see a tall man. He's walking towards you. You're going to meet him.
Woman: Oh, I know who that is! I'm meeting my boyfriend for lunch.
Fortune teller: And now I see you in a strange place full of people you don't know.
Woman: I know what that is. We're going to visit Paris soon.
Fortune teller: Wait! I think you will take a long journey together in the middle of the night.
Woman: That'll be the train to Paris.
Fortune teller: Is there anything about your future you don't know?!

Presentation

will or going to for predictions?

You can use either *will* and *going to* for making predictions.

- You can use *will* without a clue or evidence: *I think you will take a long journey together in the middle of the night.*
- You can also use *going to* when there is a clue or evidence: *The man is walking towards you. You're going to meet him.*

going to or present continuous for plans and arrangements?

You often use the present continuous and *going to* in similar ways but ...

- use the present continuous to talk about future arrangements: *I'm meeting my boyfriend for lunch.*
- use *going to* to talk about a plan or intention: *We're going to visit Paris soon.*

TIP You normally use the present continuous, not *going to*, with the verbs *go* and *come*.

Say *We're going to the restaurant.* (don't say *We're going to go to the restaurant.*)

Say *They're coming later.* (don't say *They're going to come later.*)

See Units 33 and 34 and page 236: Summary of future forms

Exercises

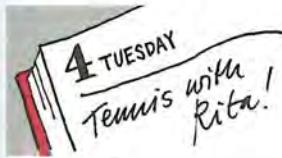
1 Match predictions 1–5 to the evidence a–e.

- 1 You're going to hurt yourself.
- 2 We're going to arrive late.
- 3 It's going to be sunny today.
- 4 I'm going to pass this exam.
- 5 Billy is going to get really fat.

<input type="checkbox"/>

- a The traffic is really bad.
- b There isn't a cloud in the sky.
- c He eats chocolate every day.
- d I studied all last week.
- e That knife looks dangerous.

- 2 **2.30** Look at the pictures and write sentences. Use *going to*, *will* or the present continuous. Then listen and check.



1 Rita and I / play / on



2 It's OK. I / pay / lunch



3 This year / I / learn

3 Complete the conversations with the present continuous or *will* form of the verbs.

1 A: What are you doing on Tuesday?

B: I'm having (I have) lunch with Jerry.

2 A: Do you think Martin (get) married?

B: No, I don't think so.

3 A: (it snow) tomorrow?

B: Yes, I think it will.

4 A: When (you get) married?

B: On the 25th of June.

5 A: Where (you go) for your holidays this year?

B: To Greece.

6 A: (I like) this book?

B: No, it's boring.

4 Choose the correct options. Sometimes both forms are possible.

1 Mike and I *will have* / *are having* a drink at five. Would you like to come too?

2 I've only got a few pages to read. I *'ll* / *'m going to* finish my book in a minute.

3 A: What does Johnny plan to see in London?

B: He *'ll see* / *'s going to see* a musical and also visit a few museums.

4 What time *are you coming* / *are you going to come* to my house?

5 When *are you telling* / *are you going to tell* me your answer?

6 We're going to / *'re going to* go to the cinema at ten o'clock.

5 Write about your plans and arrangements for these times. Use *going to* or the present continuous.

- 1 (this evening)
- 2 (next weekend)
- 3 (next month)
- 4 (next year)

75 Review of units 71 to 74

Grammar

1 Complete the sentences. Write one word in each gap.

- 1 We ^{1're} going to see you later.
- 2 They ^{2're} coming I'm afraid.
They're busy.
- 3 What ^{3're} you doing this evening at eight?
- 4 I think I ^{4'm} meet you after the film.
- 5 I don't think flying cars ^{5're} replace normal cars in the future.
- 6 He ^{6's} going to be an engineer when he leaves school.
- 7 He ^{7's} having his birthday in a nightclub this year.
- 8 ^{8'll} you give me a lift to the party tonight?
- 9 It's an early flight. Promise me you ^{9'll} be late.

2 There is one extra word in each section of the email 1–7. Cross it out.

The screenshot shows an email window with the following details:

From: Pablo
To: Lorraine
Subject: News

Hi
Great news! I passed my final exam. ¹What do are you doing tonight? ²I'm to celebrating at the Irish Pub. ³Please will come.
⁴I'll be being there at eight o'clock. ⁵Also my dad is are going to pay for a holiday. ⁶I think I'll going travel to somewhere like Spain or Greece. ⁷Anyway, I'll am see you tonight I hope.
Pablo

3 Choose the correct forms.

¹ Are you **being** / Will you **be** here next week?

No, I ²'m not. / won't. I ³'m **being** / 'll **be** in Paris.

What ⁴ **are** you **doing** / will you **do** tonight?

We ⁵'re **going** / 'll **go** to the opera – Jamie's given us tickets for Faust.

Will we ⁶ **see** / **seeing** you later?

I'm afraid not. I ⁷'m **going** / will **go** to bed early tonight.

Is it ⁸ **going** to **snow** / **snowing** tonight?

Maybe. The temperature is dropping.

4 Complete these sentences so that they are true for you.

1 prediction

In 2050, I _____

2 fact in the future

In 2050, I _____

3 intention

Next year I'm going _____

4 arrangement

At the weekend, I'm _____

5 promise to a friend

I'll _____

Pronunciation: 'll

7 Write the food words.

5 ②.31 Listen and tick the sentence you hear.

- 1 a The plane leaves at five.
b The plane'll leave at five.
- 2 a Pills replace food.
b Pills'll replace food.
- 3 a I have tea in the morning.
b I'll have tea in the morning.
- 4 a We pick you up from the airport.
b We'll pick you up from the airport.
- 5 a Prices go up before Christmas.
b Prices'll go up before Christmas.
- 6 a They learn the piano.
b They'll learn the piano.
- 7 a Don't worry. I open it.
b Don't worry. I'll open it.
- 8 a We always have lunch together.
b We'll always have lunch together.



1 p i za



5 f ish



2 c hicken



6 p ramen



3 s alad



7 t omato



4 s teak



8 s oup

Vocabulary

6 Match the adjectives in the box to the sentences.

difficult hot hungry
thirsty cold tired bored

- 1 'I need a drink.' thirsty
- 2 'This is really hard. Can you answer it?' _____
- 3 'Turn the heating up!' _____
- 4 'I didn't have any lunch today. Let's have something to eat.' _____
- 5 'I just need to sit down for a minute and have a little rest.' _____
- 6 'Can we open the window?' _____
- 7 'This is really uninteresting.' _____

Listen again

8 ②.32 Listen and put the conversation in order.



- Be careful.
- 1 Cassia? This is Bernardo. Can you talk?
- I'll be in Amsterdam on 1st August.
- I'll be in the Four Seasons.
- No, I won't. I'll be with Henri.
- When will you be in Amsterdam?
- Which hotel will you be in?
- Will you be alone?
- Yes, of course.
- Don't worry. I'll be very, very careful.

76 Prepositions of time (*in*, *on*, *at*)



Jane: Jeff and Sue are coming to my party!

Dan: That's great.

Jane: They're coming on Friday. They're arriving at 6.30.

Dan: In the morning?

Jane: No, in the evening.

Dan: When did we last see them?

Jane: Oh, years ago, in 2004 – or was it in 2005? It was in the summer. Don't you remember?



Presentation

- Use *in* with months, years, seasons and times of day: *in February*, *in 2005*, *in spring*, *in the afternoon*.
- Use *on* with days and dates: *on Friday*, *on 28th November*, *on my birthday*.
- Use *at* with times: *at 8.30*, *at midnight*.

TIP Special uses of *at*: *at the weekend*, *at night*.

Key vocabulary Seasons: spring, summer, autumn, winter

Months: January, February, March, April, May, June, July, August, September, October, November, December

Dates: Use ordinal numbers (*1st*, *2nd*, *3rd*, etc.) for dates, e.g. 1st January, 3rd March, 25th May

Exercises

1 Write the time expressions in the correct column.

New year's day 29th February 1999 half past ten the evenings
the third Friday of the month Sundays August midday summer the middle of winter
night 5 p.m. the 1990s the early morning weekdays the same time the weekend

in	on	at
	New Year's day	

2 Complete the sentences with expressions from exercise 1 and *in*, *on* or *at*.

- 1 My birthday's on 29th February so I only celebrate once every four years!
- 2 I really don't like Britain The days are so short and there's so little light.
- 3 I like to get to bed fairly early. I'm usually in bed on week days.
- 4 I love studying It's so quiet. Everyone else is still in bed and I can really concentrate.
- 5 Most small, local shops are closed all day
- 6 There's a street market in the main square once a month,
- 7 We will be holding our next meeting at the community centre in the morning next week.
- 8 The world wide web was created

3 Match 1–6 to a–f to make sentences.

- | | | |
|---|--------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1 I get up at | <input type="checkbox"/> | a August. |
| 2 I don't like going to the gym in | <input type="checkbox"/> | b the same time every day. |
| 3 Our book club meets on | <input type="checkbox"/> | c 15th July 2005. |
| 4 I have lunch really early. I often eat at | <input type="checkbox"/> | d the evening. It's too busy. |
| 5 I moved to London on | <input type="checkbox"/> | e midday. |
| 6 I always go on holiday in | <input type="checkbox"/> | f the third Friday of every month. |

4 2.33 Choose the correct prepositions. Then listen and check.

Conversation 1

- A: When's your birthday?
B: It's ¹ in / on at 15th March.
A: When were you born?
B: ² In / On / At 1988.
A: What time were you born?
B: I'm not sure, ³ In / On / At around eleven, I think.
A: ⁴ In / On / At the morning?
B: No, ⁵ in / on / at night.

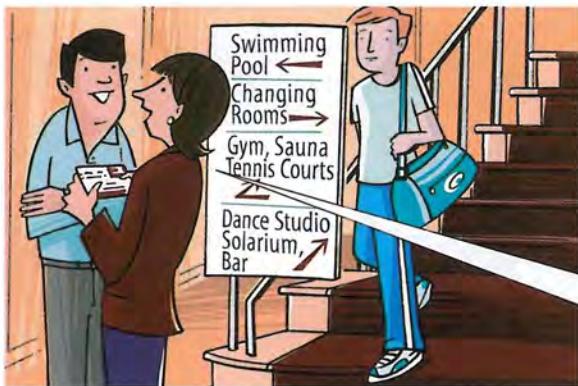
Conversation 2

- C: When do you usually get up?
D: ⁶ In / On / At weekdays, I get up ⁷ in / on / at about seven thirty, but ⁸ in / on / at the weekend I get up ⁹ in / on / at any time, whenever I wake up, really.
C: When do you usually go to bed?
D: It depends. During the week I usually go to bed ¹⁰ in / on / at eleven thirty. ¹¹ In / On / At the winter I go to bed a bit earlier.

5 Answer the questions with true answers for you.

- 1 When's your birthday? _____
- 2 When were you born? _____
- 3 What time were you born? _____
- 4 When do you usually get up? _____
- 5 When do you usually go to bed? _____

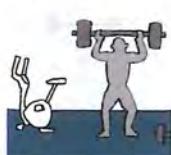
77 Prepositions of place



The swimming pool is on the left, and the changing rooms are on the right. The gym is behind the stairs. There's a sauna between the gym and the tennis courts. There are regular aerobic classes in the gym, and yoga classes in the dance studio on the first floor. There is information about all the classes on the table at the front door. At the top of the stairs there's a solarium and a terrace bar. So, here's your card and welcome to the club!

Presentation

in, on and at



in the gym



on the table



at the front door

Expressions with in, on and at



in the corner



in the middle



on the left



on the right



at the corner



at the top



at the bottom

More prepositions of place



next to



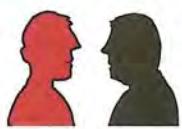
under



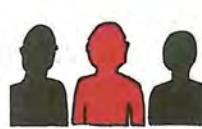
in front of



behind



opposite



between

Key vocabulary Sports centre: (open air) swimming pool, aerobics classes, changing rooms, dance classes, dance studio, gym, sauna, solarium, tennis courts, yoga classes

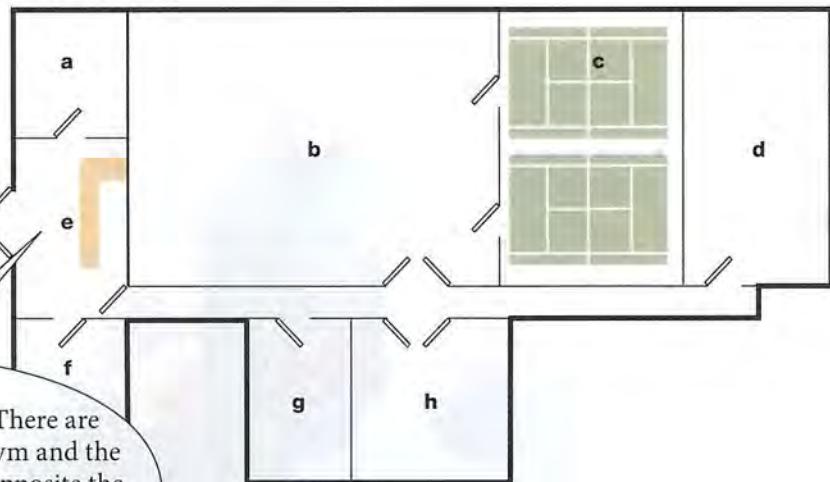
Exercises

1 Match the places on the plan a-f to the words.

- | | |
|------------------|----------------------------|
| 1 changing rooms | <input type="checkbox"/> a |
| 2 gym | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 3 tennis courts | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 4 dance studio | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 5 swimming pool | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 6 reception | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 7 solarium | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 8 café | <input type="checkbox"/> |

This is the reception.

The gym is here, behind reception. There are two tennis courts here, between the gym and the swimming pool. The dance studio is opposite the gym and there's a café on the right of the dance studio. The changing rooms are here on the left, and the solarium is here, on the right.



2 Complete the conversations with *in*, *on* or *at*.

Conversation 1

A: See you later?

B: Yes, I'll be ¹ at ₂ the corner of the street at 8.30.

Conversation 2

A: Where's the bus stop?

B: It's ³ at ₄ the bottom of the street ⁵ on ₆ the left, you can't miss it.

Conversation 3

C: Where's your office?

D: It's ⁷ on ₈ the third floor, ⁹ in ₁₀ the middle, between a dentist and a lawyer.

Conversation 4

E: Can I use the phone, please?

F: Yes, sure. It's ¹¹ on ₁₂ the table, ¹³ in ₁₄ the corner of the living room.

3 2.34 Complete the description with the expressions in the box. Then listen and check.

behind in front of in the corner in the middle next to on the left on the right under



This is my family. This is my mum, sitting ¹ in the middle ₂. That's my brother ³ sitting ₄ her. That's me ⁵ sitting ₆ with my husband. ⁷ is ₈ my dad and ⁹ are ₁₀ our two children. ¹¹ you ₁₂ can see my dog.

78 Relative clauses 1 (who, which, that)



Presentation

Relative pronouns introduce relative clauses. Relative clauses give information about a person or thing.

- Use *who* for people: *Bob is the person who does the repairs.*
- Use *which* for things: *A plunger is a thing which unblocks sinks.*
- Use *that* for people or things: *She's the person that works in reception. It's a thing that helps you do your job.*

Key vocabulary Nouns ending in *-er*: banker, bottle opener, cleaner, computer, dancer, dishwasher, DVD player, gardener, hairdryer, lighter, plunger, printer, supporter, teacher, tennis player, writer

Exercises

1 Match the pictures to the definitions.



a bottle opener



a dancer



football supporters



a gardener



a DVD player



a vacuum cleaner



a hairdryer



a cleaner

- 1 a person who looks after gardens
- 2 a thing which dries hair
- 3 a thing that opens bottles
- 4 a person that cleans houses

- 5 a machine that cleans carpets and floor
- 6 people who like a football team
- 7 a person who dances
- 8 a machine that plays DVDs

2 Cross out the incorrect pronoun.

- 1 A tennis player is a person *who / which / that* plays tennis.
- 2 A lighter is a thing *who / which / that* lights a cigarette.
- 3 A printer is a machine *who / which / that* prints pages from a computer screen.
- 4 A primary school teacher is someone *who / which / that* teaches young children.
- 5 A computer is a very complicated machine *who / which / that* can do any number of things.
- 6 A writer is a person *who / which / that* spends a long time in front of a computer screen.
- 7 A banker is a person *who / which / that* works in a bank.
- 8 A dishwasher is machine *who / which / that* washes dishes.

3 2.35 Complete the conversations with *who* or *which*. Then listen and check.

Conversation 1

- A: What kind of films do you like?
- B: I like films ¹ which make me laugh.
- A: Me too, but I like films ² make me think as well.
- B: Or films ³ tell really good stories.
- A: And of course, the actors are really important.
- B: Yeah, I don't like the big Hollywood stars ⁴ always seem to make the same film.
- A: Or those actors ⁵ always seem to play the same character.

Conversation 2

- C: Let me introduce you to Briony. She's the person ⁶ runs the marketing department.
- D: How do you do? I'm Marsha.
- E: Pleased to meet you, Marsha. Where were you before?
- D: I worked for a company ⁷ sold holidays online.
- E: Oh, that's interesting. The internet is something ⁸ we're using more and more here.
Maybe you could meet Matt ⁹ 's in charge of that. I'm sure you have lots of experience
¹⁰ we could use.
- D: That sounds great.

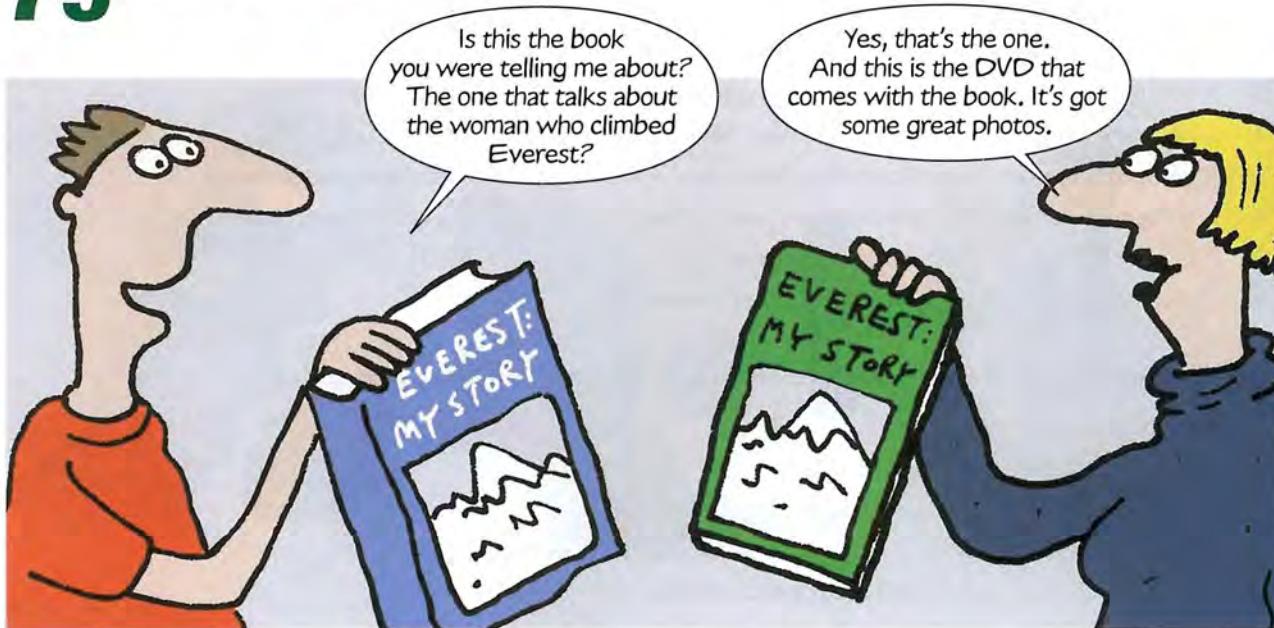
4 Correct the mistakes. Three sentences are correct.

- 1 I know someone who knows Rafael Nadal.
- 2 I don't like food ~~who~~ has a lot of salt in it.
- 3 A biologist is a person ~~which~~ works in a laboratory.
- 4 He bought a new bike ~~who~~ cost him over two thousand euros.
- 5 Yesterday I met someone ~~who~~ went to school with me.
- 6 I've always liked people ~~which~~ laugh really loudly.
- 7 We stayed in a hotel ~~who~~ was over 200 years old.
- 8 Have you seen the bag ~~which~~ I left in the kitchen?
- 9 This is a machine ~~who~~ translates words into English.

✓

~~which/that~~

79 Relative clauses 2



Presentation

Combining sentences

You can use relative pronouns to combine sentences.

I'm reading a book. The book has won an award. = I'm reading a book which has won an award.

Omitting the relative pronoun

Always use a relative pronoun when it is the subject of the relative clause (i.e. when it is followed by a verb).

This is the woman who wrote the book.

This is the DVD that goes with the book.

This is the photo which won first prize.

You don't have to use a relative pronoun when it is the object of the relative clause (i.e. when it is followed by a noun or pronoun).

This is the book (which) I read on holiday.

This is the woman (who) Jack was telling you about.

This is the CD Rom (that) the boss gave me.

Key vocabulary Collocations: read/write a book, see/make a film, sing a song, take a photo, win an award / a prize

Exercises

1 Complete the conversation with **who** or **which**.

- A: Have you seen the film ¹ which won the Oscar?
- B: Is it the film about the couple ² lived in Japan?
- A: No, it's the one about the man ³ survived a plane crash.
- B: Oh, is it the one ⁴ took five years to make?
- A: Yeah, that's right. With the great ending ⁵ everyone's talking about. You know ...
- B: No, don't tell me! I haven't seen it yet!
- A: Sorry!

2 Combine the sentences using **who** or **which**.

- 1 This is my new car. My parents gave it to me.
This is my new car which my parents gave me.
- 2 This is my friend. She helped me with my exam.
- 3 This is the book. I was reading it last week.
- 4 This is the film. I went to see it last night.
- 5 These are the CDs. I bought them online.
- 6 This is the song. They sang it at our wedding.

3 Cross out the pronouns which are not necessary.

1 Would you like to see the photos
that I took on my holiday?



5 This is one of the hotels that we
stayed at. It was really nice.

2 This is the guide who took us
around the ruins.



3 And this is the couple that we met
on the plane. They were great fun.

6 And this is the swimming pool
that they had on the roof.

4 He's the one who fell and broke his leg! Poor
guy. We had to call an ambulance. It was
really expensive.

7 Oh, yes, and this is rooftop garden
which had the most amazing views.

80 Review of units 76 to 79

Grammar

1 Complete the notes using *in*, *on* or *at*.

I've made an appointment for you with the dentist
1 on Friday
2 at 9.30.

I'm playing tennis
3 at 4pm tomorrow, so I won't be at home
4 in the afternoon.

Dave called. He says they're coming to town
5 in the summer. Can they come and stay?

2 Complete the conversations with the prepositions in the box.

at at behind between in in
in in of on on to

A: Where's the bathroom?

B: It's over there, ¹ on the left, next ² to the living room.

A: Where are the keys?

B: They're ³ on the table ⁴ in the kitchen.

A: Where's my coat?

B: It's ⁵ at the corner, ⁶ behind the door.

A: Where's the chair?

B: There, ⁷ in the middle, look, ⁸ between the window and the table.

A: Where shall I meet you?

B: How about ⁹ at the top of the street?

A: Where did you leave your bike?

B: ¹⁰ At the bottom of the stairs, ¹¹ in front ¹² of the door.

3 Correct the mistakes in the crossword clues. Four clues are correct.

- 1 a person which follows a particular team or sport
who
- 2 a person who plays football or tennis
- 3 a person which works in a school
- 4 a thing who you use to light a fire
- 5 a person who writes books
- 6 a person which looks after plants
- 7 a machine which you use when your hair is wet
- 8 a person who cleans your house
- 9 a machine who prints things from your computer

Tick (✓) the clues which don't need the relative pronoun.

4 Combine these sentences. Omit the relative pronoun where possible.

- 1 I loved the film. The one we saw last night.
I loved the film we saw last night.
- 2 My favourite actor was the woman. She stole the car.
My favourite actor was the woman who stole the car.
- 3 These are the photos. I took them at the party.
These are the photos I took at the party.
- 4 This is the photo. It won an award.
This is the photo which won an award.
- 5 Do you like the CD? My brother gave it to me.
Do you like the CD which my brother gave to me?
- 6 I like the singer. She sings in Spanish.
I like the singer who sings in Spanish.

5 Correct the mistakes. Four sentences are correct.

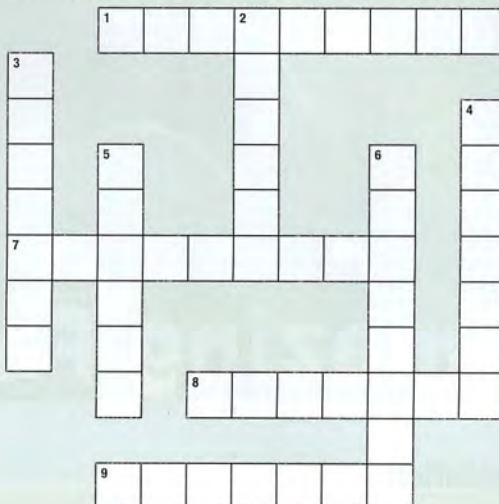
- 1 This is the song which I really like.
✓
- 2 She's the woman which sings that song.
who
- 3 The sauna is on the right of the gym.
- 4 This is a book that you should read.
- 5 Put her CD at the player.
- 6 I think they're arriving in eight.
- 7 Are you the person has the big black dog?
- 8 We always meet on Sundays for lunch.
- 9 Take the lift and his office is on the top of the building.
- 10 Sit on between Mike and me and tell us what happened.

Vocabulary

8 Write the words from a sports centre.

- 1 sw~mm~ng p~~l swimming pool
- 2 ch~ng~ng r~~ms
- 3 s~~n~
- 4 d~nc~ st~d~~
- 5 t~nn~s c~~rts
- 6 ~~r~b~cs cl~ss~s
- 7 s~l~r~~m
- 8 y~g~

9 Complete the crossword with words ending in -er. Use the clues in exercise 3.



Pronunciation: sentence stress

6 2.36 Listen and complete the sentences.

- 1 The dance studio is at the _____ of the stairs.
- 2 He's waiting at the _____ of the street.
- 3 Put it down in the _____ of the room.
- 4 The changing rooms are on the _____.
- 5 The bar is _____ to the pool.
- 6 You're standing in _____ of the TV!

Listen again

10 2.38 Listen and answer the questions.

- 1 When is his birthday?
- 2 When was he born?
- 3 What time was he born?
- 4 When does she usually get up on weekdays?
- 5 When does she usually go to bed on weekdays?

7 2.37 Listen and repeat. Notice the stress on the bold words.

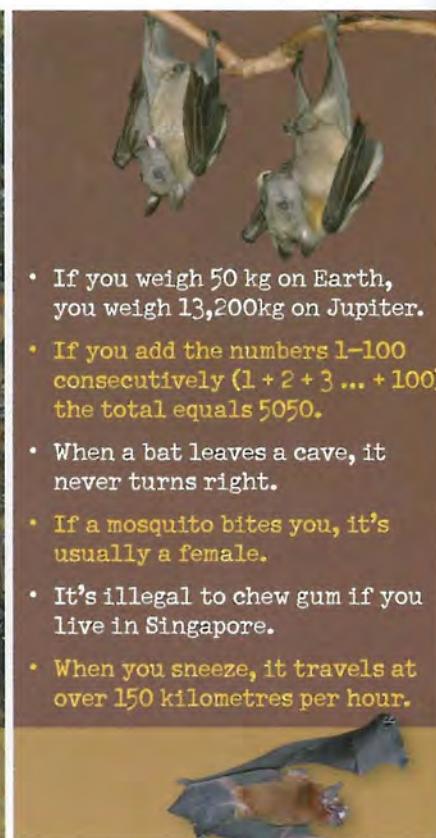
- 1 at the **top** of the hill
- 2 at the **corner** of the **square**
- 3 in the **middle** of the street
- 4 on the **right**
- 5 **next** to the bar
- 6 in **front** of the door

81 If/When + present simple, present simple



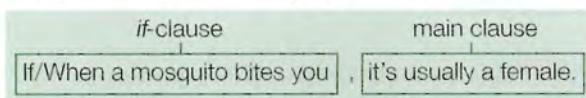
Amazing Facts!

- If you weigh 50 kg on Earth, you weigh 13,200kg on Jupiter.
- If you add the numbers 1–100 consecutively ($1 + 2 + 3 \dots + 100$) the total equals 5050.
- When a bat leaves a cave, it never turns right.
- If a mosquito bites you, it's usually a female.
- It's illegal to chew gum if you live in Singapore.
- When you sneeze, it travels at over 150 kilometres per hour.



Presentation

Use *if/when* + present simple, present simple to talk about facts or things which are generally true.



The *if/when* clause can come before or after the main clause.

TIP This is sometimes called the zero conditional.

if or when?

In sentences about general facts, there is little or no difference in meaning between *if* or *when*.

If a mosquito bites you, it's usually a female. = *When a mosquito bites you, it's usually a female.*

(See also note on *if* and *when* in Unit 83.)

Punctuation

When the sentence begins with the *if*-clause, put a comma after the *if*- clause:

If you heat water to 100 degrees, it boils.

When the sentence begins with the main clause, don't use a comma:

Water boils if you heat it to 100 degrees.

Exercises

1 Write the facts. Use **you**.

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1 heat ice + melt | When you heat ice, it melts. |
| 2 go into space + float | If _____ |
| 3 press this button + computer starts | When _____ |
| 4 have a headache + an aspirin helps | If _____ |
| 5 you sneeze + always close your eyes | When _____ |
| 6 add two and two + get four | If _____ |

2 Write clauses a–e in the adverts 1–5 from a supermarket.

- a when you buy two. b When you visit our website, c We pay you the difference
d please return it within 28 days. e If you spend over £50,

1 If you spend over £50,

we enter you into our free competition.

2

if you find the same product for less money in another shop.

3

If you are not happy with a product,

4

You receive one extra,

5

you can shop online.

3 2.39 Complete the conversations with the affirmative or negative form of the verbs in brackets. Then listen and check.

Conversation 1

A: I have a problem, Doctor. If I drink coffee, I ¹ don't sleep (sleep) at night.

B: Well, stop then.

A: But if I don't drink coffee, I ² get (get) tired.

B: OK. Take this medicine and if you ³ have (have) any more problems, come back and see me.

Conversation 2

C: I'm out of the office for the week. If you have any problems, call me but ⁴ ask (ask) Roger.

D: Why not?

C: He won't know the answer. If I ⁵ be (be) there, then wait until I am!

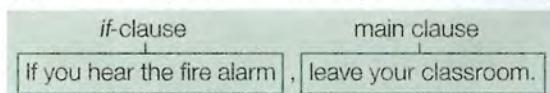
82 If/Unless + present simple, imperative



Presentation

Use *if* + present simple, imperative for instructions or giving advice:

If you hear the fire alarm, leave your classroom by the nearest exit.



Unless

Unless = if not

Do not re-enter the school if your teacher doesn't say it's safe. = Do not re-enter the school unless your teacher says it's safe.

Key vocabulary Phrasal verbs: call back, put back, put in, tidy up, turn off

Exercises

1 Complete the house rules with the phrases in the box.

turn it off close it tidy it up put it back mend it don't use it

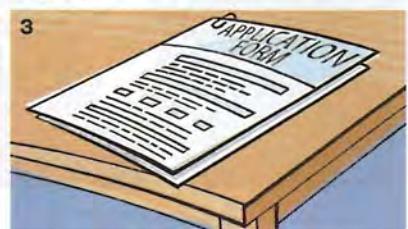
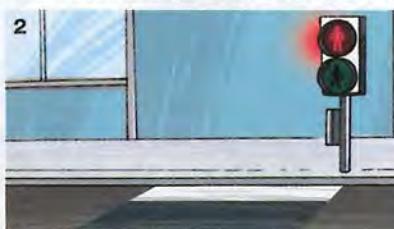
RULES OF THE HOUSE

- 1 If you open a door, _____ close it.
- 2 If you turn a light on, _____
- 3 If you move it, _____
- 4 If you break it, _____
- 5 If you use the kitchen, _____
- 6 Unless you ask, _____

 **2.40** Put this answer machine message in order. Then listen and check.

- I'm at work. Call me there on 020 7998 1234. If it isn't urgent,
- Hello, this is Braxton. Sorry, but I can't answer the
- email me at braxton51@hotmail.com. Bye!
- phone at the moment. If it's between nine and five,
- leave your name and number and I'll call you back. Or call me
- on my mobile if you like. That's 0770 879 3345. Or you could

Look at the pictures. Write sentences with *if* + present simple, imperative.



- 1 need help / ring / bell

If you need help, ring this bell.

- 2 light / red / not cross / road

- 3 'd like / apply for job / complete / form

- 4 not have / a security badge / not enter

- 5 want / drink / put some money in slot

- 6 not feel better / tomorrow / phone / doctor

Rewrite the sentences using *unless*.

- 1 If you don't hear from me, don't wait.

Unless you hear from me, don't wait.

- 2 Don't call the police if it isn't an emergency.

- 3 If it isn't important, don't spend time on it.

- 4 Meet at five if Rachel doesn't change the time again!

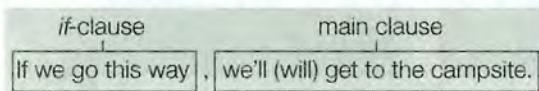
83 If/When + present simple, will



Presentation

Use *if* + present simple to talk about a possible future action.

Use *will/won't* in the main clause to talk about the result of that action.



TIP Say *If I have time, I'll help you.* (don't say *If I'll have time, I'll help you.*)

If or when?

When + future action = certain future action

If + future action = possible future action

TIP This is sometimes called the first conditional.

Key vocabulary Verb phrases: leave someone a message, hear from someone, see someone, ask someone something, leave someone alone

Exercises

1 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

- 1 If you leave (leave) a message with your number, I 'll call (call) you back.
- 2 If you (not give) it to me now, I tell (tell) your mum!
- 3 I pay (pay) you five dollars if you help (help) me.
- 4 When he phone (phone), I say (say) you're busy.
- 5 You (not pass) your exams if you (not work) harder.
- 6 If you go (go) now, you catch (catch) the train.
- 7 When the police arrive (arrive), they ask (ask) you some questions.
- 8 they visit (they visit) us if they have (have) time?
- 9 What Jane do (Jane do) if she (not hear) from Jacob?

2 Write sentences with *if* + present simple, *will*.

1 work hard at school, go to university

If you work hard at school, you'll go to university.

2 catch the bus, run

You'll catch the bus if you run.

3 not get a job, not have any money

4 the police stop you, drive too fast

5 not tell me the answer, not be your best friend

6 give me your email address, send you the attachment

3 2.41 Write in the missing '*'ll* or *will*' for each line of the conversations. Then listen and check.

Conversation 1

A: ¹If you turn left, you ^{'ll} _^ see the house on the left.

B: ²But it's a one-way street. If I turn left, the police stop me.

Conversation 3

E: ⁵I send you to your bed if you hit your brother again!

F: ⁶I stop if he stops hitting me!

E: ⁷If you ignore him, he leave you alone.

Conversation 2

C: ³If my plane lands at three, you pick me up?

D: ⁴Sure, but if it's delayed, you call?

Conversation 4

G: ⁸If I tell you a secret, you keep it?

H: ⁹Sure. It be between you and me.

4 Complete the sentences with *if* or *when*.

1 I'll tell you all about it when we meet at three.

2 I don't see you before I leave, I'll call you after my holiday.

3 you get the job, will you call me?

4 We're coming down on Christmas Day so we'll see you we arrive.

5 my son passes all his exams, he'll go to university.

6 I'll let you know dinner is ready.

7 We'll see you on Tuesday we don't see you before.

8 you run, you'll probably catch the train.

9 Let's talk about this again you get back from your holiday.

10 you help me, I'll help you.

84 If + present simple, modal verb

New Message

Hi Amy
Good news! If I take next Friday off, I can travel to Brighton and spend the weekend with you. Is that OK with you? If it is, should I drive down or take the train?

Malcolm

Hi Malcolm
That's wonderful news. I can't wait. If you come by train, you have to change trains in London but it's faster than driving. What time do you think you'll arrive?

Hi
If I catch the train at midday, I should be in Brighton by six. Could you meet me?
Is that too early for you?

No, that's fine. But if you call me from the station, I can pick you up.

Presentation

Use *if* + present simple, modal verb to talk about future choices or options.

If the bus is late, she'll get a taxi. (certain)
I can give you a lift. (possibility)
you must / have to call me. (obligation)
you should take a taxi. (strong advice)
he might miss the film. (possibility)
she could walk. (possibility)

Key vocabulary Phrasal verbs: check out, get around, pick someone/something up

Exercises

1 Complete the sentences about the hotel signs.

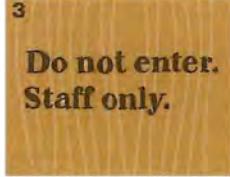
1



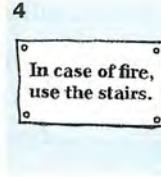
2



3



4



5



- When you leave, you must check out before 10 a.m.
- If you pay by credit card, you can _____.
- Unless you work here, you cannot _____.
- If there is a fire, you have to _____.
- If you want room service, you should _____.

2 Choose the correct modal verbs.

- 1 If the light is red, you have to / can stop.
- 2 You could / must study medicine if you want to be a doctor.
- 3 You might / can see James if you go to the party. I think he's going.
- 4 If I finish my homework, can / must I watch TV? My favourite programme is on at eight.
- 5 You mustn't / don't have to eat the meat if you don't like it.
- 6 We have to / might go away this weekend if the weather's good.
- 7 Should / Must I call you on your home number or your mobile number when I arrive?
- 8 If you join the army, you could / have to wear a uniform.
- 9 I'll / have to join you for a drink later if I'm free.

3 Correct the sentences.

- 1 If you're late, you should to call me.
If you're late, you should call me.
- 2 He cans come later if you want.
- 3 If you have stay another day, that's fine.
- 4 She can learns French if she uses this computer program.
- 5 We take a break now if you will like.
- 6 The taxi can to pick you up if you want.
- 7 We must to meet up for dinner when you come to England.
- 8 You can stay with Lars if you will visit Stockholm.

4 2.42 Match the two halves of the sentences giving advice on travel to New York. Then listen and check.

- | | | |
|---|-------------------------------------|--|
| 1 If you want to enter the United States, | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | c a you might need to reserve a ticket in advance. |
| 2 If you want to travel around New York, | <input type="checkbox"/> | b you can use a credit card anywhere. |
| 3 If you don't have cash, | <input type="checkbox"/> | c you must have a passport with a visa. |
| 4 If you have some free time, | <input type="checkbox"/> | d you have to be careful in the street. |
| 5 If you're out late at night, | <input type="checkbox"/> | e you could visit Times Square. |
| 6 If you want to see a show on Broadway, | <input type="checkbox"/> | f you should take taxis. It's the fastest way to get around. |

5 Write three pieces of advice for a visitor to your country. Use modal verbs.

- 1 If _____
- 2 If _____
- 3 If _____

85 Review of units 81 to 84

Grammar

1 Choose the correct forms.

- 1 If you need some money, go / goes to a cash machine.
- 2 You dream / will dream when you sleep.
- 3 If it rains / will rain, use your umbrella.
- 4 If you leave a message, I call / 'll call you back this evening.
- 5 We stay / 'll stay at home if there's something good on TV tonight.
- 6 Don't / Won't enter the building unless the police say you can.
- 7 If I get an A grade, my parents give / will give me 100 euros!
- 8 When I ask you to do something, do / does it!
- 9 When the cake is / will be ready, take it out of the oven.
- 10 If you don't / won't agree, we won't do it.
- 11 What do / will you usually do when you go on holiday?
- 12 What do / will you study if you go to university?

2 Match the two halves of the sentences.

- | | |
|----------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1 Press 1 | 9 |
| 2 Walk out of the building | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 3 They'll meet you | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 4 I won't come | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 5 I'll come with you | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 6 I'll eat the last one | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 7 You have to pass a test | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 8 Bill and Sally can play | <input type="checkbox"/> |
-
- | | |
|---|--|
| a if you say what time your flight lands. | |
| b if they want to. | |
| c if you leave now. | |
| d unless my girlfriend comes too. | |
| e unless someone else wants it. | |
| f if you want to drive a car. | |
| g if you'd like to speak to an operator. | |
| h when you hear the fire alarm. | |

3 Complete the recipe with when, if or unless.



fruit crumble

- 1,000g of fruit
- 100g butter
- 100–150g sugar
- 150g flour

Fruit crumble is probably the quickest and most delicious dessert in the world.

1 If you like apples they are good but any fruit will do. 2 you have cut the fruit, put it in a large dish. Then mix the flour, butter and, 3 you are on a diet, add lots of sugar. 4 you've mixed it, you have the 'crumble'. Put it on top of the fruit. Switch on the oven and 5 it's at 200°C, put the dish in. Cook for about 30 minutes or 40 minutes 6 you want the top to be brown.

It will serve about six friends, 7 you are eating it on your own! Pour some cream or, 8 you have some, vanilla ice cream tastes good with it.

4 Complete the conditional sentences with the correct form of the verbs.

- 1 When you press this button, the machine starts (start).
- 2 If you are happy with his work, tell him!
- 3 When the light comes (come) on, the machine is ready.
- 4 If you don't tidy (not tidy) your room, I won't give you a lift to the party.
- 5 When we reach the top of the mountain, we have (have) some lunch.
- 6 If you don't know the answer, your teacher isn't angry (not be) angry.
- 7 I will pick (pick) you up if you tell me what time you finish.
- 8 If she wants (want) to travel abroad, she'll need a passport.

Pronunciation: intonation

5 **2.43** In conditional sentences, the intonation rises on the *if*- clause and falls on the main clause. Listen to these sentences and repeat.

- 1 If you want to enter the United States, you must have a passport with a visa.
- 2 If you want to travel around New York, you should take taxis.
- 3 If you don't have cash, you can use a credit card anywhere.
- 4 If you have some free time, you could visit Times Square.
- 5 If you're out late at night, you have to be careful in the street.
- 6 If you want to see a show on Broadway, you might need to reserve a ticket in advance.

Vocabulary

6 Complete the phrasal verbs with the words in the box.

back back off up -around up

- 1 When you are in Amsterdam, get around on a bicycle. It's the best way to see the city.
- 2 Turn that noise down. It isn't music!
- 3 Can you put my keys up in my bag, please?
- 4 Did you tidy up that mess you made?
- 5 Can I call you back in five minutes?
- 6 Tell me your flight times and I'll pick you up.

Listen again

7 **2.44** Listen and write the missing words.

Hello, this is Braxton. Sorry, but I ¹ the phone at the moment. If ² between nine and five, I'm at work. Call me there on 020 7998 1234. If ³ urgent, ⁴ your name and number and ⁵ you back.

Or ⁶ me on my mobile ⁷.

That's 0770 879 3345.

Or you ⁸ me at braxton51@hotmail.com. Bye!



86 -ed and -ing adjectives

ENJ

http://www.ENJ.com/ Google

www.ENJ.com



Read what our clients say:

'I was surprised how much money I could really make.'

'There were so many interesting careers I never knew about at ENJ.'

'Before I discovered my job at ENJ, life was boring!'

Get excited with ExcitingNewJobs.com!

Click here now

Presentation

- Use an adjective that ends in *-ed* to describe how a person feels.
Are you bored?
I was surprised.
- Use an adjective that ends in *-ing* to describe the thing that causes the feeling.
We have 1,000 exciting new jobs.
Life was boring.

Key vocabulary Adjectives: annoyed/annoying, bored/boring, embarrassed/embarrassing, excited/exciting, frightened/frightening, interested/interesting, relaxed/relaxing, surprised/surprising, tired/tiring, worried/worrying

Exercises

1 ① 2.45 Choose the correct forms in the job interview. Then listen and check.

- A: So, you're ¹ *interesting* / *interested* in our advert for a shop assistant. Is that correct?
- B: That's right. I think sales is a really ² *exciting* / *excited* career.
- A: But you work for a sales company now. I'm ³ *surprising* / *surprised* you want to leave.
- B: It's really ⁴ *bored* / *boring*. I'm ⁵ *tiring* / *tired* of answering the phone all day and I want to meet people. Also, my boss is really ⁶ *annoying* / *annoyed*.

2 How do these people feel? Match the words in the box to the pictures.

annoyed bored embarrassed excited frightened interested relaxed surprised tired worried



1 interested

2 _____

3 _____

4 _____

5 _____



6 _____

7 _____

8 _____

9 _____

10 _____

3 Complete the sentences with the -ing form of the adjectives in exercise 2.

- 1 These test results are worrying. How can we improve them?
- 2 This book is so boring. Nothing happens.
- 3 I love snowboarding! It's exciting because you go so fast.
- 4 My little sister is annoying. She never stops talking and she steals things from my bedroom.
- 5 We were driving home when a lorry turned and nearly hit our car. It's was really frightening.
- 6 My father is a security guard and works at night. It's tiring work and he always goes straight to bed in the morning.
- 7 It's surprising how much people spend on clothes these days. I can't believe it!
- 8 The most interesting subject at school is history. I like reading about kings and queens.
- 9 There is nothing more relaxing for me than lying in bed on a Sunday morning with the newspapers. I love it.
- 10 It was so embarrassing when I dropped my lunch on the floor. Everybody was looking at me.

4 Complete the sentences so that they are true for you.

- 1 It's annoying when people _____
- 2 I think TV quiz shows are _____
- 3 The most exciting thing I have ever done was _____
- 4 I get worried when _____
- 5 At school I am/was interested in _____
- 6 The last time I was surprised was when _____
- 7 The most boring thing I have to do is _____
- 8 The last time I was embarrassed was when _____

87 looks, sounds, tastes, smells, feels

Sense verb + adjective

There are two faces in this picture. Which face can you see?



She looks young.



She looks old.

Presentation

You often use an adjective after these verbs: *look, sound, feel, smell, taste*.

She looks young. He sounds unhappy. This feels really soft. This air smells really fresh. This soup tastes awful.

TIP Don't use an adverb after these verbs.

Say *She looks beautiful.* (don't say *She looks beautifully.*)

Key vocabulary Adjectives: awful, beautiful, cool (= fashionable/attractive), delicious, fluent, fresh, great (= really good), lovely, old, polluted, relaxing, rough, sad, smooth, soft, sweet, well (= healthy), young

Exercises

1 Complete the adverts with the phrases in the box.

look younger feel smoother smell fresh taste delicious sound fluent

With our RAZORS you'll feel smoother.



2 by ten years with **magic SKIN CREAM**



Does your breath
3 _____
24 hours a day?
Be certain. Chew
minty gum day and night!



Visiting London?
4 _____
in English in only
7 days!



Doesn't your cooking
5 _____
It does now w
Mr Cook
sauce.



2 Complete the sentences about the photos with the words in the box.

awful -eeel delicious lovely old polluted relaxing rough sad sweet



1 He looks cool.

2 This feels _____.

3 That music sounds _____!

4 My dinner tastes _____.

5 It smells _____.

6 Why does he look so _____?

7 The air smells _____.

8 That feels _____.

9 It tastes _____.

10 That sounds _____.

3 ⑤ 2.46 Write in the missing verbs. Then listen and check.

Conversation 1

A: Are you OK?

B: I don't ¹ feel very well. I think I need a doctor.

Conversation 2

C: I haven't seen you for ages.

D: I know. You ² great! How do you do it?

C: I go to the gym every day.

Conversation 3

E: This is Mozart.

F: It ³ beautiful.

Conversation 4

G: That ⁴ nice. Is it Chanel?

H: Yes, Number 5.

Conversation 5

I: How does it ⁵ ?

J: Really good. Did you cook it?

Conversation 6

K: That boy shouldn't be driving a car. He

⁶ too young.

L: Don't worry. I'm sure he's over seventeen.

Conversation 7

M: Something ⁷ bad. What is it?

N: I was making toast but I burnt it.

Conversation 8

O: This ⁸ spicy. Is it Indian?

P: Yes, it's a new recipe from my cook book.

Conversation 9

Q: Let's go to the beach this weekend.

R: That ⁹ great!

Conversation 10

S: Can you massage my shoulders?

T: Sure. How does that ¹⁰ ?

S: Great, thanks.

88 Order of adjectives



Two small, old, English, oil paintings of local countryside from the nineteenth century.
Call 635 8875.



Round, wooden dining table with chairs. Seats six. £100 or nearest offer.



Elegant, black, Tuscan lamp bought in Florence. £45. Call 0778 767 7331 after 6 p.m.

Presentation

Adjectives usually go in this order before a noun:

opinion	size	shape	age	colour	origin	material	noun
	small		old		English	oil	paintings
		round				wooden	dining table
elegant				black	Tuscan		lamp

TIP In conversation, you rarely use more than two adjectives before a noun.

- With long lists of adjectives, you often write commas between adjectives: *It's an elegant, black, Tuscan lamp.*
- Numbers go before adjectives: *two small oil paintings.*

Key vocabulary Furniture: armchair, chair, cooker, curtains, desk, lamp, table, vase

Adjectives: ancient, beautiful, black, blue, brown, comfortable, cool, cotton, nineteenth-century, elegant, fast, French, green, huge, Italian, Japanese, Korean, large, long, lovely, new, old, metal, modern, plastic, practical, red, round, Russian, square, stylish, tall, white, wooden, yellow

Exercises

1 Put the adjectives in the correct order.

- | | | | |
|----------------------------|---|---------------------|--------------|
| 1 large white metal | a | large, white, metal | cooker |
| 2 plastic practical square | a | | garden table |
| 3 red comfortable two | | | armchairs |
| 4 tall Japanese ancient | a | | vase |
| 5 wooden stylish brown | a | | office desk |
| 6 cotton yellow long | | | curtains |

2 Use the adjectives in the sentences to complete the descriptions.

1 I love your new shirt! It's cotton, isn't it?

1 a new cotton shirt

2 This car is Korean. It's very fast.

2 car

3 That's a lovely necklace. Is it Russian?

3 necklace

4 Have you seen my old jeans? You know, the black ones.

4 jeans

5 This painting is French I think, probably from the eighteenth century.

5 painting

6 They're building a huge office block. It looks very modern.

6 office block

7 I've seen some garden chairs for sale. They're made of plastic and green.

7 garden chairs

8 I bought these sunglasses at an Italian market. They're so cool!

8 sunglasses

3 Describe the following with some of the adjectives in the box.

Australian beautiful diamond elegant enormous
eighteenth-century Italian modern plastic tiny ugly



1 She's a(n) elegant actress.
OPINION ORIGIN



2 The Queen of England lives in a(n) enormous palace.
SIZE AGE



3 I'd like a(n) beautiful necklace.
OPINION MATERIAL

4 Complete the sentences so that they are true for you. Use two adjectives each time.

- I live in a(n) _____
- Today, I'm wearing a(n) _____
- My favourite possession is a(n) _____

89 Adjectives with prepositions

lonelyheartsclub



Name: **Nigel**

Age: 26

I'm good at snowboarding and interested in travel. I would like to meet someone who is keen on dangerous sports and is different from other women.



Name: **Manuella**

Age: 37

Are you tired of your boring life? Let me change your world. I'm keen on theatre, live music and cinema. I'm not bad at cooking either.

Presentation

Many adjectives are followed by particular prepositions:

I'm good at snowboarding.

Are you tired of your boring life?

TIP You often use the verb *to be* with *adjective + preposition*: *I'm keen on dangerous sports.*

Key vocabulary Adjectives with prepositions: annoyed with, bad at, bored with, different from, excited about, frightened of, good at, interested in, keen on, married to, surprised by, tired of, worried about

Exercises

1 Choose the correct prepositions. Then listen and check.



Name: **Lisa**

Age: 41



Name: **Prescott**

Age: 56



Name: **Pam**

Age: 28

I'm good ¹at / of / about art and very keen ²from / on / at painting. I love nature and the countryside but I'm frightened ³with / by / of spiders. I need a man to protect me.

I'm divorced and bored ⁴with / on / at being alone. I love fast food and I'm bad ⁵at / by / on sport but I'm loving and caring.

Are you annoyed ⁶of / on / with the world? I'm really worried ⁷on / at / about global warming and tired ⁸by / of / on pollution. I want to meet someone with similar beliefs. Let's change the world together!

2 Complete the sentences with prepositions.

- 1 She's bored with this programme.
- 2 They were surprised at the news.
- 3 Are you tired of your job?
- 4 He isn't excited about his fortieth birthday.
- 5 Is she annoyed at her mother?
- 6 We aren't very good at Maths.
- 7 Is he frightened of anything?
- 8 He's really different from his brothers.
- 9 Who is Tom Cruise married to now?
- 10 Why are the police interested in what you're doing?
- 11 We're really bad at painting but we enjoy it.
- 12 There's nothing to be worried about.

3 Complete the conversation with the adjectives and prepositions in the boxes.

interested different married excited good worried

to about in at about from

- A: So, are you ¹ excited about the big day?
- B: Actually, I'm really ² interested in it.
- A: Why?
- B: Well, what if Sharon doesn't want to get ³ married to me. She might change her mind on the day. My last three girlfriends all left me.
- A: Don't be ridiculous! Sharon is ⁴ different from all those others. She really loves you!
- B: I know. But what happens when she finds out I'm no ⁵ good at anything. I don't have a good job and I have no money.
- A: But she isn't ⁶ worried about that kind of thing. She's only in love with you.
- B: Do you really think so?

4 Rewrite the sentences using an adjective and preposition.

- 1 Flying really frightens me! I'm really frightened of flying.
- 2 History interests me. I'm interested in.
- 3 Your news surprised everyone. Everyone was surprised at.
- 4 This TV show is boring for the kids. The kids bored with it.
- 5 Why is your new job worrying you? Why are you worried about it?
- 6 Saffron is annoying Peter. Peter annoyed by Saffron.

5 Complete the sentences so that they are true for you.

- 1 I'm good at maths.
- 2 I'm keen on sports.
- 3 I'm bad at languages.
- 4 I'm frightened of heights.
- 5 I'm excited about traveling.

90 Review of units 86 to 89

Grammar

1 Complete the adjectives.

- 1 You look very bored. What's the matter?
- 2 Your holiday sounds great.
- 3 It's really annoying when people telephone and try to sell you something.
- 4 My father flies round the world for his job. It's very tiring.
- 5 I don't think the children should watch that horror film. It's too frightening.
- 6 Are you worried about your exam?
- 7 Did you watch the final? It was so exciting!
- 8 Your perfume smells beautiful!
- 9 Roy is married to Rita.
- 10 Your Spanish is quite fluent, isn't it?
- 11 That wants to close the factory because the air is polluted.
- 12 The programme is awful. Turn it off.
- 13 She's really interested. Have you ever spoken to her?
- 14 This cake is delicious. How did you make it?
- 15 I'm not surprised that he's leaving his job.

2 Complete the conversation with the verbs in the box. There is one extra verb.

looks sounds tastes feel smells



- A: So, I'm happy to tell you we have a new product for Christmas.
- B: That ¹ sounds good! What is it?
- A: It's a perfume for young professional women. Here it is. What do you think of the bottle?
- B: It ² wonderful – very stylish. There's only one problem.
- A: What's that?
- B: It ³ disgusting! I ⁴ sick!

3 Correct the sentences. Five are correct.

- 1 He's interested in football. ✓
- 2 I have a white-new fridge for sale.
I have a new white fridge for sale
- 3 They're keen at golf.
- 4 There's an elegant, diamond necklace in the window.
- 5 Emily is really excited at her birthday.
- 6 Who does that frightening brown big dog belong to?
- 7 I'm really bad with Maths. Can you help me?
- 8 I feel ill. Can I go home?
- 9 He looks intelligently.
- 10 That smells nice. What is it?
- 11 They look very happy together!
- 12 I was surprised on his new haircut.
- 13 This is a really romantic annoying film.
- 14 Those flowers smell delicious.
- 15 Why are you worried for your results?

Pronunciation: syllables and word stress

- 4 **2.48** Listen. How many syllables are there in each word?

1 interesting	3	9 tiring	
2 interested		10 tired	
3 boring		11 annoying	
4 bored		12 annoyed	
5 exciting		13 frightening	
6 excited		14 frightened	
7 worrying		15 surprising	
8 worried		16 surprised	

Listen again and underline the stress in words with more than one syllable.

Vocabulary

- 5 Write the adjectives in the columns.

ancient	beautiful	boring	brown	cool
cotton	elegant	large	metal	modern
old	orange	plastic	red	round
square	wooden		yellow	young

size/shape	age	colour
	ancient	

material	opinion

- 6 Reorder the letters to make furniture words. Then match them to the pictures.



a



b



c



d



e



f

1 cokero

cooker

c

2 hiarmcar

chair

h

3 bleta

bed

b

4 save

chair

s

5 sked

desk

k

6 palm

lamp

l

Listen again

- 7 **2.49** Listen and complete the notes about Lisa, Prescott and Pam.



Lisa	Prescott	Pam
Age:	Age:	Age:
Interests:	Marital status:	Concerns:
Dislikes:	Likes:	
	Dislikes:	

91 Verb + *to-infinitive*

New Message

To: Suzie
From: Alice Attached:

Hi Suzie,
I've decided to leave my job – I'm planning to start my own business. I want to start a website for university students.
Ring me,
Alice

Presentation

After many common verbs, you can use the *to-infinitive* form of another verb:

I've decided to leave my job.

decide	to-infinitive
plan	
agree	
refuse	
want	
hope	
would like	

You often use verbs with *to-infinitive* to talk about hopes, intentions and decisions.

- There are two possible negatives. They often have different meanings.

I haven't decided to go. = I haven't made a decision yet.

I've decided not to go. = I've made a decision. It was negative.

- Don't use the *to-infinitive* form after modal verbs (*can*, *could*, *will*, *would*, *shall*, *should*, *may*, *might*, *must*):
Say *She can't drive.* (don't say *She can't to drive.*)

Exercises

1 2.50 Match 1–6 to a–f to make a text. Then listen and check.

- 1 First, I want to travel around
- 2 Then, I hope to work for
- 3 If possible, I'd like to help
- 4 One day, I hope to get
- 5 I'd like to have
- 6 But basically, I just want to be

- b

- a Save the Children.
- b the world.
- c married.
- d happy.
- e two children.
- f children in the developing world.



2 Put the words in order.

- 1 hoping I'm marathon New York run the to

- 2 at Economics decided I've study to university

- 3 after degree I'm immediately my not planning to work

- 4 me refused she talk to to

- 5 agreed not police tell the to we

- 6 an don't I to in office want work



3 Read the situations. Then complete the sentences.

- 1 A: Can we meet at nine?
B: OK. Nine is fine.
They agreed to meet at nine.
- 2 'I won't wear my red dress!'
Matilda refused _____
- 3 'After school, I'm going to study medicine.'
He plans _____
- 4 'It would be nice to leave early.'
Richard would like _____
- 5 A: We can catch the train.
B: No. Let's take a taxi.
A: Good idea.
They decided _____
- 6 'I'd like to have my own TV show one day.'
Sasha hopes _____
- 7 'Can I come with you all tonight?'
Richie wants _____

4 Write in the missing **to** in the sentences.

- 1 We're planning to go to Greece for our holidays.
- 2 She's agreed not tell David.
- 3 I hope move house in September.
- 4 I've agreed work late on Tuesday.
- 5 The bank refused lend me the money.
- 6 Carrie's decided not go to university.
- 7 Would you like borrow my dictionary?
- 8 I plan go on a diet.
- 9 We invited them but they refused come.
- 10 We decided not go to the cinema.

5 Write about your hopes, intentions and decisions.

- 1 One day, I hope to _____
- 2 I'd also like to _____
- 3 But basically I just want to _____

92 Verb + -ing, -ing nouns

A: What time shall we leave?
B: Let's get on the road at three o'clock.
A: That's very early.
B: I don't like driving at night.
A: Why not?
B: Driving at night is dangerous. I worry about having an accident.
A: OK. We'll leave at three.



Presentation

Verb + -ing

After many verbs, you use the *-ing* form of another verb: *I don't like driving at night.*

Common verbs followed by *-ing* are: *like, dislike, love, hate, enjoy* and *(not) mind*.

Nouns

The *-ing* form of the verb is often a noun:

Driving at night is dangerous.

Verb + preposition + -ing

You also use the *-ing* form after a preposition:

I worry about having an accident.

See page 234: spelling rules

Key vocabulary Leisure activities: camping, eating out, sunbathing, skiing, surfing, swimming

Exercises

1 Write what these people like or don't like doing. Use the words in the box.

camp do homework eat out ski sunbathe surf



1 She doesn't like skiing.



2 He _____



3 We _____



4 She _____



5 He _____



6 They _____

2 Complete the sentences using the -ing form of the verbs in the box.

be clean eat learn park ski smoke steal swim watch

- 1 Smoking is bad for you.
- 2 _____ in the sea is nicer than in a pool.
- 3 _____ TV all evening is boring.
- 4 _____ is wrong.
- 5 _____ a policeman is a dangerous job.
- 6 _____ too much chocolate makes you fat.
- 7 It's a big car. _____ it is difficult.
- 8 It's a big house. _____ it takes a long time.
- 9 The violin is a difficult instrument. _____ to play it can take years.
- 10 _____ is more dangerous than playing football.

3 2.51 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the phrases in the box. Then listen and check.

buy a guitar fly get old go on a diet learn languages not phone

- 1 She speaks French, English, Italian and Mandarin. She's very good at learning languages.
- 2 Could you help me? I'm interested in _____.
- 3 I'm getting fat. I'm thinking about _____.
- 4 Do you ever worry about _____?
- 5 John rarely goes abroad. He's afraid of _____.
- 6 I'm sorry for _____. I forgot my mobile.

4 Put the words in the correct order.

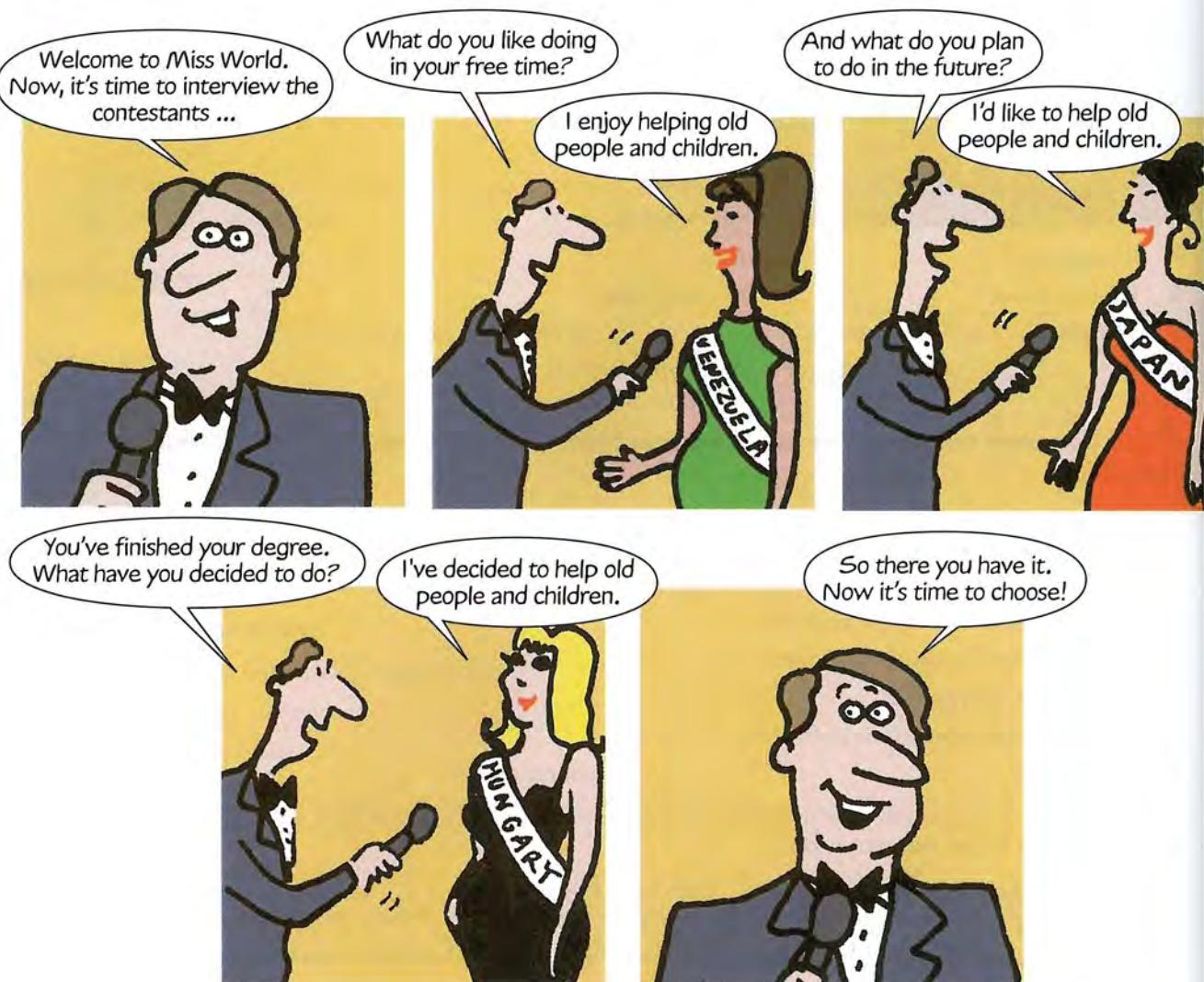
- 1 mind you I helping don't I don't mind helping you.
- 2 enjoy sports do playing you? _____
- 3 is exercise good swimming _____
- 4 about worry at driving they night _____
- 5 are at skiing you good? _____
- 6 like computer they playing games _____
- 7 sunbathing for is bad your skin _____

5 Make any necessary changes to these sentences to make them true for you.

don't mind

- 1 I love watching TV. 5 I'm thinking about getting a new job.
- 2 Smoking is a really nice habit. 6 I'm not afraid of flying.
- 3 My friends and I often go sunbathing. 7 Camping is something I enjoy.
- 4 Making time to study English is difficult. 8 I prefer eating out to eating at home.

93 Verb + -ing or verb + to-infinitive?



Presentation

When there are two verbs in a sentence, they can follow two patterns ...

- verb + -ing: *I enjoy helping old people and children.*

The -ing form also follows these verbs: *dislike, finish, give up, mind, miss, practise, suggest.*

- verb + to-infinitive: *I'd like to help old people and children.*

The to-infinitive form also follows these verbs: *agree, decide, plan, want, need, refuse, hope, promise, want, would like.*

verb + -ing or to-infinitive?

These verbs can follow either pattern with little or no change in meaning: *like, prefer, love, hate.*

What do you like doing in your free time?

What do you like to do in your free time?

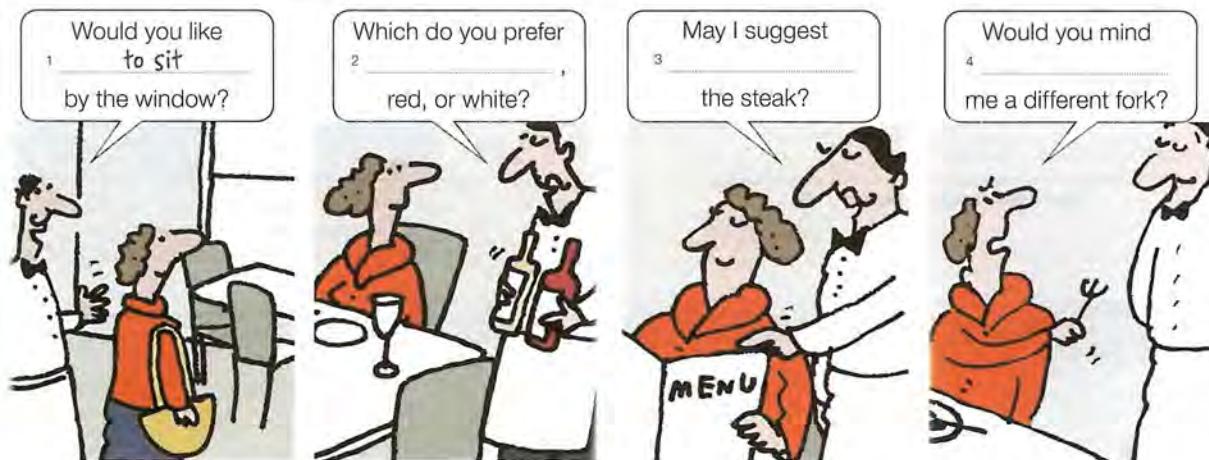
Exercises

1 Choose the correct forms. Sometimes both forms are possible.

- 1 They miss to live / living in France.
- 2 I hate to wash / washing dishes.
- 3 We've decided to move / moving house.
- 4 Can't they agree to go / going next week instead?
- 5 We suggest to apply / applying for a job as soon as you can.
- 6 She prefers to live / living in the city to the country.
- 7 They refused to give / giving us the money back.
- 8 Have you practised to play / playing your guitar today?
- 9 Michelle and Marty want to have / having dinner at Tortelli's.
- 10 Why do you think Jack loves to surf / surfing so much?
- 11 When did you give up to eat / eating meat?
- 12 They promised to help / help me this afternoon. Where are they?

2 2.52 Complete the questions with the correct form of the verbs in the box. Sometimes more than one form is possible. Then listen and check.

bring drink sit try



3 Read the situations. Then complete the sentences. Use the correct form of the underlined verb in the first sentence. Sometimes both forms are possible.

- 1 'Playing tennis is great.'
Jane loves playing / to play tennis.
- 2 'Can I go tonight, too.'
Bill would like _____, too.
- 3 'I'll call her back.'
He promised _____.
- 4 'I've painted your picture. It's finished.'
The artist has finished _____.
- 5 A: Did you listen to that new CD?
B: Yes, it was good.
She enjoyed _____.
- 6 A: Can we watch a film?
B: What sort? I have comedy and horror films.
A: Oh, a horror film, definitely.
He prefers _____.

94 stop + -ing or stop + to-infinitive?



Hi, it's me.

Yeah, no problems. We've just stopped to have something to eat.

No, Marie's fine now. She's stopped feeling sick.

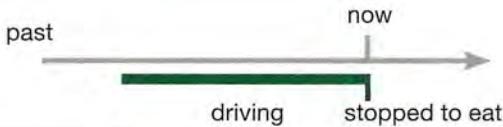
Yeah, she's playing a computer game.

See you soon. We should be home in a couple of hours.

Presentation

You can follow some verbs with the *-ing* form or *to-infinitive*, but there is a difference in meaning.

We've just stopped to have something to eat.
= We were driving. We wanted something to eat.
We stopped driving.



She's stopped feeling sick. = She felt sick. Then she got better. She doesn't feel sick now.



Key vocabulary Health and illness: break a leg, feel sick, get better, have a headache, lose weight, stop smoking, take regular exercise

Exercises

1 Choose the correct forms.

- 1 We drove 300 kilometres and then stopped *to eat* / *eating*.
- 2 We had an argument and he stopped *to write* / *writing* to me.
- 3 I had to stop *to play* / *playing* tennis after I broke my leg.
- 4 I stopped *to smoke* / *smoking* ten years ago.
- 5 On way to my mother's house I stopped *to buy* / *buying* her flowers.
- 6 I've stopped *to eat* / *eating* chocolate. I want to lose weight.
- 7 I was early so I stopped *to have* / *having* a coffee.
- 8 Can we stop for a few minutes *to smoke* / *smoking* a cigarette?
- 9 I read a negative article about that company and I've stopped *to buy* / *buying* their products.
- 10 The doctor gave me a new medicine and I've stopped *to have* / *having* headaches.

2 Complete the sentences with **stop** or **stop to** and the correct form of the verbs in the box.

drive eat relax smoke spend take watch

How to live a better life

1 Stop smoking.



2 Stop eating junk food.



3 You could stop driving to work and walk instead.



4 Don't stop doing regular exercise.



5 Spend time with your family and friends.



6 Stop watching TV and start a new hobby.



7 During your busy day, always take time for about half an hour.

3 2.53 Complete the conversation with the correct form of the verbs. Then listen and check.

A: Happy New Year! How are you?

B: A bit tired. I went to a party last night.

A: What did you do?

B: Well, first we stopped ¹ to pick (pick) Mel up from her house.

A: Doesn't she still work at the restaurant?

B: No, she stopped ² (work) there ages ago. Anyway, we all went to a great party and at midnight everyone stopped ³ (watch) the fireworks. But this morning I feel terrible. I must stop ⁴ (smoke).

A: That could be your New Year's resolution.

B: What do you mean?

A: Well, lots of people often stop ⁵ (do) something on January the first.

B: Really? So, what's your resolution?

A: I've stopped ⁶ (eat) fast food and I think I'm also going to stop ⁷ (watch) TV. I need to do more exercise.

B: Sounds a bit boring to me!

95 Review of units 91 to 94

Grammar

1 Choose the correct forms.



- 1 Did you hate *go / to go / going* to school?
- 2 *Snowboard / To snowboard / Snowboarding* is quite dangerous.
- 3 Would you like *try / to try / trying* this dish?
- 4 I enjoy *try / to try / trying* dishes from different countries.
- 5 Have you stopped *do / to do / doing* your course?
- 6 Are you interested in *come / to come / coming* out tonight?
- 7 I want you *help / to help / helping* me with something.
- 8 Could you *help / to help / helping* me?
- 9 Ask William. He's good at *fix / to fix / fixing* computers.
- 10 We can't *agree / to agree / agreeing* with you, I'm afraid.
- 11 We'd like you *be / to be / being* in our team.
- 12 We hope *meet / to meet / meeting* at five.
- 13 She's not bad at *cook / to cook / cooking* actually.
- 14 Did the President *agree change / to change / changing* the law?
- 15 He didn't stop *say / to say / saying* hello. Why not?
- 16 He's decided *take / to take / taking* the job.

2 Complete the email with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

E-mail
New Reply Forward Print Delete Send & receive

Dear Rich

I wanted ¹ to call (call) you on your mobile today but I couldn't ² find (find) your number. Anyway, you know I promised ³ have (have) a drink with you this evening? Well, do you mind ⁴ meet (meet) at the weekend instead? The problem is that I haven't finished ⁵ prepare (prepare) for a job interview on Friday. I really want ⁶ get (get) the job so I need ⁷ spend (spend) some time on it. Hope that's OK. See you later this week.

Mindy

3 Look at the pairs of sentences. Which one is correct? Sometimes both are correct.

- 1 a The decided to leave their jobs and go travelling. ✓
b The decided leaving their jobs and go travelling. X
- 2 a Mark prefers listening to rock music.
b Mark prefers to listen to rock music.
- 3 a They're annoyed about to miss the concert.
b They're annoyed about missing the concert.
- 4 a We love trying new restaurants.
b We love to try new restaurants.
- 5 a I promise working harder in the future.
b I promise to work harder in the future.
- 6 a We've become vegetarians so we've stopped eating meat.
b We've become vegetarians so we've stopped to eat meat.
- 7 a Do your children hate eating vegetables?
b Do your children hate to eat vegetables?

4 Complete the second sentence so that it means the same as the first.

- 1 I'm not going.
He's decided not to go.
- 2 I won't talk to you.
She refused me.
- 3 Can you photocopy this?
I'd like you
- 4 Don't smoke. It's bad for you.
You should
- 5 On my way to work I met Jules. We talked.
I stopped to Jules.
- 6 Sorry but I'm not good at making things.
Sorry but I'm
- 7 We're going to travel around Europe this summer.
They plan
this summer.
- 8 You shouldn't drink a lot of coffee. It's bad for you.
Drinking is bad
for you.

Pronunciation: intrusive /w/

5 ②.54 When we say **to** before a verb that begins with a vowel sound, you can hear a /w/ sound. Listen to these examples. Then listen again and repeat.

to /w/ apply to /w/ eat to /w/ include
to /w/ open to /w/ understand

6 ②.55 Write in the /w/ sound in these sentences. Then listen and check.

- 1 I'd like to /w/ ask for a pay rise.
- 2 He promised to answer my call.
- 3 Do we need to employ anyone else?
- 4 Would you like to order now?
- 5 When do they want to interview you?

Vocabulary

7 Match to make six leisure activities.

1 cam	ing	<u>camping</u>
2 eatin	ping	<u> </u>
3 sunb	g out	<u> </u>
4 ski	ming	<u> </u>
5 sur	fing	<u> </u>
6 swim	athing	<u> </u>

8 Complete the sentences with a verb and a noun from the boxes.

break feel get have lose stop take

better exercise headache leg sick
smoking weight

- 1 I've tried to stop smoking three times now. But after three days I always start again.
- 2 My dog is so fat. He really needs to some !
- 3 A: How did Mike his ?
B: He was playing football and fell badly.
- 4 I know that I should have a good diet and regular but it's so hard.
- 5 I a terrible . Can I have a paracetamol?
- 6 What's the matter? Do you ? We can stop the car if you want.
- 7 Take this medicine and it will help you to .

Listen again

9 ②.56 Listen and number these events in order.

- | | |
|--|-----------------------------------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> have children | <input type="checkbox"/> be happy |
| <input type="checkbox"/> travel | <input type="checkbox"/> marry |
| <input type="checkbox"/> help children | <input type="checkbox"/> work |

96 Verb + object + to-infinitive



Presentation

You can ask someone to do something using verb + object + *to-infinitive*.

	verb	object	to-infinitive
	Tell Ask	him her them	to photocopy this report.
I You We They	want need 'd like	me you him her	to photocopy this report.
He She	wants needs 'd like	us them	

TIP Say *I want you to ...* (don't say *I want that you ...*)

Key vocabulary Office tasks: book somebody a room, meet somebody at the airport, organise meetings, photocopy a report, send somebody a copy / an email, take somebody to the station

Exercises

1 Put the words in order.

- 1 him me phone tell to
- 2 ask come her my office to to
- 3 at be here tell them to six
- 4 a ask copy him me send to
- 5 give tell the them to money you
- 6 tell and her to come me see
- 7 photocopy Michelle to this ask
- 8 the station the at to driver tell stop

Tell him to phone me.

2 Choose the correct pronouns.

- 1 (He) / Him asked she / her to send an email with this attachment.
- 2 Us / We told them / they to arrive at eight o'clock.
- 3 I / Me wanted him / he to meet we / us at the airport.
- 4 Them / They would like me / I to phone them / they this evening.
- 5 She / Her needs us / we to take she / her to the station.
- 6 He / Him would like I / me to meet they / them early tomorrow.
- 7 Do you / your need I / me to sign this?
- 8 How many cakes does she / her want he / him to make?

3 There are six mistakes in this email. Find and correct them.

The screenshot shows an email window with the following details:

- To:** Jens Norquist
- Subject:** various
- From:** Diane Fogel
- Attached:** [empty]

The body of the email contains the following text:

you to do
There are a few things I need that you do.
First of all, Jack Greer from our New York office is going to visit you in September. He'd like that you book him a room in the Park Plaza for the night of the 27th.
Also, he wants you organise meetings with all the people in your team for him.
Secondly, Marta Castro needs that you send her copies of the January reports.
Lastly, Paul McCann doesn't answer my emails or answer my phone calls. Can you ask him that calls me as soon as possible? Tell him use my mobile (8796 543 643).
Thank you,
Diane

4 ⑥ 2.57 Rewrite the sentences with verb + object + to-infinitive. Then listen and check.

- 1 Photocopy this report.
I'd like you to photocopy this report.
- 2 Mike, I spoke to the boss. Send a copy of the letter to him.
The boss wants _____
- 3 Your secretary hasn't booked the hotel room. Can she do it now?
Please ask _____
- 4 Meet us at the café on the corner and invite Jerry.
Tell Jerry _____
- 5 Bring me another steak. This one tastes awful.
I'd like _____
This one tastes awful.

97 Infinitive of purpose



Presentation

You use the infinitive of purpose (*to + verb*) to say why a person does something.

All passengers must go to gate 20 immediately to board the plane.

I'm going to Florida to meet some clients in Miami.

I want to go Orlando to see Disneyland.

I'd like some perfume to give to my daughter for her birthday.

TIP The infinitive of purpose often answers the question *Why?*

In spoken English, you can answer the *Why?* question with *To*.

Why do you want to go to Orlando? To see Disneyland.

Exercises

1 2.58 Match 1–8 to a–h to make sentences. Then listen and check.

- 1 I'm going to Buckingham Palace
- 2 They went to the butcher
- 3 You need to study hard
- 4 Leave early in the morning
- 5 I want to buy an mp3 player
- 6 I stopped at the garage
- 7 We'd like a menu
- 8 You should buy a new dress

- b

- a to buy some meat.
- b to see the Queen.
- c to put petrol in the car.
- d to wear to the party.
- e to avoid the traffic.
- f to learn a language.
- g to take on holiday.
- h to see what's for lunch.

- 2 The word **to** is missing six times in the text. Write it in.

A large blue advertisement featuring a white cruise ship sailing on the ocean. The text "Take the cruise of a lifetime!" is written in yellow and blue. Below the ship, a blue banner says "Isn't it time for a break?"

Join us on a cruise of the Mediterranean Sea **to** visit some of the most famous sites in the world.

DAY ONE

Fly to Venice meet the cruise liner *The Golden Angel*.

DAY TWO

Before we leave you'll have a few hours buy souvenirs from one of Italy's most famous cities. Then at midday, we leave for Athens. In the evening you can sit on the deck enjoy the sunset and the live entertainment.

DAY THREE

We arrive at the port of Piraeus take a tour of the city. We'll walk into town see the Acropolis and try some wonderful Greek food.

- 3 Look at the pictures and answer the questions. Use the infinitive of purpose with the verb in brackets.



- 1 Why is she cycling? (get)
- 2 Why is he at the market? (buy)
- 3 Why is he waiting? (catch)
- 4 Why do you press this button? (take)
- 5 Why did they go to the zoo? (see)
- 6 Why did they fly into space in 1969? (land on)

She's cycling to get to school.

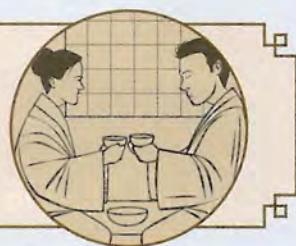
- 4 Complete these sentences about you using the infinitive of purpose.

- 1 I'm studying English to _____.
- 2 Last year I visited _____ to _____.
- 3 Next year I'm going to _____ to _____.

98 The passive: present simple

How is tea served in Japan?

A GUIDE FOR GUESTS



The tea is made by the host. Guests are invited into the room, or outside into a garden.

Hands are washed and shoes are removed.

Sometimes guests are served a simple small meal before the tea.

The table is prepared with a special tea bowl and the tea is placed in this.

A tea ceremony lasts between one and five hours.

Presentation

Use the passive form when you want to focus on the object not the subject (or person) of the active sentence. The object becomes the subject.

Active sentence: subject object
The host serves tea.

Passive sentence: Tea is served by the host.

Form the present simple passive with the verb *to be (am/is/are) + past participle*.

Affirmative and negative

Tea	is(n't)	served in the garden.
Guests	are(n't)	invited into the room.

Questions

	Is	tea	served in the garden?
Where	are	guests	invited to go?

See page 235: Irregular verbs

Key vocabulary Customs, traditions and ceremonies: birthday, cake, candles, fireworks, gifts, guests, host, meal

Exercises

1 Complete the sentences with *is* or *are*.



- 1 Gifts are given on December 25th.
- 2 Candles are put on a birthday cake.
- 3 Coffee is served to guests.
- 4 Shoes were left outside a person's house.
- 5 Money is left when children lose a tooth.
- 6 Fireworks were lit on New Year's Day.

Which of the statements 1–6 are true for your country?

2 2.59 Complete the text with the present simple passive form of the verbs. Then listen and check.

IT'S A FACT!

- Four main types of tea ¹ are grown (grow) – green tea, black tea, oolong tea and white tea.
- Most tea ² is picked (pick) by hand and then it ³ takes (take) to a factory.
- When the leaves ⁴ are dried (dry) with hot air, they turn brown or black.
- Coffee ⁵ isn't drunk (not drink) as much as tea around the world.
- Tea ⁶ is used (use) as a medicine in some countries.

3 Write questions in the passive.

- 1 what / this machine / use for
- 2 how / this computer / switch on
- 3 what / make / with flour
- 4 how often / these rooms / clean
- 5 where / coffee beans / grow
- 6 when / the post / deliver
- 7 how / this word / pronounce
- 8 how much / know / about dinosaurs

What is this machine used for?

99 The passive: past simple

The agent by

Are you a chocolate lover?
How is chocolate made?
Where was it discovered?

Here are some things you might not know ...

- White chocolate is not really chocolate because it isn't made with cacao beans.
- The Mayan people grew cacao beans in 600AD. Cacao beans were used by them as a form of money.
- The Swiss eat more chocolate per person than any other country and over \$13 billion per year is spent on chocolate by US consumers.
- Early explorers brought it to Europe and later it was taken to North America.

Presentation

Form the past simple passive with the verb *to be (was/were) + past participle*.

Chocolate was taken to North America.

Cacao beans were used as a form of money.

Where was chocolate discovered?

The agent

In the active form you know who did the action: *Explorers brought chocolate to Europe*.

In the passive we can say the agent (who did it) using *by*: *Chocolate was brought to Europe by explorers*.

The agent isn't always necessary. This sentence is also possible: *Chocolate was brought to Europe*.

You don't normally use the agent when the agent is ...

- obvious and therefore unnecessary: *White chocolate isn't made from cacao beans by chocolate makers*.
- unknown: *A piece of chocolate was left on my desk by someone*.

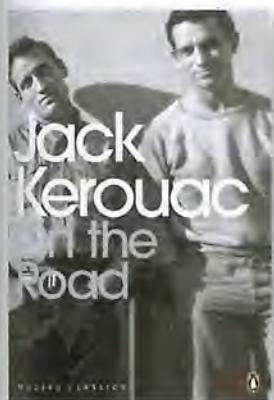
Exercises

1 Choose the correct forms.



The potato ¹ discover / was discovered nearly 7,000 years ago. People in the Andes in South America ² grew / was grown the vegetable and it ³ ate / was eaten as a main part of their diet. It ⁴ arrived / was arrived in Europe in around 1570, but by the nineteenth century it ⁵ grew / was grown by many countries and it ⁶ became / was become the main vegetable in many countries.

- 2 **2.60** Complete the text with the past simple active or passive form of the verbs. Then listen and check.



On the Road ¹ was written (write) in 1951 but it ² (not publish) until 1957. In 2005, it ³ (choose) by *Time Magazine* as one of the best 100 English-language novels of the last century.

Jack Kerouac ⁴ (write) the book in only three weeks but he ⁵ (use) notes and diaries from seven years of travel across the USA. Often the names of real people and places ⁶ (change).

Many poets, writers and musicians ⁷ (say) the book was important to them. Bob Dylan said: 'It ⁸ (change) my life.'

In 2001, the original text ⁹ (buy) for \$2.4 million.

- 3 Complete the quiz questions with the past simple passive form of the verbs. Can you answer the questions? (See the answers at the bottom of the page.)

Quiz

- 1 Who was Hamlet written (write) by?
- 2 Where gunpowder invented? (invent)?
- 3 How much Russia paid by the USA for Alaska in 1867?
- 4 What the first words spoken on the moon?
- 5 What year Mount Everest climbed? (climb)?
- 6 Where coffee discovered? (discover)?
- 7 The first plane flew by which brothers in 1903?
- 8 Where the Olympic games held in 2008? (hold) in 2008?
- 9 When seatbelts used in cars? (use) in cars?
- 10 Who the ball-point pen invented by? (invent) by?

- 4 We don't always need the agent. Which agent (a or b) is necessary?

- 1 The President was shot ...
a by someone. b by a man in a black suit and dark glasses.
- 2 Did you read the autobiography ...
a by a writer?
b by that Hollywood actress?
- 3 The painting was done ...
a by a child aged nine.
b by a painter.
- 4 The man was finally stopped for driving at 200 kilometres per hour ...
a by six police cars!
b by the police.
- 5 Was the car made ...
a by a machine or by hand?
b by something?

100 Review of units 96 to 100

Grammar

- 1 Complete the conversation with the words in the box.

go need something tell wants to (x2) you

Boss: So, is there anything else?

Assistant: Yes, Mr Braun ¹ wants us to pick him up at the airport at five.

Boss: I see. OK. ² Marco to pick him up, then.

Assistant: I'm afraid Marco is going to the station ³ meet Ms Shimeal at the same time.

Boss: Well, we ⁴ someone to meet Mr Braun. Ask someone else in the office to ⁵.

Assistant: And one last thing. We'd like to buy ⁶ to give Rosanne.

Boss: Why?

Assistant: ⁷ celebrate her birthday.

Boss: Really?

Assistant: Yes, and we'd like ⁸ to give us some money to pay for it.

Boss: How much?

- 2 Complete the sentences with the present or past simple passive form of the verbs.

1 Every year fires are burnt (burn) on November 5th in England.

2 New Year is always celebrated (celebrate) on a different day in China.

3 In Japan the main guest for a meal sits in the centre and is served (serve) first.

4 Before 1972, Sri Lanka was called (call) Ceylon.

5 The scientist Louis Pasteur was born (be born) in France in 1822.

6 Slovakia joined (join) to the Czech Republic until 1993.

7 Tagalog spoke (speak) in the Philippines.

- 3 Write three similar facts about your country. Use the passive.

1

2

3

- 4 Rewrite the sentences and questions using the present or past simple passive.

1 They built the Eiffel Tower in 1889.

The Eiffel Tower was built in 1889

2 You make pasta with flour and eggs.

Pasta

3 How do you grow cotton?

How

4 Someone left a message on your desk.

A message

5 When did you send the letter?

When

6 Brazilians don't speak Spanish. They speak Portuguese.

Spanish

They speak Portuguese.

7 My employer pays me £500 a week.

I

8 We deliver packages all over the world.

Packages

9 The weather was bad but it didn't delay our plane.

The weather was bad but our plane

5 Correct the mistake in each sentence.

her

- 1 Tell ~~she~~ to give me a call.
- 2 We're going to the theatre for ~~to~~ watch a play.
- 3 I need you ~~copy~~ this report.
- 4 Do you want him to send ~~I~~ an email?
- 5 ~~Them~~ would like to meet us at the station.
- 6 How many of these do you want ~~buy~~ from us?
- 7 Is Angie there? Tell ~~to~~ come and see me straight away.
- 8 Water ~~are~~ heated to 100 degrees.
- 9 How many different languages are ~~teached~~ in your school?
- 10 This building ~~designed~~ by a famous architect in 1999.
- 11 A famous architect was ~~designed~~ this city.
- 12 No one knows when the wheel was ~~invent~~.

Pronunciation: past participles

6 ②.61 Listen to the pronunciation of these past participles. Complete the table.

grown	read	brought	told	left	lit	paid
worn	made	said	drove	built	taught	

Vocabulary

7 Complete the sentences with the verbs in the box.

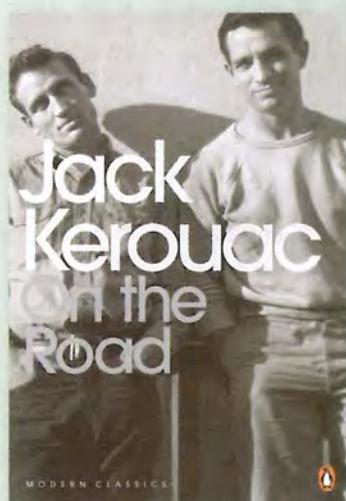
book	meet	photocopy	send	take
------	------	-----------	------	------

- 1 Could you photocopy this report and give a copy to Ms Barker?
- 2 Please send him an email with this attachment.
- 3 Did you book the room for our meeting?
- 4 He lands at three. Can you meet him at the airport?
- 5 I need a taxi to take me to the station.

Listen again

8 ②.62 Listen and answer the questions.

- 1 When was the book *On the Road* published?
1957
- 2 Which magazine chose it as one of the best novels of the last century?
- 3 How quickly was the book written?
- 4 What did Bob Dylan say it changed?
- 5 How much was the original book bought for?



/əʊ/ no	/e/ met	/eɪ/ say
grown		
/ɔ:/ or	/ɪ/ it	

1 Progress test (Units 1 to 10)

- 1 I _____ from Italy.
a am b is c are
- 2 Ray and Maria _____ eighteen.
a am b is c are
- 3 She _____ married.
a 'm b 's c 're
- 4 We _____ single.
a 'm b 's c 're
- 5 This picture is nice. It _____ from Brazil.
a 'm b 's c 're
- 6 I _____ thirty. I'm thirty-one.
a 'm not b isn't c aren't
- 7 They _____ from Chile. They're from Argentina.
a am not b isn't c aren't
- 8 'Is Andrew British?' 'No, he _____.'
a aren't b isn't c is
- 9 He's _____ doctor.
a a b an c Ø
- 10 We're _____ teachers.
a a b an c Ø
- 11 Pablo is _____ artist.
a a b an c Ø
- 12 The three brothers are _____.
a engineer b engineers c an engineers
- 13 They're Chinese. They _____ Japanese.
a no b not c aren't
- 14 _____ it three o'clock?
a Am b Is c Are
- 15 _____ Tom and Liz from Sydney?
a Am b Is c Are
- 16 'Are you Polish?' 'Yes, I _____.
a am b is c are
- 17 _____ the Eiffel tower in Paris?
a Am b Is c Are
- 18 'Are you and Jenna married?' 'Yes, _____.
a it is b we are c they are
- 19 They are _____.
a fasts cars b fast cars c cars fast
- 20 Your son _____ short. He's tall.
a isn't b is c aren't
- 21 Matilda is _____ young nurse.
a a b an c Ø
- 22 Leah and Monika are _____ French teachers.
a a b an c Ø
- 23 They're _____ fast motorbikes.
a a b an c Ø
- 24 W. B. Yeats is _____ Irish writer.
a a b an c Ø
- 25 Where are _____ car keys?
a a b an c the
- 26 _____ the books on the chair?
a Am b Is c Are
- 27 The phone is _____ the table.
a on b in c to
- 28 '_____ is the phone?' 'It's on the table.'
a What b Where c Who

- 29 Your wallet is _____ to the bag.
a in b on c next
- 30 _____ my bags?
a Where's b Where are c Are where
- 31 There _____ two sofas in the room.
a am b is c are
- 32 No, there _____ a chair in the bedroom.
a is b isn't c aren't
- 33 _____ there a café near here?
a Are b Is c Am
- 34 There are _____ sofas in my living room.
a a b one c two
- 35 The sofa is _____ the two windows.
a in b between c on
- 36 'Is there a cash machine near here?'
'Yes, _____.'
a there's b there is c there are
- 37 There _____ any money in my wallet.
a am not b isn't c aren't
- 38 There's a chair _____ the corner of the room.
a of b on c in
- 39 There are some pens _____ my desk.
a between b on c in front
- 40 The cinema is _____ the taxi rank and the bus station.
a between b under c in front
- 41 There's a cash machine _____ Regent Street.
a in b at c of
- 42 The museum is _____ of the train station.
a between b behind c in front
- 43 There's _____ apple in my bag.
a a b an c some
- 44 There are _____ biscuits in the cupboard.
a a b an c some
- 45 Sorry, there isn't _____ milk.
a a b some c any
- 46 _____ there any bread?
a Is b Are c Some
- 47 Is there _____ banana in the kitchen?
a a b an c some
- 48 There are _____ eggs.
a any b some c an
- 49 There's a _____ on the table.
a milk b biscuit c bread
- 50 There isn't any _____.
a sugar b apples c eggs

2 Progress test (Units 11 to 20)

- 1 My brother _____ got a new bicycle.
a have b has c is
- 2 We _____ got a cold.
a 've b 's c is
- 3 He _____ got brown eyes.
a 've b 's c has
- 4 They haven't got _____ children.
a a b some c any
- 5 She _____ got a car.
a hasn't b haven't c isn't
- 6 _____ you got a bicycle?
a Is b Has c Have
- 7 'Has Michael got dark hair?'
'No, he _____. He's got blond hair.'
a hasn't b haven't c hasn't got
- 8 I _____. 32.
a 've b 've got c 'm
- 9 That's my sister. _____ name is Ana.
a His b Her c Its
- 10 Have you got _____ camera?
a you b you're c your
- 11 My father is from Argentina but _____ parents are from Spain.
a his b her c their
- 12 _____ house is in the city centre.
a Are b Our c We
- 13 Paris is beautiful. It's famous for _____ art and museums.
a its b it's c it
- 14 _____ son's a teacher.
a Their b They're c They
- 15 _____ 've got a passport.
a I b He c My
- 16 _____ coat is Peter's.
a That b These c Those
- 17 _____ trainers are new.
a This b That c These
- 18 Is _____ your pen?
a this b that's c these
- 19 Which _____ is his car?
a one b ones c this
- 20 'Whose is it?' 'It's _____.
a Karen b Karen's c Karen's
- 21 'Whose is this camera?' 'It's _____.
a my b me c mine
- 22 Karen and Fred have got a blue car. Is this _____ car?
a there b they're c their
- 23 _____ English lessons are long.
a Our b Ours c Our's
- 24 That's _____ teacher.
a Lisas b Lisa's c Lisas'
- 25 Those books are _____.
a he's b he c his
- 26 We _____ in New York.
a live b lives c are live
- 27 She _____ work at five.
a finish b finishs c finishes

Jack _____ geography at university.
a study b studies c studys

I _____ homework after school.
a do b does c dos

They _____ a break at twelve o'clock.
a has b have c got

I'm from the USA _____ I live in Australia.
a and b but c

I _____ like pizza.
a no b don't c doesn't

He _____ the new girl in our class.
a like b likes c don't like
_____ sushi?
a You like b Does you like c Do you like

Does your friend _____ horror films?
a like b likes c liking

He likes her but she doesn't like _____.
a he b him c his

That music is great. I love _____.
a it b its c it's
_____ live next to a famous person.
a We b Our c Us

'Do you like this picture?'
'Yes, he's _____ favourite artist.'
a me b my c mine

40 I _____ early for school.
a always am b always c 'm always

41 They _____ TV.
a never watch b watch never c never watches

42 Rich and Jenny don't _____ see each other now.
a sometimes b never c often

43 '_____ go to the opera?' 'No, never.'
a Do you ever b Ever you c Do ever

44 'What _____ the capital of Australia?' 'Canberra.'
a is b do c does

45 _____ often do you go to the cinema?
a Why b How c When

46 What time _____ your mother start work?
a is b do c does

47 When _____ their birthdays?
a is b are c does

48 Who _____ you live with?
a are b do c does

49 _____ long is the Amazon River?
a What b How c Where

50 _____ one do you want?
a Which b When c How

3 Progress test (Units 21 to 30)

- 1 Can you —— French?
 a speaks b speak c to speak
- 2 I can't play the piano. —— you?
 a Can b Can't c Do can
- 3 Hilary can't sing but she —— play the guitar.
 a can b cans c does can
- 4 She can't sing —— .
 a not very well b very well c not well
- 5 Roger Federer —— play tennis very well.
 a can b cans c does can
- 6 —— she like tennis?
 a Can b Do c Does
- 7 They —— play football very well.
 a don't can b doesn't can c can't
- 8 —— play a musical instrument?
 a Does he can b Can he c Do he can
- 9 They —— speak any languages.
 a doesn't can b can't c don't can
- 10 'Can you run fast?' 'No, I —— .'
 a can't b don't c can
- 11 'Can I get —— a drink?' 'Yes, please.'
 a me b you c my
- 12 Can you pass —— the salt, please?
 a me b you c it
- 13 —— ask you a question?
 a Can I b Can you c Do I
- 14 'Can I have a drink?' 'Yes, —— .'
 a please b certainly c thanks very much
- 15 —— help me?
 a Can me b Can I c Can you
- 16 Can I —— your car?
 a borrow b lend c would
- 17 Hello, we —— a table for two, please.
 a like b 'd like c would
- 18 —— you like some sushi? 'Yes, please.'
 a Do b Would c can
- 19 'Would you like some wine?' 'No, thanks.
 like some water.'
 a I b I'd c Please
- 20 —— the menu now? 'Yes, please.'
 a Would you like b You like c Do you like
- 21 We'd like —— tea, please.
 a a b some c any
- 22 The light's red. —— !
 a Stop b Stop you c You stop
- 23 Come in. —— a seat.
 a Takes b Take c Take you
- 24 —— turn left here. Turn right.
 a Doesn't b No c Don't
- 25 I have two sisters. They are —— than me.
 a young b younger c more young
- 26 This one is —— than that one.
 a expensive b expensiver c more expensive
- 27 My English is —— than yours.
 a good b gooder c better

- 1 Is his brother older ____ me?
a as b any c than
- 1 A bicycle is ____ expensive than a car.
a more b less c as
- 1 That's a really ____ idea.
a bad b badder c worse
- Are you ____ in your new home?
a happyer b happier c hapier
- ! It's cold here. The weather is ____ in my country.
a hoter b hotter c hot
- ! You are ____ beautiful than ever!
a the b most c more
- ! Her new book is ____ interesting than the others.
I can't finish it.
a more b less c most
- i Cheetahs can run ____ than crocodiles.
a fast b faster c fastest
- i The tortoise lives the ____ of all animals.
a long b longer c longest
- ' Crocodiles are ____.
a dangerous b more dangerous c most dangerous
- ! The blue whale is ____ heaviest animal in
the world.
a Ø b a c the
- ! This was the ____ day ever!
a good b better c best
- 40 My Spanish is ____ than yours.
a worse b worst c the worse
- 41 This animal is the ____ heavy of the three.
a less b least c more
- 42 This table is bigger ____ mine at home.
a than b as c to
- 43 Normally, the nightclubs are ____ than this.
a crowded b more crowded c most crowded
- 44 Paris is ____ beautiful than I remember.
a most b much c more
- 45 I get up ____ than anyone else in my house.
a early b earlier c earliest
- 46 He drives very ____.
a slow b fastly c slowly
- 47 They are ____ married.
a happy b happily c happier
- 48 We'll be late. Drive ____!
a quick b more quickly c quicklier
- 49 How ____ do you play tennis? You can't be
as bad as me!
a bad b badly c worse
- 50 She can ____.
a well play b play good c play well

4 Progress test (Units 31 to 40)

- 1 Right now, I _____ cooking dinner for some friends.
a 'm b 's c 're
- 2 At the moment, they _____ visiting friends.
a 'm b 's c 're
- 3 She always _____ a bath in the morning.
a has b have c are having
- 4 _____ you _____ chess?
a Are ... play b do ... playing c Are ... playing
- 5 'Is she reading anything interesting?'
'No, she _____.'
a aren't b isn't c isn't reading
- 6 What _____ he _____ now?
a are ... doing b is ... doing c is ... do
- 7 'Are you busy?' 'No, I _____ TV.'
a watch b watching c 'm watching
- 8 Jane _____ in a hotel near the station this week.
a stay b stays c 's staying
- 9 Sorry I _____ late.
a 'm b 'm being c being
- 10 It _____ today. It's sunny.
a 's raining b isn't raining c doesn't rain
- 11 _____ rock or jazz?
a Do you like b Are you liking c Liking you
- 12 We can't come now. We _____ some work.
a do b 're doing c does
- 13 '_____ the children playing?' 'A computer game.'
a What are b Are c What do
- 14 Anne and Andrew _____ the new James Bond film this evening.
a are seeing b see c is seeing
- 15 'Can we meet on Saturday?'
'Sure. I _____ anything.'
a don't do b 'm not doing c not doing
- 16 _____ free next week?
a Are you doing b You c Are you
- 17 My son and his friends are _____ travel around New Zealand.
a go to b going c going to
- 18 Are you going _____ us tonight?
a to join b join c to joining
- 19 What _____ do about your exam results?
a are you going to b do you go to c do you
- 20 I have an arrangement with Bill. We _____ at six.
a are meet b 're meeting c 're going meet
- 21 'What are you going to do when you finish school?'
'I _____ engineering at university.'
a 'm studying b 'm going to study c study
- 22 I _____ really busy at work last week.
a was b were c am
- 23 They _____ at home yesterday.
a wasn't b weren't c don't were
- 24 _____ Sam and Matt at the party?
a Wasn't b Was c Were
- 25 'Was it your birthday last month?' 'Yes, it _____'
a was b were c am

- 26 Our anniversary _____ on 25th April.
 a was b were c weren't
- 27 '_____ your weekend?' 'Fine, thanks.'
 a What was b How was c Who was
- 28 When I was a child, _____ a park here.
 a there's b there was c there were
- 29 '_____ a busy road here?' 'No, it was quiet.'
 a Was there b Were there c Is there
- 30 'Were there any trees?' 'No, _____.
 a there wasn't b there weren't c there were
- 31 I think _____ some skyscrapers over here.
 a there's b there were c there was
- 32 '_____ you play the piano when you were a child?'
 'Yes, but not very well.'
 a Can b Could c Do
- 33 Mozart _____ play the organ as a child.
 a can b were c could
- 34 Sorry, I _____ hear you. Please say that again.
 a could b couldn't c can
- 35 _____ Beethoven a composer?
 a Could b Was c Can
- 36 How _____ Picasso paint?
 a well b far could c well could
- 37 _____ you run when you were young?
 a How far could b How c How far
- 38 'Could Helen Keller hear when she was a child?'
 'No, she _____.
 a could b couldn't c wasn't
- 39 She _____ sing very well.
 a could b coulds c could to
- 40 _____ your name, please?
 a Could I have b Could I having c Could have
- 41 Could you _____ that?
 a spelling b spell me c to spell
- 42 _____ you like to leave a message?
 a Do b Would c Could
- 43 Would you _____ help me?
 a like b like to c liking
- 44 _____ I speak to Ms Blumer, please?
 a Would b Could c Do
- 45 '_____ I email the document, please?' 'Sure.'
 a Would b Do c Can
- 46 Could you give _____ your number?
 a I b you c me
- 47 Can you tell _____ Rosanne called?
 a to him b him c you
- 48 Sorry, I _____ come to your party last week.
 a can't b couldn't c wasn't
- 49 '_____ some pizza?' 'Yes, please.'
 a Would you like b Do you like c Would you like to
- 50 'Would you like to come out tonight?' '_____.
 a No, I wouldn't.
 b Thanks, but I can't. I'm going to the cinema.
 c Yes, I'd like.

5 Progress test (Units 41 to 50)

- 1 My father _____ born in 1951.
a was b were c could
- 2 The students _____ this course last May.
a start b started c are starting
- 3 We _____ Maths for four years.
a study b studied c studied
- 4 The train _____ at the station.
a stoped b stopped c stop
- 5 Could you _____ the saxophone when you were a boy?
a play b played c are playing
- 6 Did they _____ to China last year?
a travel b travelled c travelling
- 7 My parents _____ in a small house near Lyon in France. They love it there!
a live b lived c is living
- 8 Sheila _____ from college with a degree in nursing in 2006.
a qualify b is qualifying c qualified
- 9 The team _____ to the hotel at midnight.
a get b got c getted
- 10 We _____ some sightseeing after the shops closed.
a do b does c did
- 11 At the restaurant, Norman _____ the local food but I _____ a burger.
a eat ... had b ate ... have c ate ... had
- 12 The girl _____ in the sun for hours and _____ red!
a sat ... went b sit ... go c sit ... went
- 13 I _____ see her at the lesson. Is she OK?
a don't b doesn't c didn't
- 14 Sorry, we _____ your letter. Can you send it again?
a didn't receive b didn't receive c no receive
- 15 Did you _____ school at sixteen or eighteen?
a leave b leaved c left
- 16 Did Ingrid have any children? Yes, she _____.
a was b did c didn't
- 17 '_____ you stay at the conference?'
'At the Ritz Hotel.'
a Where do b Where did c What did
- 18 How _____ the hotel?
a was b were c did
- 19 Who _____ with you?
a did you go b go c went
- 20 What _____ you do last night?
a do b were c did
- 21 'What time _____?' 'She left at nine.'
a she leave b did she leave c she left
- 22 I'm afraid there _____ time to see Liza.
a didn't b wasn't c did
- 23 Who _____ this? It's beautiful!
a make b did make c made
- 24 'Who _____ here?' 'Picasso did.'
a did live b lives c lived
- 25 Did you _____ the palace?
a like b likes c liked
- 26 You _____ switch off your mobile phone here.
a must b musts c must to
- 27 You _____ drive faster than 70 mph in the UK.
a don't must b mustn't c didn't must

- 28 The doctors says I _____ eat more fruit and fewer sweets.
 a must b mustn't c must to
- 29 All employees _____ to wash their hands.
 a must b have c has
- 30 Quick! We _____ be late for the start of the film.
 a don't must b mustn't c don't have to
- 31 You _____ wear a uniform. You can wear your normal clothes.
 a have to b don't have to c don't have
- 32 When a customer walks in, the waiter _____ to be polite.
 a has got b have c must
- 33 _____ to get up early?
 a Do you have b Have you c Must you
- 34 'Does she have to come too?' 'Yes, she _____.'
 a has b does c do
- 35 I like this dress. What do you think? _____ I buy it?
 a Would b Should c Could
- 36 The police _____ stop those cars.
 a should b shoulds c should to
- 37 You _____ do that. It's dangerous.
 a don't should b shouldn't c shouldn't to
- 38 I couldn't come to the party. I _____ study for my exam.
 a have to b had to c musted
- 39 We always _____ do what the teachers say at my school.
 a have to b had c musted
- 40 They _____ to study. There wasn't an exam that week.
 a hadn't b didn't have c have
- 41 _____ to ask Rita and Paul. They are so boring!
 a Did you have b Had you c Have
- 42 _____ we eat now? I'm very hungry.
 a Have b Must c Could
- 43 I _____ walk for six months when I was younger.
 a mustn't b shouldn't c couldn't
- 44 They _____ turn left on that road.
 a mustn't b hadn't c don't had
- 45 We _____ get a qualification. It isn't necessary for the job.
 a couldn't b mustn't c don't have to
- 46 You _____ call your mother. She would like to speak to you.
 a would b had to c should
- 47 '_____ I borrow my dad's car?' 'Yes, that's a good idea.'
 a Must b Should c Would
- 48 'Why _____ stop?' 'There's a red light.'
 a should you b could you c did you have to
- 49 Hello, Tourist Information. _____ I help you?
 a Can b Would c Must
- 50 My doctor's appointment is in five minutes. We _____ leave right now.
 a have b must c could

6 Progress test (Units 51 to 60)

- 1 I _____ the kitchen so you can cook dinner now.
 a 've cleaned b clean c 's cleaned
- 2 Marie _____ to meet her new boyfriend I think.
 a has went b has go c has gone
- 3 _____ you tidied your bedroom?
 a Have b Did c Are
- 4 Has the visitor arrived? Yes, he _____.
 a has b have c arrived
- 5 Good news! Tracey called. She's _____ passed her final test.
 a yet b already c just
- 6 No, I haven't decided _____.
 a just b already c yet
- 7 Don't worry about the ironing. Your mother's _____ done it. She was here this morning.
 a just b already c yet
- 8 Has the President made a decision ____?
 a just b already c yet
- 9 I'm afraid ____ yet.
 a they've arrived b they haven't arrived
 c have they arrived
- 10 The police _____ to check the building.
 a have just been b haven't just been
 c have been yet
- 11 The company has produced clocks _____ over fifty years.
 a for b since c yet
- 12 There haven't been any visitors _____ this morning.
 a for b since c yet
- 13 They've _____ got married. That's great news!
 a just b for c since
- 14 _____ has he been a doctor?
 a How much b How many c How long
- 15 They haven't won a game _____ 1985.
 a for b since c already
- 16 I haven't seen you ____ ages. You look well!
 a yet b for c since
- 17 _____ been to Russia?
 a How long b Have you ever c How
- 18 Have you _____ eaten tofu?
 a ever b never c yet
- 19 No, she's _____ failed an exam in her life.
 a ever b never c just
- 20 Marjorie has _____ to Scotland twice before.
 a been b gone c went
- 21 Where's Roger ____? I can't find him.
 a been b went c gone
- 22 My family _____ to Hawaii last month.
 a been b gone c went
- 23 I've _____ my tea. Could I have another cup, please?
 a drink b drank c drunk
- 24 _____ the show about whales on TV last night?
 a Have you seen b Have you ever seen
 c Did you see
- 25 'Did you have time for a break?' 'Yes, I ____.'
 a 've had b did c had
- 26 'Have you got a driving licence?' 'No, I ____.'
 a haven't b hadn't c didn't
- 27 They _____ walking home when they saw the accident.
 a was b wasn't c were

The moon _____ shining in the night sky.

- a was b were c have

_____ when they called?

- a What were you doing b What have you done
c What are you doing

_____ with the pen I lent you? Have you lost it?

- a What were you doing b What have you done
c What are you doing

I was sleeping _____ they arrived.

- a when b suddenly c just

It was getting colder and colder. _____ it started to snow.

- a When b Suddenly c While

The butler was cleaning the bedrooms when he a loud noise.

- a hear b heard c was hearing

He _____ on holiday since last week.

- a was b has been c was being

I _____ the house while Jake made the dinner.

- a tidied b 've tidied c was tidy

i While we _____ for the bus, we met some old friends.

- a were waiting b 've waited c waiting

7 So far we've seen the Eiffel Tower _____ the Louvre Museum.

- a but b and c while

8 Would you like a table by the window _____ by the door?

- a and b so c or

9 _____ we saw Big Ben, we went to Buckingham Palace.

- a While b So c Before

40 Can we meet _____ lunch? I don't have time to talk now.

- a after b when c but

41 I hated Maths at school _____ I loved Science.

- a so b before c but

42 _____ I was walking to work, it started to rain.

- a Before b Because c While

43 _____ you get to the station, give me a call.

- a Because b When c While

44 We took the bus _____ it was cheaper than the train.

- a because b but c so

45 The TV didn't work _____ I had to buy another one.

- a before b so c when

46 Jean _____ long hair but it's quite short now.

- a have b was having c used to have

47 Did you _____ walk to school?

- a used to b use to c use

48 My brothers _____ help in my father's shop.

- a used to b use to c use

49 The journey _____ to take very long.

- a didn't use b didn't used c no use

50 I _____ newspapers every morning when I was a teenager.

- a use to deliver b deliver c delivered

7 Progress test (Units 61 to 70)

- 1 _____ of the students were married – about 45%.
 a All b Most c Some
- 2 _____ students must register at reception.
 a All b All of c Some of
- 3 _____ the people here is under 16.
 a Some b Most c None of
- 4 Everyone passed – and _____ scored over 90% as well.
 a most of b most of you c none
- 5 _____ of them are studying Spanish but most are studying English.
 a None b All c Some
- 6 I think everyone has worked hard. _____ of them was lazy.
 a None b All c Some
- 7 There are lots of messages for you today. Everybody _____ to speak to you.
 a want b wants c have wanted
- 8 There's _____ nicer than Rome for a weekend break. It's wonderful.
 a everywhere b nowhere c anywhere
- 9 I think there's _____ at the door. Can you go and see who it is?
 a somebody b anybody c everybody
- 10 Was there _____ for me in the post today?
 a anything b everything c nothing
- 11 _____ has seen my bag. I don't know where I left it.
 a No one b Someone c Anyone
- 12 'Is there anything in the fridge?' 'No, _____.
 a anything b everything c nothing
- 13 'Do you like Bryan and Bob?' 'Yes, I like them.'
 a any b most c both
- 14 _____ apple pie or strawberry cake is fine for dessert.
 a Either b Neither c Any
- 15 _____ students are very happy. They passed all their exams.
 a Either b Neither c Both
- 16 'Is answer A or B correct?' _____ because the answer is C.
 a Either b Both c Neither
- 17 How _____ milk have we got?
 a many b much c any
- 18 How _____ cakes are there?
 a many b much c any
- 19 Is there _____ chocolate left or have we eaten it all?
 a many b much c any
- 20 Look in the cupboards. There are _____ tins in there.
 a much b a lot of c any
- 21 _____ children don't like vegetables but Billy does.
 a Much b A lot of c Any
- 22 How much _____ have we got?
 a people b coins c time
- 23 How many _____ work here?
 a people b employee c mans
- 24 Do you have _____ bread?
 a many b any c a lot

- 25 _____ information on the internet is incorrect.
 a Many b Any c A lot of
- 26 I'm going to be _____ famous film star when I grow up.
 a a b an c the
- 27 I'm sure Madonna lives in _____ enormous house.
 a a b an c the
- 28 My doctor says I should take _____ regular exercise.
 a a b Ø c the
- 29 There's _____ Australian actor in this film.
 a a b Ø c an
- 30 _____ United States of America has 50 states.
 a A b Ø c The
- 31 Leonid Stadnyk is the tallest man in _____ world.
 a a b Ø c the
- 32 How fast does _____ sun go round _____ moon.
 a a ... the b the ... the c the ... Ø
- 33 Would you like _____ menu?
 a a b Ø c an
- 34 Can you play _____ guitar?
 a a b Ø c the
- 35 _____ walk slowly but they live a long time.
 a Tortoises b The tortoise c A tortoise
- 36 'Can I borrow your pen?' 'Sorry, but this is _____ only one I've got.'
 a a b Ø c the
- 37 'Is there _____ train now?' 'No, the next one is at six o'clock.'
 a a b Ø c the
- 38 What time does _____ plane to Lima leave?
 a a b Ø c the
- 39 Would you like _____ window seat or _____ aisle seat?
 a a ... an b an ... a c an ... an
- 40 Can you open _____ door for me? I haven't got a key.
 a a b Ø c the
- 41 Who's _____ man over there with black hair? He's famous, isn't he?
 a Ø b the c a
- 42 My grandmother loves _____ cats. She's got twenty-one of them!
 a a b Ø c the
- 43 We travelled for six days on _____ foot and by camel.
 a a b Ø c the
- 44 We're studying the history of the Romans at _____.
 a Ø b the c a
- 45 Our teacher always gives us _____ difficult exercises for homework.
 a Ø b a c the
- 46 My cousin is _____ engineer.
 a a b Ø c an
- 47 These are some of _____ oldest books in the world.
 a a b Ø c the
- 48 I'm _____ Australian citizen.
 a an b Ø c a
- 49 My degree is in _____ French and German.
 a the b Ø c a
- 50 The gallery is in the centre of _____ Berlin.
 a a b Ø c the

8 Progress test (Units 71 to 80)

- 1 I think we _____ have cars that fly in the future.
 a will b wills c will to
- 2 How old will you _____ in the year 2050?
 a are b being c be
- 3 'Will you tell them?' 'Yes, I _____.
 a 'll b will tell c will
- 4 Sorry, but I _____ be there tonight. I have to work.
 a will b won't c 'll
- 5 What time _____?
 a will Toby arrive b Toby will arrive
 c will arrive Toby
- 6 I think I _____ have the steak.
 a 'll b 'm going c going to
- 7 When Mandy leaves school, she _____ train to be a hairdresser.
 a 'll b 's going to c 's
- 8 We _____ the Rolling Stones. I've got an extra ticket. Would you like to come too?
 a 'll see b 're going to see c see
- 9 '_____ when you get to Delhi?'
 'I don't know yet. I'm still planning the trip.'
 a What are you doing b What are you going to do
 c What you will do
- 10 'I didn't get the email you sent' 'Don't worry. I _____ it again.'
 a 'll send b 'm going to send c 'm sending
- 11 I _____ I'll have a cup of tea.
 a 'm think b 'm going c think
- 12 'Can I talk to Bryan?' 'Sorry, he _____ a meeting at the moment.'
 a 'll have b 's going to have c 's having
- 13 Which one _____ buy?
 a are you b will c are you going
- 14 What's Sammy _____ when he's older?
 a going to do b will do c going
- 15 'Do you want to have lunch with me?' 'Sorry but my parents for lunch today.'
 a meet b 'm meeting c 'll meet
- 16 It's possible Mike _____ me. Can you take a message, please?
 a will call b 's calling c calls
- 17 'Tell me about your holiday. What's your plan?' 'First, we _____ to Krakow ...'
 a 're going to fly b 'll fly c 're fly
- 18 No, I _____ help! I don't want to!
 a will b won't c 'm not
- 19 There's a problem today and the bus to London _____ to stop here.
 a won't b isn't go c isn't going
- 20 _____ you tell her or do you want me to?
 a Are b Is going to c Will
- 21 My birthday is _____ 19th June.
 a in b on c at
- 22 My wedding anniversary is _____ April.
 a in b on c at
- 23 The party starts _____ nine o'clock.
 a in b on c at
- 24 The last time I saw them was _____ 2004 I think.
 a in b on c at
- 25 Everyone is arriving _____ the same time.
 a in b on c at

- 3 All the flowers come up _____ the spring.
a in b on c at
- 7 Let's meet _____ the afternoon. How about three?
a in ... at b in ... in c at ... in
- 8 There's a farmer's market _____ the first Saturday of each month.
a in b on c at
- 9 Music was much better _____ the sixties.
a in b on c at
- 0 It's too hot to go outside _____ the middle of the day in summer.
a in b on c at
- 1 The film finishes _____ about ten thirty.
a in b on c at
- 2 We always visit our grandparents _____ Friday afternoons.
a in b on c at
- 3 'Where are the children?' 'I think they're _____ the bedroom.'
a in b on c at
- 4 There's someone _____ the front door.
a in b on c at
- 5 Your car keys are _____ the table.
a in b on c at
- 6 Turn right and the police station is _____ the left.
a in b on c at
- 7 There's a bag _____ the table. Is it yours?
a between b under c at
- 8 The sauna is _____ to the solarium.
a in front b behind c next
- 39 Go straight ahead and the swimming pool is _____ of the restaurant.
a in front b behind c opposite
- 40 He's the person _____ does the photocopying.
a which b who c he
- 41 Rachel is the teacher _____ likes to give tests.
a which b that c she
- 42 'What do you call the machine _____ boils water?'
'A kettle.'
a which b who c it
- 43 This is the cable _____ connects the computer to the printer.
a that b who c where
- 44 This is the DVD _____ last week.
a who we watched b that we watched
c which watched
- 45 She's the woman _____ at the local hospital.
a works b who works c which works
- 46 Do you like the book _____ you?
a who I gave b I gave c gave
- 47 Do you want to see the photos _____ on holiday?
a when we took b who we took c that we took
- 48 'Who is the person _____ the Harry Potter books?'
'J.K. Rowling.'
a which wrote b that wrote c wrote
- 49 I'm studying the same course _____ last year.
a who you did b you did c which
- 50 Who is the man _____ that awful yellow car?
a that owns b owns c which owns

9 Progress test (Units 81 to 90)

- 1 When you _____ this button, it switches the TV on.
 a press b will press c pressed
- 2 If anyone _____, please tell them I'm out.
 a ask b asks c will ask
- 3 If the alarm goes off, _____ the building.
 a please leave b left c you leave
- 4 If you heat water _____ hot.
 a , it gets b it gets c it get
- 5 The engine _____ you press this switch.
 a starts, if b starts if c start,
- 6 Don't cross the road _____ the policeman says you can.
 a unless b if c when
- 7 _____ hear the fire alarm, walk to the nearest exit.
 a Unless you b You c If you
- 8 _____ the police unless it's a real emergency.
 a Call b When you call c Don't call
- 9 If you drive faster, we _____ there by this evening.
 a get b 'll get c 're getting
- 10 _____ we walk this way, will we reach the top of the mountain?
 a If b When c While
- 11 Unless we book it now, there _____ any tickets left for the concert.
 a will be b won't be c are
- 12 If I have any free time this afternoon, _____ you.
 a I help b I'll help c help
- 13 _____ at the lights if they turn red.
 a Stop b Will stop c Stops
- 14 When they _____ this song, I have to dance!
 a sing b 'll sing c 're going to sing
- 15 They'll meet us at the Blue Moon café _____ you know a better place.
 a if b when c unless
- 16 I'm sure if the bus is late, they _____ take a taxi.
 a 'll b might c should
- 17 When the teacher asks you a question, you _____ answer.
 a could b can c have to
- 18 _____ you pick him up if he calls? I'm too busy to do it I'm afraid.
 a Could b Must c Should
- 19 We _____ miss the film if we don't leave now. Let's go!
 a have to b might c should
- 20 If they want to see the Picasso exhibition, they _____ need to reserve tickets in advance. I'm not sure.
 a can b must c might
- 21 I think you _____ use a credit card or cash when you pay for the tickets. It doesn't matter.
 a will b can c must
- 22 When the alarm starts, everyone _____ walk outside and wait in the car park.
 a must b can c could
- 23 When you visit my country, you _____ bring warm clothing. It gets very cold at night.
 a might b could c should
- 24 If you don't have any money, I _____ lend you some. It isn't a problem for me.
 a have to b can c must

If you buy a lottery ticket, you ____ win a million!

- a could b have to c won't

I was really ____ when Gill told me she was leaving.

- a surprised b surprising

They're late again. How ____!

- a annoyed b annoying

This part of the film is really ____ . I've seen it six times.

- a excited b exciting

Look out! Here comes the ____ part with Dracula.

- a frightened b frightening

'Do you find this kind of book ____ ?'

'No, not very.'

- a interested b interesting

Don't be ____ . We'll be fine.

- a worried b worrying

He looks really ____ . It's time for his bed.

- a tired b tiring

Why do you ____ so sad? What's the problem?

- a look b smell c taste

Wow! This cake ____ delicious.

- a feels b tastes c sounds

'How does it ____ ?' 'Very soft.'

- a smell b feel c taste

I love jazz but rock ____ awful.

- a looks b feels c sounds

Your new girlfriend looks very ____ .

- a beauty b beautiful c beautifully

This soup ____ hot and spicy. What's in it?

- a smells b feels c tastes

39 Try this perfume. It ____ really fresh.

- a smells b feels c tastes

40 I think you should buy that ____ .

- a beautiful old table b old table beautiful
c old beautiful table

41 There's a ____ bowl in the kitchen. Can you get it for me?

- a wooden small round b round small wooden
c small round wooden

42 Whose is that ____ ball in the garden?

- a huge green plastic b green plastic huge
c plastic green huge

43 My dream car is a(n) ____ sports car. What about you?

- a stylish Italian red b Italian stylish red
c stylish red Italian

44 Are you good ____ painting?

- a about b by c at

45 I'm bored ____ this programme. Let's turn the TV off.

- a about b with c at

46 Are people in this country very ____ from people in yours?

- a different b interested c excited

47 We are very excited ____ our holiday.

- a about b from c with

48 Who is Jennifer married ____ now?

- a by b with c to

49 They aren't very keen ____ basketball. They prefer tennis.

- a of b at c on

50 Don't ask them to do it. They're really ____ at cleaning.

- a annoyed b worried c bad

10 Progress test (Units 91 to 100)

- 1 Have you decided _____ your job?
 a leave b to leave c leaving
- 2 We plan _____ at about six.
 a arrive b to arrive c arriving
- 3 They didn't _____ to pay that much.
 a agree b to agree c agreeing
- 4 Would you like _____ something this weekend?
 a do b to do c doing
- 5 I really like _____ golf at the weekends.
 a play b to c playing
- 6 Why are you worried about _____ on a plane?
 a go b to go c going
- 7 _____ at night can be dangerous.
 a Drive b You drive c Driving
- 8 Matthew hopes _____ his studies at Oxford University.
 a continue b to continue c continuing
- 9 Tell _____ to borrow mine.
 a she b her c to her
- 10 My uncle is really good at _____ sushi.
 a make b to make c making
- 11 Is it true that _____ too much coffee is bad for you?
 a drink b to drink c drinking
- 12 Do you mind _____ later?
 a eat b to eat c eating
- 13 I often go _____ with friends.
 a sunbathe b to sunbathe c sunbathing
- 14 Rashish would like _____ too. Is there space in the car?
 a come b to come c coming
- 15 What do you enjoy _____ in your free time?
 a do b to do c doing
- 16 I plan _____ smoking on 1st January.
 a give up b to give up c giving up
- 17 They want _____ at eight but I think that's too early.
 a start b to start c starting
- 18 They've stopped _____ and have agreed to work together.
 a argue b to argue c arguing
- 19 We were hungry so we stopped _____ something to eat.
 a have b to have c having
- 20 They won't mind _____ late to finish this project.
 a work b to work c working
- 21 We stopped _____ junk food months ago. Why don't you stop too?
 a eat b to eat c eating
- 22 Don't stop _____ to me, please. I love _____ your letters.
 a writing ... receiving b to write ... to receive
 c to write ... receiving
- 23 We've agreed _____ for lunch at one o'clock.
 a stop b to stop c stopping
- 24 _____ her to send this, please.
 a Tell b Say c Want
- 25 My manager _____ you to send this, please.
 a says b wants c tells

- 26 We need _____ for the hotel.
 a pay b to pay c paying
- 27 I _____ to have the steak and chips, please.
 a like b liking c 'd like
- 28 What time do we need _____?
 a leave b to leave c leaving
- 29 I want _____ me when you get there.
 a you to call b that you to call c you call
- 30 We'd like _____ help today.
 a everyone b everyone to c to everyone
- 31 Lydia is visiting Nepal _____ Mount Everest.
 a the b see c to see
- 32 I'm calling you _____ arrange a meeting.
 a to b so c for
- 33 We need to stop at the supermarket _____ some vegetables.
 a buy b buying c to buy
- 34 The manager wants us to work late to _____ the shop.
 a clean b cleaning c for clean
- 35 Please _____ your hands before eating.
 a wash b washes c are washed
- 36 Your salary _____ into your bank account at the end of every month.
 a pay b is paid c are paid
- 37 The steak _____ with potatoes and salad.
 a serves b is served c is serving
- 38 All our coffee _____ in Ethiopia.
 a grow b is grown c to grow
- 39 The Japanese _____ really good-quality cars.
 a produce b are produced c is produced
- 40 How often _____?
 a are these rooms cleaned b clean these rooms
 c do these rooms cleaned
- 41 More people _____ Urdu than English.
 a speak b is spoken c are spoken
- 42 A new type of plant _____ in the Amazon jungle last week.
 a was discovered b discovered c is discovered
- 43 Chocolate _____ first brought to Europe hundreds of years ago.
 a is b was c were
- 44 *The Lord of the Rings* _____ by J.R.R. Tolkien between 1937 and 1949.
 a wrote b writes c was written
- 45 The President was shot _____ a man on top of a building.
 a by b with c at
- 46 I _____ potatoes in my garden every year.
 a are grown b was grown c grow
- 47 Why _____ about this problem?
 a I wasn't told b wasn't I told c didn't I tell
- 48 I love this song. Who _____ it?
 a sings b is sung c was sing
- 49 All our pasta _____ by hand.
 a makes b is made c made
- 50 Why _____ that? It wasn't very nice.
 a did you say b was it said c said you

Appendix 1 Punctuation

Capital

Use a capital letter for ...

- the first letter of a sentence.
- the names of people and places: *Wolfgang Amadeus Mozart, Helen Keller, Jackie Chan, Madrid, New York, Hong Kong*.
- the names of countries, nationalities and languages: *China/Chinese, France/French, Australia/Australian, English*.
- days of the week and months of the year (but not seasons): *Monday, Thursday, April, September*.
- school subjects: *English, Maths, Biology*.
- people's titles: *Mr Brown, Doctor Smith, President Obama*.
- the pronoun *I*: *Martha and I live in Simpson Street*.

End of a sentence

Normally, we end a sentence with a full stop:

I live in London.

Question mark

- Put ? at the end of a question (not a full stop):
Where do you live?

Commas

Use commas for ...

- lists of nouns: *I bought a pen, a book and a bag*.
- lists of adjectives: *It's an old, black, electric lamp*.
- conditional sentences when the *if*-clause comes first: *If you leave now, you'll catch the last train*.

Apostrophe '

Use an apostrophe for ...

- contracted verbs forms. Here are some common examples:

Verb to be

I'm = I am
he's = he is
they're = they are
isn't = is not
aren't = are not

Verb to have

I've = I have
she's = she has
we've = we have
hasn't = has not
haven't = have not

Auxiliary verb to do

don't = do not
doesn't = does not
didn't = did not

would like

I'd like = I would like
I wouldn't like = I would not like

Negative modals

won't = will not
wouldn't = would not
mustn't = must not
can't = cannot
couldn't = could not
shouldn't = should not

- for possessive 's (see Unit 14):
Karen's mobile. My brother's T shirt.

Appendix 2 Spelling rules

Plural nouns

- Add *-s* to most nouns.

dog → dogs
desk → desks
house → houses

- Add *-es* to nouns ending in *-ch*, *-o*, *-s*, *-ss*, *-sh*, and *-x*.

sandwich → sandwiches class → classes
tomato → tomatoes dish → dishes
bus → buses box → boxes

- Change nouns ending in *-y* (after a consonant) to *-i*.

country → countries
story → stories
city → cities

TIP Don't change the *-y* to *-i* after a vowel:
holidays, keys

- Some nouns are irregular. For example:

man → men
child → children
woman → women
person → people

Present simple third person (*he/she/it*) verbs

- Add *-s* to most verbs in the present simple third person form.

live → lives
start → starts
work → works

- Add *-es* to verbs ending in *-ch*, *-o*, *-s*, *-ss*, *-sh* and *-x*.

watch → watches finish → finishes
go → goes relax → relaxes
pass → passes

- Change verbs ending in *-y* (after a consonant) to *-i*.

study → studies
fly → flies

TIP Don't change the *-y* to *-i* after a vowel: *plays, buys*

- A few verbs have irregular forms.

have → has
be → is

Comparative and superlative adjectives

- Add *-er* to short adjectives to form the comparative.
Add *-est* to short adjectives to form the superlative.

young → younger → youngest
cheap → cheaper → cheapest

TIP When the adjective ends in *-e*, add *-r/-st*:
large → larger/largest

- Change adjectives ending in *-y* (after a consonant) to *-i*.

happy → happier → happiest
angry → angrier → angriest

- Double the final consonant on some adjectives ending with a vowel and a consonant.

hot → hotter → hottest
big → bigger → biggest

TIP Don't double the consonant with adjectives ending in *-w* or *-y*: *slow → slower/slowest*.

Adverbs ending in *-ly*

- You often add *-ly* to an adjective to form an adverb.

quick → quickly
slow → slowly

- Note these differences:

Adjectives ending in *-l*: *beautiful* → *beautifully*
Adjectives ending in *-y*: *happy* → *happily*
Adjectives ending in *-ble*: *horrible* → *horribly*

Past simple regular verbs (-ed endings)

- Add *-ed* to verbs ending in a consonant.

watch → watched

visit → visited

- Add *-d* to verbs ending in *-e*.

dance → danced

arrive → arrived

- Double the final consonant on some verbs ending with a vowel and a consonant.

stop → stopped

jog → jogged

Present participles (-ing endings)

- With verbs ending in *-e*, delete the *-e* before adding *-ing*.

dance → dancing

live → living

- Double the final consonant on some verbs ending with a vowel and a consonant.

stop → stopping

run → running

swim → swimming

jog → jogging

Check your spelling!

1 Write the plural of these words.

1 cat cats

2 address

3 car

4 potato

5 apple

6 dress

7 baby

8 person

2 Write the third person form of these verbs.

1 go goes

2 drive

3 buy

4 try

5 push

6 marry

7 teach

8 play

3 Correct the spelling mistake in each sentence.

1 She stoped at the traffic lights.
stoped

2 It's hoter inside than out.

3 I'm the happyest person in the world!

4 Where are you moveing to?

5 They love swiming.

6 We danceed all night long.

7 It's the biggest tower in London.

8 They're planing their holidays.

Appendix 3 Irregular verbs

infinitive	past simple	past participle	infinitive	past simple	past participle
be	was/were	been	learn	learnt	learnt
become	became	become	leave	left	left
begin	began	begun	lend	lent	lent
bite	bit	bitten	lose	lost	lost
blow	blew	blown	make	made	made
break	broke	broken	mean	meant	meant
bring	brought	brought	meet	met	met
build	built	built	pay	paid	paid
burn	burnt	burnt	put	put	put
buy	bought	bought	read /ri:d/	read /red/	read /red/
catch	caught	caught	ride	rode	ridden
choose	chose	chosen	ring	rang	rung
come	came	come	rise	rose	risen
cost	cost	cost	run	ran	run
do	did	done	say	said	said
draw	drew	drawn	see	saw	seen
drink	drank	drunk	sell	sold	sold
drive	drove	driven	send	sent	sent
eat	ate	eaten	shine	shone	shone
fall	fell	fallen	show	Showed	shown
feel	felt	felt	shut	shut	shut
fight	fought	fought	sing	sang	sung
find	found	found	sit	sat	sat
fly	flew	flown	sleep	slept	slept
forget	forgot	forgotten	speak	spoke	spoken
get	got	got	spend	spent	spent
give	gave	given	stand	stood	stood
go	went	gone/been	steal	stole	stolen
grow	grew	grown	swim	swam	swum
hang	hung	hung	take	took	taken
have	had	had	teach	taught	taught
hear	heard	heard	tear	tore	torn
hide	hid	hidden	tell	told	told
hit	hit	hit	think	thought	thought
hold	held	held	throw	threw	thrown
hurt	hurt	hurt	wear	wore	worn
keep	kept	kept	win	won	won
know	knew	known	write	wrote	written

Appendix 4 Summary of main verb forms

Summary of present tenses

Present simple

I/You/We/They **live** in Ireland.
He/She/It **lives** Ireland.

We **don't live** in Ireland.
She **doesn't live** in Ireland.

Where **do** they **live**?
Where **does** he **live**?

Present continuous

I'm **playing** basketball at the moment.
You/We/They're **playing** basketball at the moment.
He/She's **playing** basketball at the moment.

I'm **not playing** basketball at the moment.
He **isn't playing** basketball at the moment.
We **aren't playing** basketball at the moment.

What **are** you **doing**?
Where **is** she **playing** basketball?

Present perfect

I/You/We/They've **gone** to the cinema.
He/She's **gone** to the cinema.

We **haven't gone** to the cinema.
He **hasn't gone** to the cinema.

Where **have** they **gone**?
Where **has** she **gone**?

Summary of past tenses

Past simple

I/You/He/She/It/We/They **finished** last night.
I/You/He/She/It/We/They **didn't finish** last night.
Did I/You/He/She/It/We/They **finish** last night?

Past continuous

I/He/She/It **was waiting** for a bus.
You/We/They **were waiting** for a bus.

I **wasn't waiting** for a bus.
We **weren't waiting** for a bus.

Was he **waiting** for a bus?
Were you **waiting** for a bus?

Summary of future forms

I'll **see** you tonight.
I'm **going to** see her tonight.
We're **seeing** each other this evening.

Check your tenses!

1 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs.

- 1 She always (travel) by bicycle.
- 2 Where do you (work)?
- 3 Sorry, we (not open) the shop on Mondays.
- 4 Right now they (do) their homework.
- 5 My family (not eat) anything with meat in at the moment.
- 6 Who (sing) in the shower? It's really noisy!
- 7 Where (they live) nowadays?
- 8 Matilda (go) out but I can give her a message.
- 9 I (not be) to the cinema in ages!
- 10 We (finish) cleaning the car. What's next?
- 11 Mary and Dick (play) tennis yesterday.
- 12 They (win) the lottery last year.
- 13 When (you move) to Scotland? Was it a long time ago?
- 14 He (watch) TV when we arrived.
- 15 What (you do) when the teacher arrived?

Summary of modal verbs

Use *will* for ...

- talking about the future (see Unit 71)

I'll be in the café at six.

She won't be here tonight.

- predictions (see Unit 71)

I think she'll pass her exams.

I'm sure they'll get married.

- offers, promises and requests (see Unit 72)

I'll pick you up.

I'll be there in ten minutes.

- instant decisions (see Unit 73)

I think I'll have fish.

Don't worry. I'll go and get her.

Use *can* for ...

- ability (see Unit 21)

I can speak French.

I can't play the piano.

- offers and requests (see Unit 22)

Can I help you?

Can I have a drink?

would

- Use *would like* for requests and offers (see Unit 23)

I'd like some water.

Would you like a table for two?

- Use *would you like ...* for requests and offers (see Unit 39)

Would you like to speak to someone?

Would you like something to drink?

Use *could* for ...

- for past ability (see Unit 38)

Mozart could play the organ.

How well could she see?

- polite requests (see Unit 39)

Could I speak to Shelby, please?

Could you spell that?

Use *must* for obligation (see Unit 46 and 47)

You must be home by ten-thirty.

You mustn't be late.

Use *should* for advice (see Unit 48)

You should buy that dress.

He shouldn't go with them.

Check your tenses!

2 Choose the correct modal verbs.

- 1 I'm afraid I *won't / mustn't* be at the party tonight. I'm busy at work.
- 2 My best friend *can / could* play the piano really well. He's a musician.
- 3 We *'ll / 'd* like a room on the south side of the hotel, please.
- 4 You *can / should* take the medicine twice a day. Don't forget!
- 5 You *wouldn't / mustn't* take photographs at passport control. It's against the rules.
- 6 *Can / Would* you like something to eat?
- 7 You *shouldn't / couldn't* stay up late. There's school tomorrow.
- 8 How well *can / could* you play football when you were young?

Answer key (and tapescript)

Unit 1

1 1 c 2 e 3 d 4 a 5 b

- 2 1 I'm from Brazil.
2 I'm from the USA.
3 I'm from Italy.
- 4 We're from Japan.
5 I'm from Egypt.
6 We're from Russia.

- 3 1 They're from Spain.
2 We're married.
3 I'm from Russia.
4 He's single.
5 You're twenty-one.
- 6 I'm single.
7 They're from Japan.
8 She's from the UK.
9 We're from Poland.
10 You're from China.

- 4 1 Hi. I'm Andrea. I'm from Poland. I'm twenty-one and I'm single.
2 Hi. I'm Bruno. I'm from Germany. I'm thirty-two and I'm married.
3 Hi. I'm Marisol. I'm from Mexico. I'm eighteen and I'm single.

5 Students' own answers.

Unit 2

1 1 a 2 an 3 Ø 4 a 5 Ø 6 a 7 an 8 a 9 a 10 an
11 Ø 12 an

- 2 1 She isn't a nurse.
2 I'm not a teacher.
3 You aren't an artist.
4 They aren't Russian.
5 We aren't engineers.
6 She isn't Chinese.
7 He isn't married.
8 I'm not twenty-one.
9 She isn't a musician.
10 They aren't from Peru.
11 We aren't students.
12 She isn't twenty-nine.

- 3 1 The Taj Mahal isn't in Pakistan. It's in India.
2 The Statue of Liberty isn't in Canada. It's in the USA.
3 Machu Picchu isn't in Mexico. It's in Peru.
4 The Eiffel Tower isn't in Italy. It's in France.
5 The Sydney Opera House isn't in the UK. It's in Australia.

Unit 3

1 1 Are 2 Is 3 Are 4 Is 5 Is 6 Are 7 Is 8 Are
9 Are 10 Is

- 2 1 it isn't 2 I am 3 she isn't 4 I'm not 5 we are
6 she is 7 they aren't 8 it is 9 they are 10 he isn't

3 Students' own answers.

- 4 1 A: Are you Italian? B: No, I'm not. I'm Spanish.
2 A: Is he Japanese? B: Yes, he is.
3 A: Is she Brazilian? B: Yes, she is.
4 A: Is he Polish? B: No, he isn't. He's Russian.
5 A: Are they doctors? B: No, they aren't. They're teachers.
6 A: Are they married? B: Yes, they are.
7 A: Are you and Jack American? B: No, we aren't. We're British.
8 A: Is it six o'clock? B: No, it isn't. It's half past five.
9 A: Is she single? B: No, she isn't. She's married.
10 A: Is he a musician? B: No, he isn't. He's an engineer.

Unit 4

- 1 1 He's short. 5 They're rich.
2 She's old. 6 They're small.
3 It's big. 7 I'm young.
4 He's tall. 8 We're poor.

2 1 a 2 Ø 3 a 4 Ø 5 Ø 6 a 7 Ø 8 a 9 Ø 10 an
11 a 12 Ø

- 3 1 I'm hungry. 4 I'm tired.
2 I'm cold. 5 I'm thirsty.
3 I'm hot.

- 4 1 John isn't happy. He's unhappy.
2 Sue isn't angry. She's happy.
3 Lee isn't unhappy. He's angry.

Unit 5

- 1 1 It's an expensive house.
2 They're fast cars.
3 It's a cheap car.
4 It's a big book.
5 It's a slow car.
6 They're expensive books.
7 They're small houses.
8 It's a big house.

2 1? 2. 3? 4. 5? 6. 7. 8?

- 3** 1 He's a Russian doctor.
2 She's a British teacher.
3 We're Spanish engineers.
4 I'm an Italian musician.
5 They're Japanese students.
6 She's a Polish engineer.
7 He's a Brazilian artist.
8 They're American nurses.

- 4** 1 A: Is Madonna from the USA? B: Yes, she is.
2 A: Is Tom Cruise tall? B: No, he isn't.
3 A: Is Bill Gates rich? B: Yes, he is.
4 A: Is Julia Roberts a musician? B: No, she isn't.
5 A: Are the Rolling Stones American? B: No, they aren't.
6 A: Are Ferraris expensive? B: Yes, they are.

- 5** 1 Tom Cruise isn't tall.
2 Bill Gates isn't poor.
3 The Rolling Stones aren't American.
4 Madonna isn't from Italy.
5 Ferraris aren't cheap.
6 Julia Roberts isn't a musician.

- 6** 1 He isn't 2 I am 3 She's 4 They're 5 We aren't
6 It is not 7 You're

- 7** 1 artist 2 doctor 3 engineer 4 musician
5 teacher 6 student

- 8** 1 It's quarter to eight.
2 It's ten o'clock.
3 It's half past four.
4 It's five to eight.
5 It's twenty-five past eleven.
6 It's quarter past three.

- 9** 1 short 2 poor 3 young 4 small 5 slow 6 cheap
7 single 8 cold

10 1 T 2 F 3 F 4 T 5 T 6 F

Tapescript 1.06

- 1 Hi. I'm Andrea. I'm from Poland. I'm twenty-one and I'm single.
2 Hi. I'm Bruno. I'm from Germany. I'm thirty-two and I'm married.
3 Hi. I'm Marisol. I'm from Mexico. I'm eighteen and I'm single.

Unit 6

- 1** 1 Where's the phone?
2 Where's the table?
3 Where are the keys?
4 Where's the camera?
5 Where are the pens?
6 Where's the wallet?
7 Where's the bag?
8 Where are the books?

- 2** 1 on 2 ✓ 3 in 4 under 5 ✓ 6 on

- 3** 1 It's under 2 They're in 3 It's under 4 It's next to
5 They're on 6 They're next to 7 It's next to
8 It's on 9 They're under 10 It's in

Unit 7

- 1** 1 There's 2 There are 3 There's 4 There's
5 There's 6 There are

- 2** 1 B 2 A 3 B 4 A 5 B 6 A 7 B 8 A 9 B 10 A
11 B 12 A 13 A 14 B

- 3** 1 There are two windows in the room.
2 There's a big sofa in the middle of the room.
3 There are two chairs in front of the windows.
4 There's a desk in the corner of the room.
5 There's a computer on the desk.
6 There's a television in front of the sofa.

Unit 8

- 1** Conversation 1: 2, 4, 5, 3, 1, 6
Conversation 2: 2, 5, 4, 1, 6, 3

- 2** 1 Yes, there is. It's on the first floor.
2 No, there isn't.
3 Yes, there is. It's on the second floor.
4 Yes, there is. It's on the third floor.
5 No, there isn't.
6 It's on the ground floor.

- 3** 1 Is there a cinema near here?
2 Is there a café near here?
3 Is there a taxi rank near here?
4 Is there a swimming pool near here?
5 Is there a restaurant near here?
6 Is there a cash machine near here?

- 4** Students' own answers.

Answer key (and tapescript)

Unit 9

- 1 1 milk 2 coffee 3 eggs 4 apples 5 bread
6 banana 7 sugar 8 butter 9 biscuits
- 2 1 e 2 g 3 d 4 c 5 f 6 b 7 a
- 3 1 any 2 an 3 any 4 some 5 a 6 any 7 some
- 4 1 Is there any coffee? Yes, there is.
2 Are there any biscuits? No, there aren't.
3 Is there any sugar? No, there isn't.
4 Are there any eggs? Yes, there are.

- 7 1 F 2 F 3 T 4 T 5 F 6 T 7 T 8 F 9 T 10 T
- 8 1 biscuits 2 sugar 3 shower 4 door 5 table
6 window 7 reception
- 9 1 T 2 F 3 T 4 T 5 F

Tapescript 1.12

There's some milk and some coffee in the fridge and there are some eggs. There are some apples under the table. There's some bread on the table and there's a banana. There's some sugar on the shelf. There isn't any butter and there aren't any biscuits.

Unit 10

- 1 1 There are 2 There's a 3 There are 4 There's a
5 There's a 6 There isn't a

	food	drink
countable	apples bananas biscuits eggs	
uncountable	butter bread sugar	coffee milk

- 3 1 a, c 2 a 3 b 4 a, c 5 a, c 6 a, b 7 a 8 a
9 b, c 10 c
- 4 1 are 2 any 3 aren't 4 some 5 on 6 in 7're
- 5 1 There isn't ... 2 Where are ...? 3 Are there ...?
4 There's ... 5 There aren't ... 6 Where's ...?
7 Is there ...? 8 There are ...

Tapescript 1.11

- 1 There isn't any milk.
2 Where are the keys?
3 Are there any apples in the kitchen?
4 There's some butter on the table.
5 There aren't any eggs.
6 Where's the milk?
7 Is there any coffee in the kitchen?
8 There are some biscuits on the table.

Unit 11

- 1 1 I've got 2 She's got 3 We haven't got 4 He's got
5 They've got 6 He hasn't got
- 2 1 Joe's got a nice house.
2 Annika and Ray haven't got a car.
3 Have you got a bike?
4 Has Catherine got a sister?
5 We haven't got any children.
6 I haven't got a cold. I've got the flu.
- 3 1 Have 2 got 3 they've got 4 I've got 5 Have 6 got
7 I haven't 8 Has 9 got 10 she's got 11 Has she got
- 4 1 is 2's 3's got 4's got 5's 6's got
- 5 1 Johnny Depp is an actor.
2 He's 1m 79.
3 He's got brown hair and brown eyes.
4 He's got thirteen tattoos.
5 He's from the USA.
6 He's got a brother and two sisters.

Unit 12

- 1 1 I've got my keys.
2 You haven't got your laptop.
3 We've got our passports.
4 He hasn't got his glasses.
5 She's got her camera.
6 We haven't got our credit cards.
7 I've got my mobile.
8 They've got their tickets.

- 6 1 desk 2 sofa 3 bed 4 television 5 table 6 shower
7 bath 8 door 9 window 10 chair

- 2** 1 My camera's fantastic!
2 Her new motorbike is great!
3 His Dell laptop is brilliant!
4 Our old car is terrible!
5 Their old television is awful!

- 3** 1 her 2 His 3 his 4 Her 5 her 6 His 7 Their
8 their 9 Its

- 4** 1 her 2 Our 3 She 4 I 5 your 6 His 7 its
8 Their 9 my 10 We 11 His 12 My

- 5** Students' own answers.

Unit 13

- 1** 1 Is this your watch?
2 Are these your sunglasses?
3 Is this your camera?
4 Is that your bike?
5 Are these your books?
6 Is that your phone?

- 2** 1 These trainers are old.
2 This shirt is big.
3 These trousers are small.
4 These shoes are old.
5 That coat is big.
6 This hat is small.

- 3** 1 A: That's my phone. B: Which one?
A: The black one.
2 A: That's my bike. B: Which one?
A: The blue one.
3 A: Those are my sunglasses. B: Which ones?
A: The yellow ones.

- 4** 1 that 2 Which 3 one 4 one 5 That

Unit 14

- 1** 1 A: Whose mobile is this? B: I think it's Harry's.
2 A: Whose books are these? B: I think they're Lisa's.
3 A: Whose sunglasses are these? B: I think they're Harry's.
4 A: Whose camera is this? B: I think it's Tim's.
5 A: Whose laptop is this? B: I think it's Lisa's.
6 A: Whose trainers are these? B: I think they're Tim's.

- 2** 1 It's his. 2 They're his. 3 They're hers. 4 It's hers.
5 They're his. 6 It's his.

- 3** 1 This is mine and that is yours.
2 Those are theirs and these are ours.
3 This is hers and that is yours.
4 This is mine and that's his.

- 4** 1 P, has 2 is, is 3 P, P 4 has, is 5 is, is 5 P, is

Unit 15

- 1** 1 I've got blue eyes.
2 She hasn't got a motorbike.
3 Have you got a cold?
4 Yes, I have.
5 No, he hasn't.
6 We've got two children.
7 He's got a new laptop.
8 Has she got dark hair?

- 2** 1 Serena's 2 Sofia's 3 Bob's 4 Clintons'
5 George's 6 Jane's 7 Judy's 8 Elizabeth's

- 3** 1 my 2 its 3 her 4 their 5 your 6 Its 7 Our 8 her
4 1 They're his. 2 It's hers. 3 It's mine.
4 They're his. 5 It's theirs. 6 It's hers.
7 They're yours. 8 They're ours.

- 5** 1 Which one is Mike's? The black one.
2 Which ones are Ellen's? The yellow ones.
3 Which one is Lauren's? The red one.
4 Which ones are Paul's? The blue ones.

- 6** 1 /z/ 2 /s/ 3 /z/ 4 /s/ 5 /s/ 6 /z/

- 7** boyfriend – girlfriend
brother – sister
father – mother
husband – wife
son – daughter

- 8** 1 passport 2 credit card 3 sunglasses 4 laptop
5 camera 6 watch

- 9** 1 T 2 F 3 T 4 F 5 F 6 T 7 F 8 T

- 10** Harry: mobile, sunglasses
Lisa: books, laptop
Tim: camera, trainers
(see next page for tapescript)

Answer key (and tapescript)

Tapescript 1.19

- 1 A: Whose mobile is this? B: I think it's Harry's.
- 2 A: Whose books are these? B: I think they're Lisa's.
- 3 A: Whose sunglasses are these? B: I think they're Harry's.
- 4 A: Whose camera is this? B: I think it's Tim's.
- 5 A: Whose laptop is this? B: I think it's Lisa's.
- 6 A: Whose trainers are these? B: I think they're Tim's.

Unit 16

- 1 1 I'm from Spain but I live in London.
2 Alberto's from Spain and he lives in Madrid.
3 Tessa's from Greece and she lives in Athens.
4 Jim and I are from the UK but we live in Tokyo.
5 Yang and Li are from China but they live in Paris.
6 Dan is from Australia and he lives in Melbourne.
- 2 1 He works in a hospital.
2 She works in a bank.
3 She works in a school.
4 He works in a restaurant.
5 They work in a hospital.
6 We work in a restaurant.
- 3 1 works 2 work 3 start 4 starts 5 has 6 have
7 finishes 8 finish 9 studies 10 watch
- 4 1 starts 2 starts 3 have 4 finishes 5 finishes
- 5 Larry starts work at half past four and Dan starts at five o'clock. They have a break at half past seven. Larry finishes work at half past eleven and Dan finishes at twelve o'clock / midnight.
- 6 Students' own answers.

Unit 17

- 1 1 c 2 e 3 b 4 d 5 a
- 2 1 Fran 2 Nancy 3 Matt 4 Luke
- 3 1 A: Do you like pasta?
B: No, I don't.
2 A: Does your boyfriend like Chinese food?
B: No, he doesn't but he likes Japanese food.
3 A: Do your parents like sushi?
B: My mother likes it but my father doesn't.
- 4 1 her 2 me 3 her 4 them 5 us 6 him

- 5 1 I don't like it.
2 I like them.
3 I don't like her.
4 I love it.
5 I like him but I prefer her.

Unit 18

- 1 1 Lucy never goes to the opera.
2 John goes to the opera every month.
3 Lucy often goes to the cinema.
4 Chris and Sally go to the cinema every Tuesday.
5 John goes to the cinema twice a week.
6 Chris and Sally sometimes go to the theatre.
7 Lucy goes to the theatre once a year.
8 John doesn't often go to the theatre.
- 2 1 I play football twice ^ week.
2 They always go to the cinema ^ Saturdays.
3 Jenny goes to the opera once ^ year.
4 I play basketball three ^ a month.
5 Li ^ often go to the cinema.
6 Anita goes to the cinema ^ weekend.
7 I watch football once a ^.
8 I go to the theatre ^ a year
- 3 1 I never go to the opera.
2 Steve plays football once a week.
3 Donna always plays golf on Sundays.
4 They sometimes go to the theatre.
5 Carlo doesn't often play tennis.
6 I play basketball every Thursday.
- 4 1 ever 2 to 3 do 4 every 5 How 6 love 7 twice
- 5 Students' own answers.

Unit 19

- 1 1 do 2 is 3 does 4 is 5 do 6 does 7 is 8 does
9 is 10 does
- 2 1 Where 2 Where 3 How 4 When 5 Which
6 What 7 How 8 Who 9 When 10 What
- 3 1 g 2 c 3 f 4 b 5 e 6 a 7 d
- 4 1 What time does she have breakfast?
2 When does she study?
3 What does she have for lunch?
4 What does she do in the afternoon?
5 Where does she have dinner?
6 How long does she watch television in the evening?

Unit 20

- 1 1 She lives in Paris.
2 She works in a bank.
3 She starts work at eight o'clock.
4 She finishes work at six o'clock.
5 She has sushi for lunch.
6 She studies English.
7 She plays tennis.
8 She never watches television.
9 She goes to the opera once a month.
10 She hates rock music.
11 She sleeps six hours every night.
12 She often eats in restaurants.

- 2 1 Yes, I do. 2 No, he doesn't. 3 No, I don't.
4 Yes, he does. 5 Yes, I do. 6 Yes, I do.
7 Yes, he does. 8 No, I don't. 9 No, he doesn't.
10 Yes, he does.

- 3 1 Does 2 doesn't 3 don't 4 do 5 does 6 don't
7 Does 8 does 9 do 10 Do 11 do 12 doesn't

- 4 1 I like hip-hop but I prefer rock.
2 We always go to the cinema on Monday.
3 She doesn't often watch television.
4 I don't like jazz.
5 My sister works in a bank in Paris.
6 Jim starts work at half past nine.
7 I play tennis once a week.
8 Do you ever go to the theatre?

- 5 1 I, her, she, me 2 We, him, he, us 3 They, me, I, them

- 6 1 When 2 Where 3 What 4 Which 5 Who

- 7 1 /z/ 2 /ɪz/ 3 /z/ 4 /s/ 5 /ɪz/

- 8 1 play 2 go to 3 have 4 have 5 play 6 go to
7 have 8 go to 9 have

- 9 1 brother 2 girlfriend 3 parents 4 mother
5 children

- 10 1 banker 2/3 doctor, nurse 4/5 chef, waiter
6 teacher

- 11 1 What time does she have breakfast?
2 When does she study?
3 What does she have for lunch?
4 What does she do in the afternoon?
5 Where does she have dinner?
6 How long does she watch television in the evening?

Tapescript 1.26

- 1 A: What time does she have breakfast?
B: At eight o'clock.
2 A: When does she study? B: In the morning.
3 A: What does she have for lunch? B: A sandwich.
4 A: What does she do in the afternoon?
B: She plays golf.
5 A: Where does she have dinner? B: In a restaurant.
6 A: How long does she watch television in the evening? B: For two hours.

Unit 21

- 1 1 c 2 b 3 a 4 e 5 d

- 2 1 can 2 Can 3 can't 4 can 5 Can 6 can't 7 Can
8 can 9 Can 10 can't 11 Can 12 can 13 Can
14 can't 15 can

- 3 1 Can 2 speak 3 can't 4 very well 5 can
6 well 7 can't

- 4 1 A: Can you speak Spanish?
B: No, I can't. I can speak Chinese.
2 A: Can they play the piano?
B: Yes, they can play very well.
3 A: Can she run fast?
B: Yes, she can.
4 A: Can you play tennis?
B: Yes, I can. I can also play golf.
5 A: Can he speak three languages?
B: No, but he can speak two languages.

- 5 Students' own answers.

Unit 22

- 1 1 Can I, O 2 Can you, R 3 Can I, R 4 Can I, R
5 Can you, R 6 Can I, O 7 Can I, O 8 Can I, R
9 Can you, R 10 Can I, R

- 2 1 Can I borrow your car?
2 Can you speak to her?
3 Can I open the window?
4 Can I buy you lunch?
5 Can you get me a drink?
6 Can I carry your bag?
7 Can you help me?
8 Can you lend me your phone?
9 Can I use your laptop?
10 Can you answer the phone?

Answer key (and tapescript)

- 3** Conversation 1: 2, 4, 1, 3
Conversation 2: 3, 1, 5, 4, 2
Conversation 3: 3, 5, 4, 6, 1, 2
Conversation 4: 4, 2, 1, 3
- 4** 1 a 2 a 3 b 4 a 5 b 6 a 7 b 8 a

Unit 23

1 1 Would you like 2 please 3 we'd like 4 Certainly
5 I'd 6 Would 7 thanks 8 like

2 1 I'd like some soup, please.
2 Would you like the menu?
3 I'd like some coffee.
4 Would you like some bread?
5 We'd like some water, please.
6 I'd like the bill, please.

3 1 A: Would you like a cup of coffee?
B: No, thanks. I'd like the bill, please.
2 A: Would you like a table for two?
B: Yes, please.
3 A: Would you like some soup?
B: No, thanks. I'd like a green salad.
4 A: Would you like the menu?
B: Yes, please.
5 A: Would you like some wine?
B: No, thanks. I'd like some water.
6 A: Would you like some cheese?
B: Yes, please.

Unit 24

- 1** 1 Go 2 turn 3 go 4 stop 5 Don't 6 turn
- 2** 1 b 2 c 3 d 4 f 5 a 6 e
- 3** 1 c 2 d 3 g 4 e 5 j 6 b 7 h 8 i 9 a 10 f

Unit 25

- 1** 1 you 2 you 3 you 4 me 5 you, me 6 me 7 me
8 you 9 you 10 you
- 2** 1 He can play the piano.
2 I can't sing well.
3 Would you like the menu?
4 Does he play tennis? / Can he play tennis?
5 Stop at the traffic lights!
6 She can run fast.
7 I'd like some water, please.

- 8** Stop!
9 Have a drink!
10 Don't turn left.

- 3** 1 a 2 a 3 b 4 b 5 a 6 b 7 b 8 a 9 b 10 a
- 4** 1 R 2 O 3 Or 4 D 5 Or 6 R 7 O 8 D 9 Or 10 R
- 5** 1 I can. Can you help me, please? Please bring a friend.
2 Can you give me a drink, please? Give me a drink
(please). Please go.
3 No, I can't. I can't play the piano. Play the piano,
please.
4 Can you lend me your phone? Lend me your
phone. Phone me at ten o'clock.
5 Yes, I would. I would not like a dessert (thank
you). Thank you very much.
- 6** 1 /ka:nt/ 2 /kæn/ 3 /kən/ 4 /ka:nt/ 5 /kæn/

Tapescript 1.32

- 1 Sorry, I can't play tonight.
2 Can I have a table for two?
3 You can have ice cream.
4 We can't have a table near the window.
5 Yes, they can.

- 7** 1 sing 2 beautiful 3 please 4 map 5 coffee
6 right
- 8** 1 speak 2 play 3 borrow 4 Close 5 get 6 speak
7'd like 8 Turn 9 Go 10 Cross
- 9** water, soup, green salad, tea

Tapescript 1.33

Conversation 1

- Waiter: Good evening. My name's Mario and
I'm your waiter.
Customer: Hello.
Waiter: Would you like the wine menu?
Customer: Yes, please. And we'd like some water,
please.
Waiter: Certainly.

Conversation 2

- Customer: Excuse me, we'd like to order now.
Waiter: Sure.
Customer: I'd like some soup and he'd like a green
salad.
Waiter: Certainly. Would you like some wine?
Customer: No, thanks. But I'd like a cup of tea, please.

Unit 26

1 1 faster 2 older 3 cheaper 4 less expensive 5 hotter
6 better 7 happier 8 more beautiful 9 safer

- 2 1 A motorbike is faster than a bicycle.
2 She is taller than him.
3 The red bike is less expensive than the blue bike.
4 Her book is more interesting than his book.

- 3 1 Karen's younger than Tom. Tom's older than Karen.
2 The Mississippi River is shorter than the Amazon River. The Amazon River is longer than the Mississippi River.
3 My flat is smaller than your house. Your house is bigger than my flat.
4 Today, it's hotter in Rome than in London. Today, it's colder in London than in Rome. / Today, Rome is hotter than London. Today, London is colder than Rome.

Unit 27

1 1 tallest 2 shortest 3 biggest 4 most dangerous
5 longest 6 oldest 7 safest 8 most expensive
9 highest 10 heaviest

- 2 1 A snake is slower than a cheetah.
The tortoise is the slowest animal.
2 Italy is hotter than Norway.
Ethiopia is the hottest country.
3 The Indian Ocean is bigger than the Mediterranean Sea.
The Pacific Ocean is the biggest ocean.
4 India is smaller than Russia.
Switzerland is the smallest country.
5 A car is faster than a bicycle.
The aeroplane is the fastest transport.

- 3 1 I'm the worst at English in my class.
2 I think Brazil is the best football team in the world.
3 Snakes are the most dangerous animals in my country.
4 I don't think he's a better actor than De Niro.
5 Your bags are heavy but my bag is the heaviest.

Unit 28

1 1 beautifully 2 loudly 3 quietly 4 quickly 5 slowly
6 well 7 fast 8 happily 9 badly 10 late 11 hard
12 early

2 1 badly 2 beautiful 3 loudly 4 quietly 5 quickly
6 slow 7 happy 8 loud 9 well 10 happily 11 quiet
12 slowly

3 1 fast 2 beautifully 3 early 4 quietly 5 well
6 happily

4 Students' own answers.

Unit 29

1 1 later 2 earlier 3 better 4 faster 5 more slowly /
slower 6 harder 7 better 8 more quietly 9 louder

- 2 1 You get up later than me.
2 I get up earlier than you.
3 Michael runs slower than Martin.
4 Martin runs faster / quicker / more quickly
than Michael.
5 Victoria plays the piano better than Julia.
6 Julia plays the piano worse than Victoria.

- 3 a Can you speak more slowly?
b Can you speak more loudly?
c our meeting starts earlier
d He starts work later on Tuesdays.

4 1 b 2 d 3 c 4 a

Unit 30

1 1 faster 2 less expensive 3 best 4 harder 5 well
6 hot 7 quiet

- 2 1 Can you play golf better than your dad?
2 The weather today is hotter than yesterday.
3 Blue whales are the biggest animals in the world.
4 He's the happiest student in my class.
5 I can run faster than you.
6 Is he worse at English than me?
7 A tortoise goes more slowly than a snake.
8 This ice cream is the best in the world.
9 This café is more expensive than that café.
10 This TV show is funnier than the other one.

3 1 younger 2 heaviest 3 quietly 4 loudly 5 later
6 badly 7 early 8 quickly

- 4 1 London is bigger than Edinburgh.
2 This film isn't longer than the other one.
3 They study very hard for exams.

Answer key (and tapescript)

5 1 Whales are bigger than elephants.

2 Mike's bigger than Martin.

3 English is easier than Maths.

4 Your car isn't faster than mine.

5 Tom is taller than his brother.

6 This is the most expensive car.

6 1 blue whale 2 supermarket 3 library 4 office

5 loudly 6 slowly 7 early

7 Across

3 good 6 short 7 interesting 9 slow 10 loud

Down

1 hot 2 young 4 dangerous 5 cheap 8 small

8 Across

3 bad – worse – worst, good – better – best

6 long – longer – longest, short – shorter – shortest

7 boring – more boring – most boring, interesting – more interesting – most interesting

9 fast – faster – fastest, slow – slower – slowest

10 quiet – quieter – quietest, loud – louder – loudest

Down

1 cold – colder – coldest, hot – hotter – hottest

2 old – older – oldest, young – younger – youngest

4 safe – safer – safest, dangerous – more dangerous – most dangerous

5 expensive – more expensive – most expensive, cheap – cheaper – cheapest

8 big – bigger – biggest, small – smaller – smallest

9 1 Pierre 2 earlier 3 2

Tapescript 1.38

A: Good morning. Can I help you?

B: Hello. Can I speak to Pierre?

A: Sorry, I can't hear you. Can you speak more loudly?

B: I'd like to speak to Pierre, please.

A: Sorry, he isn't here. He starts work later on Tuesdays. Can I take a message?

B: Yes, please. My name is Agathe. Can you tell him our meeting starts earlier tomorrow?

A: Sorry. Can you speak more slowly?

B: Sure. Our meeting starts at twelve o'clock, not two o'clock tomorrow.

A: OK. Thanks.

Unit 31

1 1 Sam isn't cooking. He's having a shower.

2 Catherine and Ali are watching television. They aren't reading.

3 Antonio and Julia aren't cooking. They're playing chess.

4 Lucia's reading a book. She isn't playing chess.

5 Julia isn't watching television. She's sleeping.

6 Mike and Tom aren't reading. They're cooking.

2 1 No, she isn't. 2 No, they aren't. 3 Yes, she is. 4 Yes, they are. 5 No, they aren't. 6 Yes, he is.

3 Lewis: 5, 3, 9, 1, 7

Marie: 6, 2, 4, 10, 8

Unit 32

1 1 works 2 isn't working, 's reading 3 cycles
4 isn't cycling, 's raining, 's driving

2 1 live 2 drive, 'm taking 3 's raining 4 don't smoke
5 Do you like, do 6 are you doing, 'm writing
7 's boiling 8 freezes 9 always go 10 rains
11 speak 12 'm watching 13 have 14 's doing
15 's watching 16 Do you want

3 1 'm having 2 'm learning 3 starts 4 study 5 have
6 are 7 'm having 8 'm sitting 9 'm eating
10 'm doing 11 are 12 'm making

Unit 33

1 Order: 5, 2, 3, 1, 4

2 1 I'm seeing Anne on Monday morning.
2 I'm going to the cinema on Tuesday evening.
3 Louise isn't having lunch with Rita on Sunday.
4 Max is going to the beach on Friday morning.
5 Where are you having dinner on Wednesday evening?
6 Who are they meeting on Monday morning?

3 1 g 2 f 3 d 4 i 5 j 6 b 7 c 8 a 9 e 10 h

4 1 are you doing on
2 are you having dinner with on
3 are you playing football
4 are you doing on Saturday
5 are you going on
6 are you going shopping

Unit 34

- 1 1 He's going to travel around the USA.
2 She's going to work in a laboratory.
3 They're going to have a holiday in Spain.
4 She's going to learn to drive.

- 2 1 Yes, he is. 2 Yes, they are. 3 No, he isn't.
4 Yes, she is. 5 No, they aren't.

- 3 1 Are we going to book 4 's going to meet
2 is going to drive 5 s' going to take
3 isn't going to know

- 4 1 are you going to do 4 're going to work
2 are going to teach 5 are you going to do
3 are you going to stay 6 'm going to travel

- 5 1 What are you going to do in the summer?
2 I'm not going to have a holiday.
3 I'm going to work in a laboratory.
4 What are you going to study?
5 I'm going to study Physics.
6 What are you going to do after university?

- 6 1 I'm going to buy a new jacket.
2 We're going to leave at three o'clock.
3 Maggie is going to get a job in the college.
4 They're going to go home after school.
5 Is he going to meet us there?
6 When are you going to have lunch?
7 I think it is going to snow tonight.
8 Are Jemima and Hugo going to work in an office?

Unit 35

- 1 1 He's playing tennis.
2 They're cooking.
3 She's reading a book.
4 He's sleeping.
5 He's watching television.
6 They're playing chess.

- 2 1 He isn't playing tennis.
2 They aren't cooking.
3 She isn't reading a book.
4 He isn't sleeping.
5 He isn't watching television.
6 They aren't playing chess.

- 3 1 On Monday I'm playing tennis with Jules.
2 On Tuesday I'm going to the cinema with Mazda.
3 On Wednesday I'm going to the beach with my mum.
4 On Thursday I'm going to the library with Sarah.
5 On Friday I'm having dinner with Joe.
6 On Saturday I'm shopping with Nicky.
7 On Sunday I'm having lunch with my family.

- 4 1 are you doing on Monday
2 are you playing tennis with
3 are you doing on Wednesday
4 are you going with Sarah / on Thursday
5 are you seeing Joe
6 are you shopping with on Saturday
7 are you doing on Sunday

- 5 1 I'm going to read my emails.
2 I'm going to phone my mum.
3 He's going to have a piano lesson.
4 She's going to study in the library.
5 We're going to play tennis.
6 They're going to go shopping.

- 6 1 3 2 4 3 5 4 5 5 6 6 6

Tapescript 1.43

- 1 I'm having dinner.
2 Are they watching television?
3 He's going to buy it.
4 What are you doing later?
5 She isn't going to be late.
6 Who are you seeing at eight?

- 7 1 play 2 play 3 have 4 have 5 play 6 have 7 play
8 play 9 have

- 8 1 Are you free on Saturday evening?
2 Is it any good?
3 It's excellent.
4 Can I call you back?

- 9 1 c 2 f 3 e 4 a 5 b 6 d

- 10 1 are you doing on 2 m not doing 3 re going to the
4 film are you 5 starts at eight

Tapescript 1.44

- A: What are you doing on Friday?
B: I'm not doing anything. Why?
A: We're going to the cinema. Would you like to come?
B: Yes, please. What film are you seeing?
A: On the Beach 2. It starts at eight o'clock.

Answer key (and tapescript)

Unit 36

- 1 1 was 2 was 3 were 4 was 5 was 6 Were
2 1 T 2 F 3 T 4 F 5 T 6 F 7 T 8 F
3 1 was 2 were 3 was 4 Was 5 wasn't 6 was 7 was
8 were 9 weren't 10 was 11 Was 12 weren't

Unit 37

- 1 1 There was 2 There were 3 There wasn't
4 There wasn't 5 there were 6 there weren't
2 1 Yes, there was.
2 No, there wasn't. There were cars.
3 No, there wasn't. There was a cinema.
4 Yes, there were.
5 No, there weren't. There was one restaurant.
6 No, there wasn't.
7 No, there wasn't. There was an Italian restaurant.
3 1 b 2 e 3 f 4 d 5 a 6 h 7 g 8 c

Unit 38

- 1 1 couldn't 2 could 3 couldn't 4 could 5 couldn't
6 could 7 could 8 couldn't 9 couldn't 10 could
2 1 Could you speak Chinese
2 Could your father speak Chinese?
3 How well could you play the piano
4 What could he play?
5 How far could you run?
6 I couldn't play tennis.

Unit 39

- 1 1 Could 2 Would 3 Could 4 Could 5 Could
6 Would 7 Could 8 Would 9 could 10 Would
11 Could 12 could 13 Could 14 Could 15 Would
2 1 Could I leave a message?
2 Would you like to buy something, madam?
3 Could you give me your number again, please?
I can't find it.
4 Harry is out. Would you like him to call you later?
5 I'd like some soup and she'd like a salad. And
could we see the wine menu, please?
6 You can borrow the films but could I have them
back by the weekend?

- 3 1 Would you like me to help you?
2 Could I leave a message?
3 Could you lend me a DVD?
4 Would you like to speak to Marc?
5 Could I borrow a pen?
6 Could you spell your name?
7 Would you like something to drink?
8 Would you like to borrow the/my car?
9 Could you lend me your mobile phone?
10 Would you like to see the menu?

Unit 40

- 1 1 was 2 could 3 were 4 couldn't 5 wasn't 6 weren't
2 Students' own answers.
3 Order: 5, 3, 1, 6, 4, 7, 2
4 1 They weren't at the party.
2 Sorry, I couldn't come yesterday.
3 I was born in Brazil.
4 There were houses on the left.
5 Would you like to sit here?
6 Could I order some ice cream?
7 Were they born in Italy?
8 Could you tell him I called?
9 Could I borrow your car?
5 1 /wɒz/ 2 /wəz/ 3 /wɒznt/ 4 /wɒz/ 5 /wəz/

Tapescript 1.48

- 1 Yes, he was.
2 The weekend was great!
3 The film wasn't very interesting.
4 I'm sure it was.
5 Was she at Oxford University?

- 6 1 bus station 2 supermarket 3 bank 4 train station
5 cinema 6 café 7 post office
7 1 boxer 2 car 3 singer 4 bridge 5 today
8 1 order 2 leave 3 have 4 spell 5 lend 6 speak
7 run 8 buy
9 1 T 2 F 3 T 4 F 5 F 6 F

Tapescript 1.49

Conversation 1

A: Hello Nancy. How was your weekend?
B: Great! Mike and I were in New York.
A: That's amazing!
B: It was my birthday.
A: Happy Birthday!

Conversation 2

A: Was James here this morning?
B: No, he wasn't.
A: Where was he?
B: I think he was in a meeting with Sue and Rona. They were in Sue's office.
A: No, they weren't because I was with Sue in her office all morning!

Conversation 3

A: How was your sister's wedding?
B: Really good!
A: Was it big?
B: No, there weren't many people, just family and good friends.

Unit 41

1 1 F 2 T 3 F 4 T 5 T 6 T

2 1 studied 2 ✓ 3 visited 4 ✓ 5 ✓ 6 stopped
7 travelled 8 qualified

3 1 started 2 finished 3 graduated 4 visited 5 worked
6 travelled 7 walked 8 stopped 9 lived 10 studied

4 1 finished 2 started 3 graduated 4 travelled
5 studied 6 qualified 7 joined

Unit 42

1 1 eat – ate 2 sit – sat 3 do – did 4 swim – swam
5 get – got 6 go – went 7 have – had 8 make – made
9 buy – bought 10 take – took 11 give – gave
12 see – saw

2 1 ate 2 went 3 bought 4 had 5 did 6 swam
7 took 8 made 9 got 10 sat 11 gave 12 saw

3 1 got up 2 swam 3 ate 4 had 5 took 6 sat 7 went
8 did 9 bought

4 1 made 2 ✓ 3 ✓ 4 went 5 ✓ 6 bought 7 ✓
8 ate 9 sat 10 swam 11 had 12 ✓ 13 ✓ 14 joined
15 tried 16 ✓ 17 ✓ 18 gave

Unit 43

- 1 1 She left school in 1995.
2 She didn't go to university.
3 She started work in an office.
4 She got married in 1998.
5 She didn't have any children.
6 She got divorced.
7 She met a new partner.
8 She didn't get married again.
- 2 1 Did, didn't 2 Did, did 3 Did 4 Did, didn't
- 3 1 Did you get married?
2 Did you meet Bill at university?
3 Did you have any children?
4 Did you do your homework last night?
5 Did you take the bus to the airport?
6 Did you go to Spain on holiday?
7 Did you get up late this morning?

Unit 44

- 1 1 Where did you stay?
2 Who stayed there?
3 What did you do yesterday?
4 Who made your sandwich?
5 How many people went to the party?
6 What changed your plans?
7 What time did the TV programme start?
- 2 1 e 2 b 3 d 4 g 5 f 6 a 7 c
- 3 1 O 2 S 3 O 4 S 5 S 6 S 7 O

- 4 1 When did she leave home?
2 What did they study at university?
3 Who studied Biology at university?
4 When did you start your job?
5 What changed your plans?
6 Where did you meet Sheila?
7 Why did you leave your job?
8 Who lived in this house?
9 How long did you travel in Patagonia?

Unit 45

- 1 1 I ate breakfast at seven o'clock.
2 They went on Tuesday.
3 We didn't have time for lunch.
4 Who lived here?
5 Did you know her?

Answer key (and tapescript)

- 6 Why did you walk to work?
7 Sorry, I wasn't at home.
8 How far did you swim?
- 2** 1 Did you like Spain?
2 When did you live there?
3 Who wrote that book?
4 I studied in Bologna for a year.
5 We didn't go to the cinema last night.
6 Why did you leave university early?
7 Did you visit the Eiffel Tower?
8 She made a delicious pasta dish.
9 When did you get divorced?
- 3** 1 this morning 2 yesterday 3 last week
4 two weeks ago 5 last month 6 last year 7 in 1990
- 4** 1 did 2 left 3 got 4 celebrated 5 went 6 took
7 made 8 graduated 9 stopped 10 travelled
- 5** 1 went 2 left 3 celebrated 4 did 5 travelled
6 stopped 7 graduated 8 took 9 got 10 made
- 6** 1 g 2 h 3 f 4 b 5 e 6 c 7 a 8 d
- 7** 1 2 2 3 2 4 1 5 3 6 1 7 1 8 1 9 2 10 1
11 1 12 4
- 8** 1 a 2 b 3 a 4 a 5 b 6 c 7 b 8 c

Tapescript ⑥ 1.55

Matt: How was your holiday?
Anna: Great! We got up late every day and swam in the hotel pool before breakfast.
Matt: How was the food at the hotel?
Anna: Not bad, but we usually ate in one of the local restaurants. We had some delicious fish dishes.
Matt: So, were you near the coast?
Anna: Yes, we were. We took the hotel bus down to the sea and sat on the beach in the afternoon.
Matt: Were there many places to visit?
Anna: Mark went sightseeing but I wasn't interested. I did some shopping on the last day. Look! I bought this beautiful bracelet at a local market.

Unit 46

- 1** 1 parents 2 doctor/parents 3 boss 4 doctor
5 police officer 6 parents 7 parents 8 boss
- 2** 1 You mustn't use your mobile here.
2 You must eat more fruit.

- 3 You mustn't drink the water here.
4 You must park on the left.
5 You must visit your grandparents.
6 You mustn't take photographs here.
7 You mustn't talk in class.
8 You must turn your mobile off.
9 You must phone me when you arrive.
10 You mustn't phone after ten o'clock.

- 3** 1 must 2 mustn't 3 must 4 mustn't 5 must
6 mustn't 7 must 8 mustn't 9 mustn't 10 must
11 mustn't 12 must 13 must

- 4** 1 Rachel must leave at six.
2 You mustn't do that.
3 We must drive on the left in the UK.
4 She mustn't be late for her interview.
5 I must get up at six every day.
6 They must ask their parents.

Unit 47

- 1** 1 must 2 don't have to 3 must 4 have to 5 mustn't
6 have to 7 don't have to 8 have to
- 2** 1 have to 2 mustn't 3 Do 4 have to 5 do 6 do
7 have to 8 have to 9 have to 10 Does 11 have to
12 does 13 has to 14 mustn't 15 has to
Conversation 1: waiter
Conversation 2: shop assistant
- 3** 1 Paulo has to cook the food.
Macy doesn't have to cook the food.
2 Paulo and Macy mustn't smoke.
3 Paulo doesn't have to clear the tables.
Macy has to clear the tables.
4 Paulo and Macy have to wear a uniform.
5 Paulo and Macy mustn't be late.
6 Paulo doesn't have to serve the customers.
Macy has to serve the customers.

Unit 48

- 1** 1 That's not true. You shouldn't smoke.
2 That's true.
3 That's true.
4 That's not true. You shouldn't drink a lot of coffee.
5 That's not true. You shouldn't work twelve hours a day.
6 That's not true. You should go on holiday.

- 2** 1 You should buy it.
 2 You shouldn't buy them.
 3 You should buy them.
 4 You shouldn't buy it.
 5 You should buy it.
 6 You shouldn't buy them.
- 3** 1 should 2 should 3 shouldn't 4 should 5 should
 6 should
- 4** 1 I think you should buy those shoes.
 2 They shouldn't pay that much money.
 3 Rita should ask me first.
 4 Should we leave now or later?
 5 Gerald should do more exercise.
 6 What should he do about the problem?
- 7** I don't have to call my boss 'sir'.
 8 I don't have to make coffee.
- 3** 1 I shouldn't drink coffee.
 2 I should drink water.
 3 I shouldn't eat doughnuts.
 4 I should do exercise.
 5 I should eat vegetables.
 6 I shouldn't drink wine.
- 4** 1 had to 2 had to 3 Did 4 have to 5 didn't 6 had
 to 7 had to 8 didn't 9 have to
- 5** 1 mustn't 2 should 3 don't 4 could 5 shouldn't
 6 mustn't
- 6** 1 awful 2 boss 3 homework 4 great 5 job

Unit 49

- 1** 1 They had to study Maths.
 2 Lisa didn't have to study French.
 3 Tony had to study French.
 4 They didn't have to study Geography.
 5 They had to study Science.
- 2** 1 e 2 c 3 b 4 a 5 d 6 f
- 3** 1 Did 2 have to 3 did 4 had to 5 had to 6 Did
 7 have to 8 didn't 9 had to 10 Did 11 have to
 12 did 13 had to 14 had to
- 4** 1 Did he have to do that?
 2 Did Mike and Lelia have to stay late?
 3 What time did you have to get up?
 4 Did you have to clean the house today?
 5 Why did we have to pay for the ticket?
 6 Did she have to study French at school?

Unit 50

- 1** 1 You mustn't smoke.
 2 You mustn't eat or drink.
 3 You mustn't take photographs.
 4 You mustn't walk.
 5 You mustn't park.
 6 You mustn't use your mobile.
- 2** 1 I have to start work at eight o'clock.
 2 I mustn't park in the boss's parking space.
 3 I mustn't be late.
 4 I must learn the rules.
 5 I don't have to wear a uniform.
 6 I must wear a jacket and tie.

¹ C	L	E	² A	N											
A			R					³ T	Y	⁴ P	E				
L		⁵ D	R	I	N	K				H				⁶ W	
L			I					⁷ S	M	O	K	E			
			V	I	S	I	T			N		A			
⁹ T	A	K	E					A							
A								R							
¹⁰ L	E	A	R	N			¹¹ S	T	¹² U	D	Y				
K							A		S						
			¹³ B	U	Y				¹⁴ E	A	T				

8 Order: 5, 3, 4, 1, 7, 2, 6

Tapescript 1.61

- Joe: You work too hard. You should work less.
 Mark: Yes, but ...
 Joe: You should go on holiday.
 Mark: Yes, but ...
 Joe: And you shouldn't drink all that coffee.
 Mark: Yes, but ...
 Joe: And you smoke? You should stop now.
 Mark: Yes, but ...
 Joe: And you look terrible! You should take more exercise.
 Mark: Yes, but ...
 Joe: And doughnuts! You should eat healthier food.
 Mark: Yes, but ...
 Joe: Yes, but what?
 Mark: Oh, nothing.

Answer key (and tapescript)

Unit 51

- 1** 1 Mark's combed his hair.
2 Rick hasn't combed his hair.
3 Mark's ironed his shirt.
4 Rick hasn't ironed his shirt.
5 Mark's cleaned his shoes.
6 Rick hasn't cleaned his shoes.

- 2** 1 've cleaned 5 haven't done
2 's left 6 's tidied
3 haven't finished 7 've bought
4 've had 8 's made

- 3** 1 I've lost my credit card.
2 Julia's borrowed my dictionary.
3 Christina's bought a new top.
4 The car has stopped.
5 I've broken my phone.

- 4** 1 Have you cleaned
2 Have you had
3 Have you combed
4 Have you cleaned

Unit 52

- 1** 1 They've just moved house.
2 She's just had a baby.
3 They've just got married.
4 He's just graduated from university.

- 2** 1 Have you done the washing up yet?
2 Has he made his bed yet?
3 Have they cleaned the bathroom yet?
4 Has she tidied the living room yet?
5 Have you made dinner yet?
6 Has he done the shopping yet?

- 3** 1 yet 2 yet 3 already 4 already 5 yet 6 already

- 4** 1 ✓ 2 at two o'clock 3 this afternoon 4 ✓ 5 ✓

- 5** I haven't phoned Angelina yet. I'm going to do that at four o'clock. I've already phoned Tom and I've already talked to Kevin. I haven't emailed Sharon yet. I'm going to do that this afternoon. I haven't talked to Martin yet. I'm going to do that after lunch.

Unit 53

- 1** 1 since 2 since 3 for 4 since 5 since 6 since
7 for 8 for

- 2** 1 28 2 seven years 3 six years 4 25 5 three years
6 18

- 3** 1 have you lived 8 've had
2 've been 9 since
3 for 10 've been
4 have you had 11 for
5 Since 12 've known
6 've been 13 since
7 since

- 4** Students' own answers.

Unit 54

- 1** 1 Have you ever been to Australia?
2 Have you ever ridden a motorbike?
3 Have you ever drunk Red Bull?
4 Have you ever played basketball?
5 Have you ever eaten Greek yoghurt?
6 Have you ever seen a James Bond film?

- 2** 1 d 2 c 3 a 4 b 5 f 6 e

- 3** 1 I've been to Canada but I've never been to the USA.
2 I've drunk Coca-Cola but I've never drunk Pepsi-Cola.
3 I've played table tennis but I've never played tennis.
4 I've ridden a bicycle but I've never ridden a motorbike.
5 I've spoken/studied French but I've never spoken/studied Spanish.
6 I've played the piano but I've never played the guitar.
7 I've eaten sushi but I've never eaten curry.
8 I've seen a dolphin but I've never seen a blue whale.

- 4** 1 A: Have you ever been to Canada?
B: Yes, I have. I went to Montreal last year.
2 A: Have you ever played rugby?
B: Yes, I have. I played rugby when I was at school.
3 A: Have you ever eaten curry?
B: Yes, I have. I ate curry in London last summer.
4 A: Have you ever seen *Romeo and Juliet*?
B: Yes, I have. I saw Romeo and Juliet at the Globe Theatre in May.

Unit 55

- 1** 1 haven't 2 's 3 hasn't 4 hasn't 5 haven't 6 've
7 's 8 've

- 2** 1 already 2 yet 3 already 4 yet 5 just

- 3** 1 He's been a dentist for fifteen years.
 2 He's lived in Edinburgh for five years.
 3 He's supported Arsenal FC since he was five.
 4 He's had a BMW since he was eighteen.
 5 He's known his wife/Meg for eight years.
 6 They've been married since January.
 7 Rosey's had her own business since 2005.

- 4** 1 Have you ever been to Canada?
 2 Have you ever drunk Greek wine?
 3 Have you ever played golf?
 4 Have you ever read *Hamlet*?
 5 Have you ever eaten caviar?

5 1 e 2 c 3 a 4 b 5 d

6 1've 2 have 3 have 4 haven't 5 have not 6's
 7 has 8 hasn't

Tapescript ⑥ 2.06

- 1 We've read your book.
 2 Yes, they have.
 3 Have you ever been to Spain?
 4 No, I haven't.
 5 No, I have not had lunch.
 6 He's lived here for three years.
 7 She has been there.
 8 It hasn't finished yet.

7 1 b 2 e 3 f 4 a 5 d 6 c

8 1 clean 2 have 3 iron 4 do 5 make 6 comb
 7 tidy 8 ride

- 9** 1 No, he hasn't. 5 No, he hasn't.
 2 At four o'clock. 6 This afternoon.
 3 Yes, he has. 7 No, he hasn't.
 4 Yes, he has. 8 After lunch.

Tapescript ⑥ 2.07

I haven't phoned Angelina yet. I'm going to do that at four o'clock. I've already phoned Tom and I've already talked to Kevin. I haven't emailed Sharon yet. I'm going to do that this afternoon. I haven't talked to Martin yet. I'm going to do that after lunch.

Unit 56

- 1** 1 The snow was falling and the children were playing in it.
 2 The telephone was ringing but Mike was working in the garden.

- 3** 1 The students weren't doing their work when the teacher came in.
 4 The baby was crying because a dog was barking.
 5 It wasn't raining so we ate outside.
 6 I wasn't planning to go out but my friend was bored.

- 2** 1 No, it wasn't. 2 Yes, it was. 3 Yes, they were.
 4 No, it wasn't. 5 No, they weren't.

- | | |
|----------------------------|---------------------------|
| 3 1 were you living | 4 were they living |
| 2 were you studying | 5 wasn't talking |
| 3 were studying | 6 were living |

Unit 57

- 1** 1 rang 2 was watching 3 were barking 4 found
 5 saw 6 was having 7 stopped 8 arrived

- 2** 1 were, doing 2 was driving 3 stopped
 4 were waiting 5 was raining 6 was barking
 7 opened 8 Did, enter 9 was walking 10 saw
 11 did, do

- 3** 1 I met an old friend while I was waiting at the bus station.
 2 They weren't working when we arrived.
 3 When she called, I was having a bath.
 4 Everyone was looking at the sky. Suddenly, they saw the aliens!
 5 While we were eating breakfast, my taxi arrived.
 6 I was reading my book when the lights went out.
 7 While we were watching TV, Molly told us her news.
 8 My parents were living in Italy when I was born.

Unit 58

- 1** 1 After 2 because 3 and 4 or 5 Before 6 When
 7 so 8 While 9 but

- 2** 1 and 2 while 3 after 4 but 5 so 6 or 7 because
 8 when

- 3** 1 We went to London and Paris.
 2 We didn't have time to visit the palace or the park.
 3 We booked tickets before we went to the theatre.
 4 We had dinner after we went to the theatre.
 5 She liked the theatre but she didn't enjoy the opera.
 6 While I was waiting for a taxi, my friend arrived with his car.
 7 When the art gallery closed, I went for a drink.
 8 We didn't go to the palace because we were hungry.
 9 The museum was closed so he went shopping.

Answer key (and tapescript)

Unit 59

- 1** 1 I used to work in a shop.
2 correct
3 correct
4 Television didn't use to be in colour.
5 I used to love chocolate!
6 Did you use to live here?
- 2** 1 use 2 used 3 use 4 used 5 use 6 use 7 used
- 3** 1 She didn't use to wear a lot of make up.
2 He used to wear this suit.
3 He used to act in the theatre.
4 They didn't use to argue (a lot).
- 4** Students' own answers.

Unit 60

- 1** 1 was running 4 were having
2 were, talking 5 Was, studying
3 wasn't working 6 wasn't looking
- 2** 1 was sleeping 5 was cycling
2 woke up 6 drove
3 looked 7 weren't looking
4 was barking 8 said
- 3** 1 after 2 and 3 because 4 Before 5 but 6 or 7 so
8 when 9 while
- 4** 1 I used to live in Beijing when I was a child.
2 What did you use to do when you worked there?
3 He didn't use to like carrots before he left home.
4 They used to have long hair in 1975.
5 She didn't use to drive before last year.
6 As a student, when did you use to go to bed?
- 5** 1 /z/ 2 /s/ 3 /s/ 4 /z/ 5 /s/ 6 /z/
- 6** 1 bedroom 2 dining room 3 kitchen 4 library
5 living room 6 study
- 7** 1 palace 2 gallery 3 park 4 monument 5 beach
- 8** 1 when I was sixteen
2 while I was taking
3 after Australia
4 but I only travelled
5 so I didn't have time
6 Australia or New Zealand
7 because we had problems
8 When we were leaving

Unit 61

- 1** 1 None 2 Some 3 most 4 Most 5 Some 6 None
7 None 8 All
- 2** 1 Ø 2 of 3 Ø 4 of 5 Ø 6 of 7 of 8 of
- 3** Order: 5, 3, 6, 2, 4, 1

Unit 62

- 1** 1 Everybody, nothing 2 nobody, Everybody
3 anything, anybody 4 somebody, anybody
5 nobody, everything
- 2** 1 anybody, anywhere 2 something, somebody
3 anything, nothing 4 everywhere, anywhere
5 somewhere, nowhere
- 3** 1 There isn't anybody in the house.
2 There's nothing to do.
3 There isn't anywhere to go.
4 There isn't anything on TV.
5 There's no one I want to phone.
6 There's nowhere worse than here.
- 4** 1 something 2 everything 3 anything 4 nothing
5 anything 6 someone/somebody
7 no one / nobody 8 everywhere 9 anything
10 anywhere

Unit 63

- 1** 1 Both 2 Both 3 Neither 4 Both 5 Neither
6 Both 7 Both 8 Neither 9 Neither 10 Both
11 Both 12 Neither
- 2** 1 I don't like either type of music.
I like neither type of music.
2 I haven't been to either country.
I've been to neither country.
3 I can't speak either language.
I can speak neither language.
4 I don't play either sport.
I play neither sport.
- 3** 1 both 2 Neither 3 either 4 Both 5 Either
6 Neither

Unit 64

- 1** 1 U 2 U 3 C 4 C 5 U 6 U 7 U 8 U 9 U 10 U
11 U 12 C 13 C 14 C 15 C 16 U

- 2** 1 much 2 many 3 many 4 much 5 much 6 much
7 much 8 much 9 much 10 many 11 much
12 many 13 many 14 many

- 3** 1 correct
2 We don't have much salt.
3 How much milk do you need?
4 correct
5 correct
6 How many rooms do you need?
7 correct
8 How much rice do you want?
9 correct
10 There isn't much milk in the fridge.
11 Are there many people at the party?
12 A lot of people are vegetarians these days.

Unit 65

- 1** 1 All 2 Some 3 Most 4 None 5 All 6 Most
7 Most 8 Some 9 None
- 2** 1 Everybody 2 anybody 3 somebody 4 Nobody
5 Everybody 6 Nobody 7 anybody
- 3** 1 anywhere 2 everywhere 3 nowhere 4 anywhere
5 somewhere 6 nowhere 7 somewhere
- 4** 1 something 2 anything 3 something 4 nothing
5 Everything 6 anything 7 nothing
- 5** 1 Both 2 Neither 3 Neither 4 either 5 both
6 either 7 neither 8 Either
- 6** 1 much, is 2 much, is 3 many, are 4 many, are
5 much, is 6 much, is 7 many, are 8 many, are
- 8** 1 speaking 2 listening 3 vocabulary 4 grammar
5 literature 6 writing
- 9** 1 About an hour.
2 About twenty.
3 Not much.
4 No, there wasn't.
5 No, there weren't.
6 About five hundred.
7 About a thousand.
8 About two hundred.

Tapescript 2.19

Conversation 1

- A: How much time have we got?
B: We've got about an hour before everyone arrives.
A: How many people are coming?
B: Not many – about twenty.
A: Twenty? And how much money have we spent?

Conversation 2

- C: Is the car ready?
D: Well, we haven't got much petrol.
C: OK, and how much oil have we got?
D: Not much and there isn't much air in the tyres.

Conversation 3

- E: Did you like the apartment?
F: No, I didn't. There wasn't much light.
E: Really?
F: No, and there weren't many windows. And there wasn't much space either.

Conversation 4

- G: How many CDs are there?
H: About five hundred.
G: What about books? How many books are there?
H: About a thousand.
G: And how many DVDs are there?
H: About two hundred.

Unit 66

- 1** 1 an 2 Ø 3 a 4 Ø 5 Ø 6 an 7 an 8 Ø 9 a
10 Ø 11 an 12 a
- 2** 1 a 2 a 3 an 4 an 5 a 6 a 7 a 8 a 9 an 10 a
- 3** 1 He lives in a small apartment.
2 Maria was a Maths teacher for three years.
3 They've got tickets for the match.
4 My uncle is an engineer.
5 That's a beautiful bracelet.
6 Would you like a table for two?
7 Robert De Niro is an American actor.
8 Have you seen an umbrella anywhere?
9 I'm going to be a chef when I'm older.
10 Is there a bank near here?

Answer key (and tapescript)

- 4** Why do we love celebrities? Perhaps it's because our favourite star is a singer or an actor. But what about celebrities who are famous because they are 'famous'? For example, Paris Hilton grew up in a rich family. Then, as an adult, she was always in a magazine. She spent all her time at parties with other famous people. She has had many different jobs. She was a model for a while. She made an album, worked as an actress in some TV commercials and films and has also written a book. But her most successful job is as a celebrity – whatever that is!

Unit 67

- 1** 1 This is Anouk. She's from the Netherlands.
2 Sri Lanka is in the Indian Ocean.
3 Cheetahs are the fastest animals on land.
4 Harald V is the King of Norway.
5 The Earth is 384,000 km from the moon.
6 My mother cooks the best cakes in the world!
7 Can you play the piano?
8 Paris is famous for the Eiffel Tower.
9 That was the worst film I've ever seen!
10 The Black Sea used to be part of the Atlantic Ocean.
11 There are twenty-seven countries in the European Union.
12 I love to listen to the violin.

- 2** 1 Tortoises live the longest.
2 Yuri Gagarin was the first man in space.
3 The Atomium monument is in Brussels.
4 The North Pole is in the Arctic.
5 The Suez canal connects the Mediterranean Sea to the Red Sea.
6 Ferdinand Magellan went round the world in 1519.

Unit 68

- 1** 1 a 2 the 3 a 4 the 5 the 6 an 7 the 8 the 9 the 10 a
2 1 c 2 h 3 j 4 i 5 b 6 e 7 a 8 f 9 d 10 g
3 1 a 2 the 3 a 4 the 5 a 6 an 7 The 8 the 9 the 10 a 11 an 12 the 13 the 14 a 15 a 16 the 17 The 18 a 19 the 20 the 21 a 22 the 23 the
4 Students' own answers.

Unit 69

- 1** 1 Italian food 2 The people 3 the sandwiches 4 the girl 5 rock music 6 time 7 elephants 8 Life 9 foot 10 Chinese
2 1 correct
2 Have you ever been to the Disneyland?
3 I go to the school at eight o'clock.
4 My father works at the home.
5 She goes to work by the bicycle.
6 I would love to see the Mount Everest.
7 I hate the golf. I never play it.
8 We study the Urdu at school. It's a great language.
9 The Spanish people are very friendly.
10 correct
11 My grandmother lives in the Berlin.
12 I eat a lot of the apples.
3 1 c 2 c 3 b 4 c 5 a 6 c
4 1 Ø 2 a 3 Ø 4 The 5 Ø 6 Ø 7 Ø 8 a 9 an 10 the 11 Ø 12 Ø 13 the

Unit 70

- 1** 1 The 2 Ø 3 a 4 the 5 Ø 6 the 7 a 8 the 9 the 10 a 11 the 12 Ø 13 Ø 14 the
2 1 the largest 2 the United States 3 a football 4 a small town 5 the oldest 6 a Spanish 7 a coffee 8 a headache 9 the most popular actress 10 The History 11 a flat 12 is in the 13 a dish 14 a song
3 1 /ði:/ 2 /ðə/ 3 /ðə/ 4 /ði:/ 5 /ðə/ 6 /ði:/ 7 /ðə/ 8 /ðə/ 9 /ði:/ 10 /ðə/
4 **Across**
1 destination 5 by 6 arrive 7 taxi 8 tour
Down
2 subway 3 tourist 4 on
5 1 composer 2 pop star 3 chef 4 celebrity 5 engineer 6 teacher
6 1 the Indian Ocean 4 the North Pole 2 the United Kingdom 5 the White House 3 the European Union 6 the Statue of Liberty
7 1 tortoises 2 Yuri Gagarin 3 Brussels 4 the Arctic 5 the Suez Canal 6 Ferdinand Magellan

Tapescript 2.25

- 1 Tortoises live the longest.
- 2 Yuri Gagarin was the first man in space.
- 3 The Atomium monument is in Brussels.
- 4 The North Pole is in the Arctic.
- 5 The Suez canal connects the Mediterranean Sea to the Red Sea.
- 6 Ferdinand Magellan went round the world in 1519.

Unit 71

- 1 1 Tomorrow will be a beautiful day.
2 One day I'll be famous.
3 We'll be in Rome tomorrow so meet us there.
4 Will your new girlfriend be at the party?
5 I think John will pass all his exams.
6 When will you be eighteen?
7 Who will win: Real Madrid or AC Milan?
8 Don't worry: I'm sure you'll get better.
9 Next week it'll be the summer holidays!
10 Do you think it will rain tomorrow?
11 Nobody will be in the office tomorrow so don't call.
12 Will we ever find a cure for cancer?
- 2 1 P 2 P 3 F 4 F 5 P 6 F 7 P 8 P 9 F 10 P
11 F 12 P
- 3 1 China will become the richest country in the world.
2 People will buy everything on the internet.
3 The world will get hotter.
4 Everybody will speak English.
5 Humans will reach Mars in 2020.
6 Everybody will live for a hundred years.
- 4 1 Will 2 will 3 'll 4 Will 5 will 6 won't 7 will 8 'll
- 5 1 will you be 2 I'll be 3 Will you be 4 I won't
5 I'll be 6 will you be 7 I'll be 8 I'll be

Unit 72

- 1 1 Don't worry. I'll help you.
2 No, but I'll make one.
3 I'll carry it for you.
4 I'll read you one, I promise.
5 I don't know yet. Will you pick me up?
6 I'll lend you mine.
7 I'll help you if you like.
8 Don't worry. I'll remember.
9 That's OK. We'll change it.
10 Will you send the books by post?

2 1 I'll make you a cup of tea.

2 I'll make you a sandwich.

3 I'll pick you up.

4 I'll wait for you.

5 I'll lend you some.

6 I'll get you a glass of water.

3 1 I'll always 2 I'll never 3 I'll always 4 I'll never
5 I'll never 6 I'll always 7 I'll never

4 1 Will you lend me your car?
2 Will you drive me to the party?
3 Will you pay for a taxi?
4 Will you give me some money for a bus ticket?

Unit 73

- 1 1 I think I'll have the tomato soup.
2 I think I'll have a pizza.
3 I think I'll have a chicken sandwich.
4 I think I'll have the steak with salad.
- 2 1 I think I'll have some pasta.
2 I think I'll turn on the heating.
3 I think I'll have a glass of water.
4 I think I'll go to bed.
5 I think I'll turn on the air conditioning.
6 I think I'll go for a walk.
7 I think I'll go home.
- 3 1 I'm going to 2 I think I'll 3 I'm going to
4 I think I'll 5 I'm going to
- 4 Order: 2, 4, 1, 3, 5
- 5 1 I'll pay for it.
2 I'm going to have a holiday in Florida.
3 I'll help you.
4 I'm going to be a doctor like my father.
5 I'll get it.
6 I'm going to have a dinner party tonight.

Unit 74

1 1 e 2 a 3 b 4 d 5 c

- 2 1 Rita and I are playing tennis on Tuesday.
2 It's OK. I'll pay for lunch.
3 This year I'm going to learn to play the piano.
- 3 1 I'm having 2 will get 3 Will it snow
4 are you getting 5 are you going 6 Will I like
- 4 1 are having 2 'm going to 3 's going to see
4 both 5 are you going to tell 6 both

Answer key (and tapescript)

5 Students' own answers.

Unit 75

- 1 1're 2 aren't 3 are 4'll 5 will 6's 7's 8 Will
9 won't
- 2 1 What do are you doing tonight?
2 I'm to celebrating at the Irish Pub.
3 Please will come.
4 I'll be being there at eight o'clock.
5 Also my dad is are going to pay for a holiday
6 I think I'll going travel to somewhere like Spain or
Greece.
7 Anyway, I'll am see you tonight I hope.
- 3 1 Will you be 2 won't 3'll be 4 are you doing
5're going 6 see 7'm going 8 going to snow
- 4 Students' own answers.
- 5 1a 2b 3a 4b 5a 6b 7b 8a

Tapescript 2.31

- 1 The plane leaves at five.
2 Pills'll replace food.
3 I have tea in the morning.
4 We'll pick you up from the airport.
5 Prices go up before Christmas.
6 They'll learn the piano.
7 Don't worry. I'll open it.
8 We always have lunch together.

6 1 thirsty 2 difficult 3 cold 4 hungry 5 tired
6 hot 7 bored

7 1 pizza 2 chicken 3 salad 4 steak 5 fish 6 pasta
7 tomato 8 soup

8 Order: 9, 1, 4, 8, 6, 3, 7, 5, 2, 10

Tapescript 2.32

- A: Cassia? This is Bernardo. Can you talk?
C: Yes, of course.
A: When will you be in Amsterdam?
C: I'll be in Amsterdam on 1 August.
A: Will you be alone?
C: No, I won't. I'll be with Henri.
A: Which hotel will you be in?
C: I'll be in the Four Seasons.
A: Be careful.
C: Don't worry. I'll be very, very careful.

Unit 76

- 1 in: 1999, the evenings, August, summer, the middle of winter, the 1990s, the early morning
on: New year's Day, 29th February, the third Friday of the month, Sundays, weekdays
at: half past ten, midday, night, 5 p.m., the same time, the weekend
- 2 1 on 29th February
2 in the middle of winter
3 at half past ten
4 in the early morning
5 on Sundays
6 on the third Friday of the month
7 at the same time
8 in the 1990s
- 3 1b 2d 3f 4e 5c 6a
- 4 1 on 2 In 3 At 4 In 5 at 6 On 7 at 8 at 9 at
10 at 11 In
- 5 Students' own answers.

Unit 77

- 1 1a 2b 3c 4h 5d 6e 7f 8g
- 2 1 at 2 at 3 on 4 on 5 in 6 on 7 in
- 3 1 in the middle 2 on the left 3 next to 4 on the right
5 Behind 6 in front of 7 Under 8 in the corner

Unit 78

- 1 1d 2g 3a 4h 5f 6c 7b 8e
- 2 1 which 2 who 3 who 4 which 5 who 6 which
7 which 8 who
- 3 1 which 2 which 3 which 4 who 5 who 6 who
7 which 8 which 9 who 10 which
- 4 1 correct
2 I don't like food which/that has a lot of salt in it.
3 A biologist is a person who works in a laboratory.
4 He bought a new bike which/that cost him over two thousand euros.
5 correct
6 I've always liked people who laugh really loudly.
7 We stayed in a hotel which/that was over 200 years old.
8 correct
9 This is a machine which/that translates words into English.

Unit 79

- 1 1 which 2 who 3 who 4 which 5 which
- 2 1 This is my new car which my parents gave me.
2 This is my friend who helped me with my exam.
3 This is the book which I was reading last week.
4 This is the film which I went to see last night.
5 These are the CDs which I bought online.
6 This is the song which they sang at our wedding.
- 3 1 Would you like to see the photos that I took on my holiday?
3 And this is the couple that we met on the plane. They were great fun.
5 This is one of the hotels that we stayed at. It was really nice.
6 And this is the swimming pool that they had on the roof.
Sentences 2, 4 and 7 cannot omit the relative pronoun.

Unit 80

- 1 1 on 2 at 3 at 4 in 5 in
- 2 1 on 2 to 3 on 4 in 5 in 6 behind 7 in
8 between 9 at 10 At 11 in 12 of
- 3 1 a person who follows a particular team or sport
2 correct
3 a person who works in a school
4 a thing which you use to light a fire
5 correct
6 a person who looks after plants
7 correct
8 correct
9 a machine which prints things from your computer
Sentences 4 and 7 can omit the relative pronoun.
- 4 1 I loved the film we saw last night.
2 My favourite actor was the woman who stole the car.
3 These are the photos I took at the party.
4 This is the photo which won an award.
5 Do you like the CD my brother gave to me?
6 I like the singer who sings in Spanish.
- 5 1 correct
2 She's the woman who sings that song.
3 correct
4 correct

- 5 Put her CD in the player.
6 I think they're arriving at eight.
7 Are you the person who has the big black dog?
8 correct
9 Take the lift and his office is at the top of the building.

10 Sit on between Mike and me and tell us what happened.

- 6 1 top 2 corner 3 middle 4 left 5 next 6 front
- 8 1 swimming pool 2 changing rooms 3 sauna
4 dance studio 5 tennis courts 6 aerobics classes
7 solarium 8 yoga
- 9 1 supporter 2 player 3 teacher 4 lighter 5 writer
6 gardener 7 hairdryer 8 cleaner 9 printer
- 10 1 on 15th March 2 in 1988 3 around 11 p.m.
4 at about 7.30 a.m. 5 at 11.30 p.m.

Tapescript 2.38

Conversation 1

- A: When's your birthday?
B: It's on 15th March.
A: When were you born?
B: In 1988.
A: What time were you born?
B: I'm not sure. At around eleven, I think.
A: In the morning?
B: No, at night.

Conversation 2

- A: When do you usually get up?
B: On weekdays, I get up at about seven thirty, but at the weekend I get up at any time. Whenever I wake up, really.
A: When do you usually go to bed?
B: It depends. During the week I usually go to bed at eleven thirty. In winter I go to bed a bit earlier.

Unit 81

- 1 1 When you heat ice, it melts.
2 If you go into space, you float.
3 When you press this button, the computer starts.
4 If you have a headache, an aspirin helps.
5 When you sneeze, you always close your eyes.
6 If you add two and two, you get four.

- 2 1 e 2 c 3 d 4 a 5 b

Answer key (and tapescript)

3 1 don't sleep 2 get 3 have 4 don't ask 5 I'm not

Unit 82

- 1 1 close it 2 turn it off 3 put it back 4 mend it
5 tidy it up 6 don't use it
- 2 Order: 3, 1, 6, 2, 4, 5
- 3 1 If you need help, ring this bell.
2 If the light is red, don't cross the road.
3 If you'd like to apply for a job, complete this form.
4 If you don't have a security badge, do not enter.
5 If you want a drink, put some money in the slot.
6 If you don't feel better tomorrow, phone a/the doctor.
- 4 1 Unless you hear from me, don't wait.
2 Don't call the police unless it's an emergency.
3 Unless it's important, don't spend time on it.
4 Meet at five unless Rachel changes the time again!

Unit 83

- 1 1 leave, I'll call 2 don't give, I'll tell 3 I'll pay, help
4 phones, I'll say 5 won't pass, don't work
6 go, I'll catch 7 arrive, I'll ask 8 Will they visit, have
9 will Jane do, doesn't hear
- 2 1 If you work hard at school, you'll go to university.
2 You'll catch the bus if you run.
3 If you don't get a job, you won't have any money.
4 The police will stop you if you drive too fast.
5 If you don't tell me the answer, I won't be your best friend.
6 If you give me your email address, I'll send you the attachment.
- 3 1 If you turn left, you'll see the house on the left.
2 But it's a one-way street. If I turn left, the police will stop me.
3 If my plane lands at three, will you pick me up?
4 Sure, but if it's delayed, will you call?
5 I'll send you to your bed if you hit your brother again!
6 I'll stop if he stops hitting me!
7 If you ignore him, he'll leave you alone.
8 If I tell you a secret, will you keep it?
9 Sure. It'll be between you and me.
- 4 1 when 2 If 3 If 4 when 5 If 6 when 7 if 8 If
9 when 10 If

Unit 84

- 1 1 check out before 10 a.m. 2 use / pay with Visa or Mastercard 3 enter 4 use the stairs 5 press 0
- 2 1 have to 2 must 3 might 4 can 5 don't have to 6 might 7 Should 8 have to 9 I'll
- 3 1 If you're late, you should call me.
2 He can come later if you want.
3 If you have to stay another day, that's fine.
4 She can learn French if she uses this computer program.
5 We'll take a break now if you like.
6 The taxi can pick you up if you want.
7 We must meet up for dinner when you come to England.
8 You can stay with Lars if you visit Stockholm.
- 4 1 c 2 f 3 b 4 e 5 d 6 a
- 5 Students' own answers.

Unit 85

- 1 1 go 2 dream 3 rains 4 I'll call 5 I'll stay 6 Don't
7 will give 8 do 9 is 10 don't 11 do 12 will
- 2 1 g 2 h 3 a 4 d 5 c 6 e 7 f 8 b
- 3 1 If 2 When 3 unless 4 When 5 when 6 if
7 unless 8 if
- 4 1 starts 5 I'll have
2 tell 6 won't be
3 comes 7 I'll pick
4 don't tidy 8 wants
- 6 1 around 2 off 3 back 4 up 5 back 6 up
- 7 1 can't answer 2 it's 3 it isn't 4 leave 5 I'll call
6 call 7 if you like 8 could email

Tapescript 2.44

Hello, this is Braxton. Sorry, but I can't answer the phone at the moment. If it's between nine and five, I'm at work. Call me there on 020 7998 1234. If it isn't urgent, leave your name and number and I'll call you back. Or call me on my mobile if you like. That's 0770 879 3345. Or you could email me at braxton51@hotmail.com. Bye!

Unit 86

- 1 1 interested 2 exciting 3 surprised 4 boring
5 tired 6 annoying
- 2 1 interested 2 tired 3 excited 4 frightened
5 embarrassed 6 surprised 7 bored 8 worried
9 annoyed 10 relaxed
- 3 1 worrying 2 boring 3 exciting 4 annoying
5 frightening 6 tiring 7 surprising 8 interesting
9 relaxing 10 embarrassing
- 4 Students' own answers.

Unit 87

- 1 1 feel smoother 2 Look younger 3 smell fresh
4 Sound fluent 5 taste delicious
- 2 1 cool 2 rough 3 awful 4 delicious (or lovely)
5 lovely 6 sad 7 polluted 8 relaxing 9 sweet
10 old
- 3 1 feel 2 look 3 sounds 4 smells 5 taste 6 looks
7 smells 8 tastes 9 sounds 10 feel

Unit 88

- 1 1 large, white, metal 4 ancient, tall, Japanese
2 practical, square, plastic 5 stylish, brown, wooden
3 two, comfortable, red 6 long, yellow, cotton
- 2 1 a new cotton 5 an eighteenth-century French
2 a very fast Korean 6 a huge modern
3 a lovely Russian 7 green plastic
4 old black 8 cool Italian
- 3 Suggested answers:
1 elegant Australian
2 enormous eighteenth-century
3 beautiful diamond
- 4 Students' own answers.

Unit 89

- 1 1 at 2 on 3 of 4 with 5 at 6 with 7 about 8 of
- 2 1 with 2 by 3 of 4 about 5 with 6 at 7 of
8 from 9 to 10 in 11 at 12 about
- 3 1 excited about 2 worried about 3 married to
4 different from 5 good at 6 interested in

- 4 1 I'm really frightened of flying.
2 I'm interested in History.
3 Everyone was surprised by your news.
4 The kids are bored with this TV show.
5 Why are you worried about your new job?
6 Peter is annoyed with Saffron.

- 5 Students' own answers.

Unit 90

- 1 1 bored 2 great 3 annoying 4 tiring 5 frightening
6 worried 7 exciting 8 beautiful 9 married
10 fluent 11 polluted 12 awful 13 interesting
14 delicious 15 surprised
- 2 1 sounds 2 looks 3 smells 4 feel
- 3 1 correct
2 I have a new white fridge for sale.
3 They're keen on golf.
4 correct
5 Emily is really excited about her birthday.
6 Who does that frightening big brown dog belong to?
7 I'm really bad at Maths. Can you help me?
8 correct
9 He looks intelligent.
10 correct
11 correct
12 I was surprised by his new haircut.
13 This is a really annoying romantic film.
14 correct
15 Why are you worried about your results?
- 4 1 interesting, 3 2 interested, 3 3 boring, 2
4 bored, 1 5 exciting, 3 6 excited, 3 7 worrying, 3
8 worried, 2 9 tiring, 2 10 tired, 1 11 annoying, 3
12 annoyed, 2 13 frightening, 3 14 frightened, 2
15 surprising, 3 16 surprised, 2
- 5 size/shape: large, round, small, square
age: ancient, modern, old, young
colour: brown, orange, red, yellow
material: cotton, metal, plastic, wooden
opinion: beautiful, boring, cool, elegant
- 6 1 cooker, c 2 armchair, d 3 table, b 4 vase, e
5 desk, f 6 lamp, a

Answer key (and tapescript)

7

Lisa

Age: 41

Interests: art and painting, nature and the countryside

Dislikes: spiders

Prescott

Age: 56

Marital status: divorced

Likes: fast food

Dislikes: (being alone), sport

Pam

Age: 28

Concerns: global warming, pollution

Tapescript 2.49

Name: Lisa

Age: 41

I'm good at art and very keen on painting. I love nature and the countryside but I'm frightened of spiders. I need a man to protect me.

Name: Prescott

Age: 56

I'm divorced and bored with being alone. I love fast food and I'm bad at sport but I'm loving and caring.

Name: Pam

Age: 28

Are you annoyed with the world? I'm really worried about global warming and tired of pollution. I want to meet someone with similar beliefs. Let's change the world together!

Unit 91

1 1 b 2 a 3 f 4 c 5 e 6 d

- 2** 1 I'm hoping to run the New York marathon.
2 I've decided to study Economics at university.
3 I'm not planning to work immediately after my degree.
4 She refused to talk to me.
5 We agreed not to tell the police.
6 I don't want to work in an office.

3 1 to meet at nine

2 to wear her red dress

3 to study medicine

4 to leave early

5 to take a taxi

6 to have her own TV show one day

7 to come with us tonight

4

- 1 We're planning to go to Greece for our holidays.
- 2 She's agreed not to tell David.
- 3 I hope to move house in September.
- 4 I've agreed to work late on Tuesday.
- 5 The bank refused to lend me the money.
- 6 Carrie's decided not to go to university.
- 7 Would you like to borrow my dictionary?
- 8 I plan to go on a diet.
- 9 We invited them but they refused to come.
- 10 We decided not to go to the cinema.

5 Students' own answers.

Unit 92

- 1** 1 She doesn't like skiing.
2 He likes sunbathing.
3 We don't like camping.
4 She likes surfing.
5 He doesn't like doing homework.
6 They like eating out.

- 2** 1 Smoking 2 Swimming 3 Watching 4 Stealing
5 Being 6 Eating 7 Parking 8 Cleaning
9 Learning 10 Skiing

- 3** 1 learning languages 2 buying a guitar
3 going on a diet 4 getting old 5 flying
6 not phoning

- 4** 1 I don't mind helping you.
2 Do you enjoy playing sports?
3 Swimming is good exercise.
4 They worry about driving at night.
5 Are you good at skiing?
6 They like playing computer games.
7 Sunbathing is bad for your skin.

5 Students' own answers.

Unit 93

- 1** 1 living 2 both 3 to move 4 to go 5 applying
6 both 7 to give 8 playing 9 to have 10 both
11 eating 12 to help

- 2** 1 to sit 2 to drink / drinking 3 trying 4 bringing

- 3** 1 playing / to play tennis
 2 to go tonight
 3 to call her back
 4 painting your picture
 5 listening to that new CD
 6 watching / to watch horror films (to comedy films)

Tapescript 2.56

First, I want to travel around the world. Then, I hope to work for Save the Children. If possible, I'd like to help children in the developing world. One day, I hope to get married. I'd like to have two children. But basically, I just want to be happy.

Unit 94

- 1** 1 to eat 2 writing 3 playing 4 smoking 5 to buy
 6 eating 7 to have 8 to smoke 9 buying 10 having
- 2** 1 Stop smoking 2 Stop eating 3 stop driving
 4 stop taking 5 Stop to spend 6 Stop watching
 7 stop to relax
- 3** 1 to pick 2 working 3 to watch 4 smoking
 5 doing 6 eating 7 watching

Unit 95

- 1** 1 going 2 Snowboarding 3 to try 4 trying
 5 doing 6 coming 7 to help 8 help 9 fixing
 10 agree 11 to be 12 to meet 13 cooking
 14 to change 15 to say 16 to take
- 2** 1 to call 2 find 3 to have 4 meeting 5 preparing
 6 to get 7 to spend
- 3** 1 a 2 both 3 b 4 both 5 b 6 a 7 both
- 4** 1 not to go 2 to talk to 3 to photocopy this
 4 stop smoking 5 to talk 6 at making things
 7 to travel around Europe 8 a lot of coffee
- 6** 1 I'd like to /w/ ask for a pay rise.
 2 He promised to /w/ answer my call.
 3 Do we need to /w/ employ anyone else?
 4 Would you like to /w/ order now?
 5 When do they want to /w/ interview you?
- 7** 1 camping 2 eating out 3 sunbathing 4 skiing
 5 surfing 6 swimming
- 8** 1 stop smoking 2 lose, weight 3 break, leg
 4 take, exercise 5 have, headache 6 feel, sick
 7 get better
- 9** 1 travel 2 work 3 help children 4 marry
 5 have children 6 be happy

Unit 96

- 1** 1 Tell him to phone me.
 2 Ask her to come to my office.
 3 Tell them to be here at six.
 4 Ask him to send me a copy.
 5 Tell them to give you the money.
 6 Tell her to come and see me.
 7 Ask Michelle to photocopy this.
 8 Tell the driver to stop at the station.
- 2** 1 He, her 2 We, them 3 I, him, us
 4 They, me, them 5 She, us, her 6 He, me, them
 7 you, me 8 she, him
- 3** There are a few things I need you to do.
 First of all, Jack Greer from our New York office
 is going to visit you in September. He'd like you to
 book him a room in the Park Plaza for the night of
 the 27th.
 Also, he wants you to organise meetings with all the
 people in your team for him.
 Secondly, Marta Castro needs you to send her copies
 of the January reports.
 Lastly, Paul McCann doesn't answer my emails or
 answer my phone calls. Can you ask him to call me
 as soon as possible. Tell him to use my mobile
 (8796 543 643).
- 4** 1 I'd like you to photocopy this report.
 2 The boss wants Mike to send a copy of the letter
 to him.
 3 Please ask your secretary to book the hotel room
 now.
 4 Tell Jerry to meet us at the café on the corner.
 5 I'd like you to bring me another steak.

Unit 97

- 1** 1 b 2 a 3 f 4 e 5 g 6 c 7 h 8 d

Answer key (and tapescript)

- 2** Isn't it time for a break? Join us on a cruise of the Mediterranean sea to visit some of the most famous sites in the world.

DAY ONE: Fly to Venice to meet the cruise liner *The Golden Angel*.

DAY TWO: Before we leave you'll have a few hours to buy souvenirs from one of Italy's most famous cities. Then at midday, we leave for Athens. In the evening you can sit on the deck to enjoy the sunset and the live entertainment.

DAY THREE: We arrive at the port of Piraeus to take a tour of the city. We'll walk into town to see the Acropolis and try some wonderful Greek food.

- 3** 1 She's cycling to get to school.
2 He's at the market to buy some fish.
3 He's waiting to catch a bus.
4 You press this button to take a photograph.
5 They went to the zoo to see the elephant.
6 They flew into space in 1969 to land on the moon.
- 4** Students' own answers.

Unit 98

- 1** 1 are 2 are 3 is 4 are 5 is 6 are
2 1 are grown 2 is picked 3 is taken 4 are dried
5 isn't drunk 6 is used
3 1 What is this machine used for?
2 How is this computer switched on?
3 What is made with flour?
4 How often are these rooms cleaned?
5 Where are coffee beans grown?
6 When is the post delivered?
7 How is this word pronounced?
8 How much is known about dinosaurs?

Unit 99

- 1** 1 was discovered 2 grew 3 was eaten 4 arrived
5 was grown 6 became
2 1 was written 2 wasn't published 3 was chosen
4 wrote 5 used 6 were changed 7 said 8 changed
9 was bought
3 1 was, written 2 was, invented 3 was, paid
4 were, spoken 5 was, climbed 6 was, discovered
7 was, flown 8 were, held 9 were, used
10 was, invented

- 4** 1 b 2 b 3 a 4 a 5 a

Unit 100

- 1** 1 wants 2 Tell 3 to 4 need 5 go 6 something
7 To 8 you
- 2** 1 are burnt 2 is, celebrated 3 is served
4 was called 5 was born 6 was joined 7 is spoken
- 3** Students' own answers.
- 4** 1 The Eiffel Tower was built in 1889.
2 Pasta is made with flour and eggs.
3 How is cotton grown?
4 A message was left on your desk.
5 When was the letter sent?
6 Spanish isn't spoken by Brazilians.
7 I am paid £500 a week.
8 Packages are delivered all over the world.
9 The weather was bad but our plane wasn't delayed.
- 5** 1 Tell her to give me a call.
2 We're going to the theatre to watch a play.
3 I need you to copy this report.
4 Do you want him to send me an email?
5 They would like to meet us at the station.
6 How many of these do you want to buy from us?
7 Is Angie there? Tell her to come and see me straight away.
8 Water is heated to 100 degrees.
9 How many different languages are taught in your school?
10 This building was designed by a famous architect in 1999.
11 A famous architect designed this city.
12 No one knows when the wheel was invented.
- 6** /əʊ/ no: grown, told, drove
/e/ met: read, left, said
/eɪ/ say: paid, made
/ɔ:/ or: brought, worn, taught
/ɪ/ it: lit, built
- 7** 1 photocopy 2 send 3 book 4 meet 5 take
- 8** 1 1957 2 *Time* magazine 3 three weeks 4 his life
5 \$2.4 million

Tapescript 2.62

On the Road was written in 1951 but it wasn't published until 1957. In 2005, it was chosen by *Time* magazine as one of the best 100 English-language novels of the last century.

Jack Kerouac wrote the book in only three weeks but he used notes and diaries from seven years of travel across the USA. Often the names of real people and places were changed. Many poets, writers and musicians said the book was important to them. Bob Dylan said: 'It changed my life.'

In 2001, the original text was bought for \$2.4 million.

Progress test 1

1a 2c 3b 4c 5b 6a 7c 8b 9a 10c 11b 12b
13c 14b 15c 16a 17b 18b 19b 20a 21a 22c
23c 24b 25c 26c 27a 28b 29c 30b 31c 32b
33b 34c 35b 36b 37b 38c 39b 40a 41a 42c
43b 44c 45c 46a 47a 48b 49b 50a

Progress test 2

1b 2a 3b 4c 5a 6c 7a 8c 9b 10c 11a 12b
13a 14a 15a 16a 17c 18a 19a 20c 21c 22c
23a 24b 25c 26a 27c 28b 29a 30b 31b 32b
33b 34c 35a 36b 37a 38a 39b 40c 41a 42c
43a 44a 45b 46c 47b 48b 49b 50a

Progress test 3

1b 2a 3a 4b 5a 6c 7c 8b 9b 10a 11b 12a
13a 14b 15c 16a 17b 18b 19b 20a 21b 22a
23b 24c 25b 26c 27c 28c 29b 30a 31b 32b
33c 34b 35b 36c 37a 38c 39c 40a 41b 42a
43b 44c 45b 46c 47b 48b 49b 50c

Progress test 4

1a 2c 3a 4c 5b 6b 7c 8c 9a 10b 11a 12b
13a 14a 15b 16c 17c 18a 19a 20b 21b 22a
23b 24c 25a 26a 27b 28b 29a 30b 31b 32b
33c 34b 35b 36c 37a 38b 39a 40a 41a 42b
43b 44b 45c 46c 47b 48b 49a 50b

Progress test 5

1a 2b 3c 4b 5a 6a 7a 8c 9b 10c 11c 12a
13c 14b 15a 16b 17b 18a 19c 20c 21b 22b
23c 24c 25a 26a 27b 28a 29b 30b 31b 32a
33a 34b 35b 36a 37b 38b 39a 40b 41a 42c
43c 44a 45c 46c 47b 48c 49a 50b

Progress test 6

1a 2c 3a 4a 5c 6c 7b 8c 9b 10a 11a 12b
13a 14c 15b 16b 17b 18a 19b 20a 21c 22c
23c 24c 25b 26a 27c 28a 29a 30b 31a 32b
33b 34b 35a 36a 37b 38c 39c 40a 41c 42c
43b 44a 45b 46c 47b 48a 49a 50c

Progress test 7

1c 2a 3c 4b 5c 6a 7b 8b 9a 10a 11a 12c
13c 14a 15c 16c 17b 18a 19c 20b 21b 22c
23a 24b 25c 26a 27b 28b 29c 30c 31c 32b
33a 34c 35a 36c 37a 38c 39a 40c 41b 42b
43b 44a 45a 46c 47c 48a 49b 50b

Progress test 8

1a 2c 3c 4b 5a 6a 7b 8b 9b 10a 11c 12c
13c 14a 15b 16a 17a 18b 19c 20c 21b 22a
23c 24a 25c 26a 27a 28b 29a 30a 31c 32b
33a 34c 35b 36b 37b 38c 39a 40b 41b 42a
43a 44b 45b 46b 47c 48b 49b 50a

Progress test 9

1a 2b 3a 4a 5b 6a 7c 8c 9b 10a 11b 12b
13a 14a 15c 16a 17c 18a 19b 20c 21b 22a
23c 24b 25a 26a 27b 28b 29b 30b 31a 32a
33a 34b 35b 36c 37b 38c 39a 40a 41c 42a
43c 44c 45b 46a 47a 48c 49c 50c

Progress test 10

1b 2b 3a 4b 5c 6c 7c 8b 9b 10c 11c 12c
13c 14b 15c 16b 17b 18c 19b 20c 21c 22a
23b 24a 25b 26b 27c 28b 29a 30b 31c 32a
33c 34a 35a 36b 37b 38b 39a 40a 41a 42a
43b 44c 45a 46c 47b 48a 49b 50a

Appendix 2

- 1** 1 cats 2 addresses 3 cars 4 potatoes 5 apples
6 dresses 7 babies 8 people
- 2** 1 goes 2 drives 3 buys 4 tries 5 pushes
6 marries 7 teaches 8 plays
- 3** 1 stopped 2 hotter 3 happiest 4 moving
5 swimming 6 danced 7 biggest 8 planning

Appendix 4

- 1** 1 travels 2 work 3 don't open 4're doing 5 isn't
eating 6 is singing 7 are they living 8 has gone
9 haven't been 10've finished 11 played 12 won
13 did you move 14 was watching 15 were you
- 2** 1 won't 2 can 3'd 4 should 5 mustn't 6 Would
7 shouldn't 8 could

Index

Note: The numbers in this index are page numbers. Key vocabulary is in *italic*.

a/an (indefinite article) 142–143

and **the** 146–147

+ occupation 14–15

or no article 18–19, 148–149

or *some/any* 28–29

ability 52–53, 86–87

adjectives 18–19, 34–35, 62–63, 66–67, 106–107,

156–157, 184–185, 186–187

after sense verbs 184–185

comparatives 62–63

-ed adjectives 182–183

-ing adjectives 182–183

order 186–187

possessive 34–35, 38–39

with prepositions 188–189

superlatives 64–65

adverbs 68–69

comparative 68–69

of frequency 46–47

just, already, yet 114–115

of manner 52–53

advice (**should/shouldn't**) 106–107

after 126–127

the agent 208–209

all 132–133

already 114–115

am, is, are 12–13

+ adjective 18–19

and 42–43, 126–127

animals 64–65

any 28–29

anybody 134–135

anyone 134–135

anything 134–135

anywhere 134–135

appearance 32–33

are 12–13

+ adjective 18–19

at

preposition of place 164–165

preposition of time 162–163

at the bottom 164–165

at the corner 164–165

at the top 164–165

background events 122–123

to be 12–13

negative 14–15

questions 16–17

because 126–127

been 118–119

before 126–127

behind 24–25, 26–27, 164–165

between 26–27, 164–165

both 136–137

but 42–43, 126–127

by (agent) 208–209

can

ability 52–53

offers and requests 54–55

ceremonies 206–207

clothes and accessories 36–37, 104–105

collocations 94–95, 168–169

colours 36–37

comparative adjectives 62–63

comparative adverbs 68–69

conjunctions 42–43, 126–127

could

past ability 86–87

polite requests 88–89

countable and uncountable nouns 28–29, 138–139

customs 206–207

daily events 112–113

dates 162–163

days of the week 46–47

days, special 82–83

definite article (**the**) 22–23, 144–145

and **a/an** 146–147

or no article 148–149

demonstrative pronouns (**this, that, these, those**) 36–37

did/didn't

negative 96–97

questions 96–97

directions 58–59

do/does 44–45

don't/doesn't 44–45

-ed adjectives 182–183
education 78–79, 108–109
either 136–137
ever 118–119
everybody 134–135
everyday objects 22–23, 34–35
everyone 134–135
everything 134–135
everywhere 134–135

feels 184–185
first conditional 176–177
food and drink 28–29, 56–57, 156–157
for 116–117
furniture 24–25, 186–187
future 158–159
 going to 78–79, 158–159
 present continuous 158–159
 will 152–153, 158–159

going to
future 78–79, 158–159
and **will** (for decisions) 156–157
and **will** (for predictions) 158–159
gone 118–119

had to / didn't have to 108–109
have 42–43
have got 32–33
have got to 104–105
have to / don't have to 104–105
Have you ever ...? 118–119
health 198–199
home 24–25, 124–125, 186–187
in a hotel 26–27
housework 114–115
How long? 116–117

if
+ present simple, imperative 174–175
+ present simple, modal verb 178–179
+ present simple, present simple 172–173
+ present simple, **will** 176–177
illness 32–33, 198–199
imperative 58–59, 174–175

in
preposition of place 22–23, 164–165
preposition of time 162–163

in front of 24–25, 26–27, 164–165
in the corner 24–25, 164–165
in the middle 24–25, 164–165
indefinite article (*a/an*) 142–143
 and **the** 146–147
 + occupation 14–15
 or no article 18–19, 148–149
to-infinitive (for hopes, intentions and decisions) 192–193
infinitive of purpose 204–205
-ing adjectives 182–183
instructions 58–59
intentions 192–193
is 12–13
 + adjective 18–19
Is there ...? 26–27

just 114–115

learning a language 132–133
leisure 46–47, 164–165, 194–195
life events 96–97, 114–115, 116–117
likes and preferences 44–45
location 84–85
looks 184–185
a lot 138–139

many 138–139
modal verbs 52–53, 86–87, 102–103, 104–105, 106–107,
 108–109, 178–179
months 162–163
most 132–133
much 138–139
music 52–53
must/mustn't 102–103, 104–105

negative
to be 14–15
didn't 96–97
doesn't/don't 44–45
neither 136–137
never 118–119
next to 22–23, 164–165

Index

- no one** 134–135
nobody 134–135
none 126–127
not any 134–135
nothing 134–135
nouns
 countable and uncountable 28–29, 138–139
 ending in **-er** 166–167
 plurals 14–15
 verb + **-ing** 194–195
nowhere 134–135
- object pronouns 44–45
object questions 98–99
obligation
 have got to 104–105
 have to 104–105
 must/mustn't 102–103, 104–105
 past (**had to / didn't have to**) 108–109
occupations 14–15, 42–43, 86–87, 142–143
offers
 can 54–55
 imperative 58–59
 polite 88–89
 will 154–155
 would like + noun 56–57
office tasks 202–203
on
 preposition of place 22–23, 26–27, 164–165
 preposition of time 162–163
on the left 164–165
on the right 164–165
one (the pronoun) 36–37
opposite 26–27, 164–165
or 126–127
order of adjectives 186–187
orders 58–59
- the passive
 past simple 208–209
 present simple 206–207
past continuous 122–123
 and past simple 124–125
past participle 112–113, 235
- past simple
 irregular verbs 94–95, 235
 negative 96–97
 passive 208–209
 and past continuous 124–125
 and present perfect 118–119
 questions 96–97, 98–99
 regular verbs 92–93
 used to 128–129
 was/were 82–83
people in your life 34–35, 44–45, 96–97
personal details 12–13, 14–15
phrasal verbs 174–175, 178–179
place prepositions 22–23, 24–25, 26–27, 164–165
places in town 26–27, 58–59, 84–85
places to visit 126–127, 144–145
plurals 14–15
possessions 32–33
possessive adjectives 34–35, 38–39
possessive pronouns 38–39
possessive's 38–39
predictions (**will**) 152–153, 158–159
predictions (**going to**) 158–159
prepositions
 after adjectives 188–189
 of place 22–23, 24–25, 26–27, 164–165
 of time 162–163
present continuous 72–73
 for future arrangements 76–77, 158–159
 and present simple 74–75
present perfect 112–113
 been and **gone** 118–119
 + **for, since** 116–117
 + **just, already, yet** 114–115
 Have you ever ...? 118–119
 and past simple 118–119
present simple 42–43, 44–45
 passive 206–207
 and present continuous 74–75
prohibition (**mustn't**) 102–103
promises (**will**) 154–155
the pronoun **one** 36–37

-
- pronouns
demonstrative 36–37
object pronouns 44–45
possessive pronouns 38–39
relative pronouns 166–167, 168–169
subject pronouns 44–45
- punctuation 232
- questions
to be 16–17
did 96–97
do/does 44–45
Have you ever ...? 118–119
object questions 98–99
past simple 96–97, 98–99
short answers 16–17
subject questions 98–99
Wh- questions 48–49
Yes/No 16–17
How long ...? 116–117
- relative clauses 168–169
- relative pronouns 166–167
to combine sentences 168–169
- requests
can 54–55
imperative 58–59
polite 88–89
will 154–155
would like + noun 56–57
- in a restaurant* 56–57
- rooms* 24–25, 124–125
- 's** (possessive) 38–39
- seasons* 162–163
- sense verb + adjective 184–185
- should/shouldn't** 106–107
- since** 116–117
- smells** 184–185
- so** 126–127
- some** 28–29, 132–133
- somebody** 134–135
- someone** 134–135
- something** 134–135
- somewhere** 134–135
- sounds** 184–185
- special days* 82–83
- spelling rules
comparatives 62–63
verbs 42–43, 72–73, 74–75, 92–93
- sport* 46–47, 164–165, 194–195
- state verbs 74–75
- stop** + **to**-infinitive 198–199
- stop** + **-ing** 198–199
- subject pronouns 44–45
- subject questions 98–99
- suddenly** 124–125
- superlative adjectives 64–65
- tastes** 184–185
- than** 62–63
- that** 36–37, 166–167, 168–169
- the** (definite article) 22–23, 144–145
and **a/an** 146–147
or no article 148–149
+ superlative adjectives 64–65
- There is/are ...** 24–25
+ **some/any** 28–29
- There was/were** 84–85
- these** 36–37
- this** 36–37
- those** 36–37
- time
prepositions 162–163
references 76–77, 82–83, 92–93
telling the time 16–17
- to**-infinitive (for hopes, intentions and decisions) 192–193
- in town* 26–27, 58–59
- traditions* 82–83, 206–207
- travel* 126–127, 148–149
- uncountable nouns 28–29, 138–139
- under** 22–23, 164–165
- unless** + present simple, imperative 174–175
- used to** 128–129
- verb phrases* 176–177
- verbs 42–43, 54–55, 72–73, 74–75, 88–89
+ **-ing** as noun 194–195
+ **-ing** or + **to**-infinitive 196–197, 198–199
+ object + **to**-infinitive 202–203
+ **to**-infinitive (for hopes, intentions and decisions) 192–193

Index

irregular verbs 94–95, 235
modal verbs 52–53, 86–87, 102–103, 104–105,
 106–107, 108–109, 178–179
offers and requests 54–55, 56–57, 88–89, 154–155
phrasal verbs 174–175, 178–179
regular verbs 92–93
sense verbs 184–185
spelling rules 42–43, 72–73, 74–75, 92–93, 233–234
state verbs 74–75
travel 126–127

was/were 82–83

Wh- questions 48–49

when 124–125, 126–127

 + present simple, present simple 172–173
 + present simple, **will** 176–177

Where is/are ...? 22–23

which 166–167, 168–169

while 124–125, 126–127

who 166–167, 168–169

whose 38–39

will

 for future 152–153, 158–159
 and **going to** (for decisions) 156–157
 and **going to** (for predictions) 158–159

 offers 154–155

 predictions 152–153, 158–159

 promises 154–155

 requests 154–155

work 104–105, 202–203

the world 144–145

would like + noun 56–57

Would you like ...? 88–89

Yes/No questions 16–17

yet 114–115

zero conditional 172–173

Photo credits

The publishers would like to thank the following sources for permission to reproduce their copyright protected photographs:

Cover image: Shutterstock Inc.

pp 12a (Shutterstock Inc.), 12b (Shutterstock Inc.), 12c-g (Shutterstock Inc.), 15a (Shutterstock Inc.), 15b (Shutterstock Inc.), 15c (Shutterstock Inc.), 15d (Shutterstock Inc.), 15e (Debra James/ Shutterstock Inc.), 18 (Shutterstock Inc.), 32 (Daniel Rodriguez/ iStockphoto.com), 33t (Getty Images), 33b (Stephane Reix/For Picture/Corbis), 34 (Najlah Feanny/ Corbis), 38 (Shutterstock Inc.), 39a (iStockphoto.com), 39b (iStockphoto.com), 39c (Matteo De Stefano / iStockphoto.com), 39d (iStockphoto.com), 39e (iStockphoto.com), 39f (iStockphoto.com), 39g (Sandor Kelemen/ iStockphoto.com), 39h (iStockphoto.com), 39i (iStockphoto.com), 42 (Tom Merton/ Getty Images), 43 (Bob Daemmrich/ PhotoEdit Inc.), 49a (Jan Will/ iStockphoto.com), 49b (David Ciemny/ iStockphoto.com), 49c (Chiya Li/ iStockphoto.com), 49d (Shutterstock Inc.), 50l (Angelika Schwarz/ iStockphoto.com), 50r (Franck Camhi/ iStockphoto.com), 59b (Shutterstock Inc.), 59c (Shutterstock Inc.), 59d (Shutterstock Inc.), 59e (Wendy Kaveney Photography/Shutterstock Inc.), 59f (Corstiaan Elzelingen, Van/ iStockphoto.com), 59g (Shutterstock Inc.), 64l (Paul Banton/ iStockphoto.com), 64c (Bruce Block/ iStockphoto.com), 64r (Mike Johnson/ Marine Natural History Photography/ earthwindow.com), 70a (Mark Evans/ iStockphoto.com), 70b (iStockphoto.com), 70c (Jacob Wackerhausen/ iStockphoto.com), 70d (Jure Porenta/ iStockphoto.com), 74l (Shutterstock Inc.), 74r (Shutterstock Inc.), 76l (MonkeyBusiness Images/ Shutterstock Inc.), 76c (DaSilva/ Shutterstock Inc.), 76r (iStockphoto.com), 77 (iStockphoto.com), 83l (Jordan Chesbrough/ iStockphoto.com), 83r (Shutterstock Inc.), 86t (iStockphoto.com), 86c (Hulton Archive/Getty Images), 86b (Time & Life Pictures/Getty Images), 87t (Landov/ DPA), 87c (Hulton Archive/ Getty Images), 87b (Michael Ochs Archives/ Getty Images), 88l (Amanda Rohde/ iStockphoto.com), 88r (Ned Frisk/ Corbis), 90tl (Bettmann/ Corbis), 90cl (Lebrecht Music and Arts Photo Library / Alamy), 90bl (WireImages/ Getty Images), 90tr (Time & Life Pictures/Getty Images), 90cr (Hulton Archive/Getty Images), 90br (Mary Evans Picture Library/ Alamy), 92 (iStockphoto.com), 93 (Shutterstock Inc.), 94 (Shutterstock Inc.), 95 (W H Chow/ Shutterstock Inc.), 96l (Shutterstock Inc.), 96r (Geoffrey Hammond/ iStockphoto), 98t (iStockphoto.com), 98b (Andy Green/ iStockphoto.com), 101 (W H Chow/ Shutterstock Inc.), 106l (Andrew Johnson/ iStockphoto.com), 106c (iStockphoto.com), 106r (Matjaz Boncina/ iStockphoto.com), 107a (Jacom Stephens/ iStockphoto.com), 107b (Andrey Armyagov/ iStockphoto.com), 107c (iStockphoto.com), 107d (iStockphoto.com), 107e (Kateryna Govorushchenko/ iStockphoto.com), 107f (Daniel Kourey/ iStockphoto.com), 115t (Shutterstock Inc.), 115b (Deborah Cheramie/ iStockphoto.com), 116 (iStockphoto.com), 117l (Shutterstock Inc.), 117r (Shutterstock Inc.), 118l (Shutterstock Inc.), 118c (Jon Helgason/ iStockphoto.com), 118r (Spencer Rowell/ Taxi/ Getty Images), 119tl (Neale Cousland/ Shutterstock Inc.), 119tr (Vibrant Image Studio/ Shutterstock Inc.), 119cl (Ruaridh Stewart/ZUMA/ Corbis), 119cr (Olga Mirenska/ iStockphoto.com), 119bl (Ashley Cooper / Alamy), 119br (MGM/UNITED ARTISTS/SONY / THE KOBAL COLLECTION), 121 (Deborah Cheramie/ iStockphoto.com), 123b (Lori Martin/ Texasescapes.com), 126 (iStockphoto.com), 131l (Shutterstock Inc.), 131r (Shutterstock Inc.), 136c (Valery Potapova/ Shutterstock Inc.), 136d (Liv frisia-larsen/ Shutterstock Inc.), 137t (Shutterstock Inc.), 137b (Shutterstock Inc.), 138a (GettyImages), 138b (iStockphoto.com), 138c (iStockphoto.com), 138d (iStockphoto.com), 143 (Wire images/ GettyImages), 144a (Christian Miller/ iStockphoto.com), 144b (S. Greg Panosian/ iStockphoto.com), 144c (Hiroya Minakuchi/ Minden Pictures/FLPA), 145a (Eric Isselée/ iStockphoto.com), 145b (Popperfoto/Getty Images), 145c (Anderm/

Shutterstock Inc.), 145d (Peter Guttmann/ Corbis), 145e (Adrian Beesley/ iStockphoto.com), 145f (Bettmann/ Corbis), 148a (Shutterstock Inc.), 148b (Shutterstock Inc.), 148c (Shutterstock Inc.), 149t (Shutterstock Inc.), 149b (Shutterstock Inc.), 150t (The Stocktrek Corp/Brand X/ Corbis), 150b (Sergei Ilnitsky/EPA/Corbis), 155 (Ben Blankenburg/ iStockphoto), 161a (Illustrations/ Shutterstock Inc.), 161b (Illustrations/ Shutterstock Inc.), 161c (Illustrations/ Shutterstock Inc.), 161d (Illustrations/ Shutterstock Inc.), 161e (Illustrations/ Shutterstock Inc.), 161f (Illustrations/ Shutterstock Inc.), 161g (Illustrations/ Shutterstock Inc.), 161h (Illustrations/ Shutterstock Inc.), 169t (Guillermo Lobo/ iStockphoto.com), 169b (Patricia Hofmeester/ iStockphoto.com), 180 (Kelly Cline/ iStockphoto.com), 181 (iStockphoto.com), 182l (iStockphoto.com), 182c (iStockphoto.com), 182r (iStockphoto.com), 184d (iStockphoto.com), 184e (Ekaterina Solovieva/ iStockphoto.com), 184f (Dmitriy Melnikov/ iStockphoto.com), 184g (Jeremy Edwards/ iStockphoto.com), 184h (Elena Elisseeva/ iStockphoto.com), 185a (Shutterstock Inc.), 185b (iStockphoto.com), 185c (Shutterstock Inc.), 185d (Izabela Habur/ iStockphoto.com), 185e (George Manga/ iStockphoto.com), 185f (Pang Chee Seng Philip/ Shutterstock Inc.), 185g (Shutterstock Inc.), 185h (Shutterstock Inc.), 185i (Monkey Business Images/ iStockphoto.com), 185j (iStockphoto.com), 186a (R. Gino Santa Maria/ Shutterstock Inc.), 186b (Balaikin/ Shutterstock Inc.), 186c (Tyler Boyes/ Shutterstock Inc.), 186d (Brett Mulcahy/ Shutterstock Inc.), 187t (Shutterstock Inc.), 187c (Shutterstock Inc.), 187b (Shutterstock Inc.), 188a (iStockphoto.com), 188b (iStockphoto.com), 188c (iStockphoto.com), 188d (iStockphoto.com), 188e (iStockphoto.com), 191g (iStockphoto.com), 191h (iStockphoto.com), 191i (iStockphoto.com), 192 (Stephanie Sinclair/ Corbis), 193 (Steve Broer/ Shutterstock), 194a (iStockphoto.com), 205 (Shutterstock Inc.), 209 (Permission granted by Penguin UK), 211 (Permission granted by Penguin UK)

Illustrations by artists at KJA-artists.com:

Adrian@KJA-artists.com: pp 13, 26tr, 26tl, 27tl, 27c, 30, 57, 91, 114a, 114b, 114c, 139, 153, 157, 161i, 164a, 175, 194, 204; Andrew@KJA-artists.com: pp 16, 19f, 37a-f, 46, 48, 52, 66, 72, 73, 112, 129, 134, 146, 155, 166a, 166b, 166c, 200; Debbie@KJA-artists.com: pp 44; Inge-Marie@KJA-artists.com: pp 97, 140; Kath@KJA-artists.com: pp 14, 22a, 40, 41, 102t, 102b, 107g, 111, 113, 114d, 14e, 114f, 114g, 156, 158, 168, 176, 190, 196, 197; Peter@KJA-artists.com: pp 25br, 28tl, 29t, 29b, 36a, 36b, 54, 68, 78, 110, 136a, 136b, 152, 154, 198, 199; Sean@KJA-artists.com: pp 19a-e, 24tr, 25cl, 25cr, 35, 36i-m, 37g-i, 56, 62, 80, 109, 122, 124, 128, 142, 162, 165, 183, 184, 202, 206

Illustrations by Kathrin Jacobsen: pp 20, 22b-f, 23, 24b, 26c, 31, 36c-h, 47, 53, 59a, 63, 75, 81, 84, 85, 108, 123c, 127, 130t, 130b, 159, 164b, 164c, 164d, 164e, 164f, 164g, 164h, 164i, 164j, 164k, 164l, 164m, 164n, 164o, 164p, 164q, 166d, 166e, 166f, 166g, 166h, 166i, 166j, 166k, 178, 191a, 191b, 191c, 191d, 191e, 191f, 205, 207

Designs by Mark Slader, Echelon Design: pp 7, 11, 39, 49, 58, 64, 70, 77, 78, 82, 86, 87, 92, 104, 106, 107, 108, 122, 124, 132, 133, 138, 144, 145, 152, 162, 174, 178, 180, 182, 184d-h, 186, 188, 192, 199, 206, 208

CD track list

CD 1

Unit and Exercise	Track	Unit and Exercise	Track	Unit and Exercise	Track
Unit 1, Ex 4	1.02	Unit 17, Ex 5	1.22	Unit 34, Ex 4	1.42
Unit 3, Ex 4	1.03	Unit 18, Ex 4	1.23	Unit 35, Review, Ex 6	1.43
Unit 4, Ex 2	1.04	Unit 19, Ex 4	1.24	Unit 35, Review, Ex 10	1.44
Unit 5, Review, Ex 6	1.05	Unit 20, Review, Ex 7	1.25	Unit 36, Ex 3	1.45
Unit 5, Review, Ex 10	1.06	Unit 20, Review, Ex 11	1.26	Unit 38, Ex 2	1.46
Unit 6, Ex 3	1.07	Unit 21, Ex 4	1.27	Unit 39, Ex 1	1.47
Unit 7, Ex 3	1.08	Unit 22, Ex 2	1.28	Unit 40, Review, Ex 5	1.48
Unit 8, Ex 3	1.09	Unit 23, Ex 1	1.29	Unit 40, Review, Ex 9	1.49
Unit 9, Ex 1	1.10	Unit 23, Ex 3	1.30	Unit 41, Ex 4	1.50
Unit 10, Review, Ex 5	1.11	Unit 24, Ex 1	1.31	Unit 42, Ex 3	1.51
Unit 10, Review, Ex 9	1.12	Unit 25, Review, Ex 6	1.32	Unit 43, Ex 3	1.52
Unit 11, Ex 3	1.13	Unit 25, Review, Ex 9	1.33	Unit 44, Ex 4	1.53
Unit 11, Ex 5	1.14	Unit 27, Ex 2	1.34	Unit 45, Review, Ex 7	1.54
Unit 12, Ex 3	1.15	Unit 28, Ex 2	1.35	Unit 45, Review, Ex 8	1.55
Unit 13, Ex 4	1.16	Unit 29, Ex 4	1.36	Unit 46, Ex 3	1.56
Unit 14, Ex 1	1.17	Unit 30, Review, Ex 5	1.37	Unit 47, Ex 2	1.57
Unit 15, Review, Ex 6	1.18	Unit 30, Review, Ex 9	1.38	Unit 48, Ex 3	1.58
Unit 15, Review, Ex 10	1.19	Unit 31, Ex 3	1.39	Unit 49, Ex 3	1.59
Unit 16, Ex 3	1.20	Unit 32, Ex 3	1.40	Unit 50, Review, Ex 5	1.60
Unit 17, Ex 3	1.21	Unit 33, Ex 1	1.41	Unit 50, Review, Ex 8	1.61

CD 2

Unit and Exercise	Track	Unit and Exercise	Track	Unit and Exercise	Track
Unit 51, Ex 4	2.02	Unit 69, Ex 4	2.23	Unit 85, Review, Ex 7	2.44
Unit 52, Ex 5	2.03	Unit 70, Review, Ex 3	2.24	Unit 86, Ex 1	2.45
Unit 53, Ex 3	2.04	Unit 70, Review, Ex 7	2.25	Unit 87, Ex 3	2.46
Unit 54, Ex 4	2.05	Unit 71, Ex 4	2.26	Unit 89, Ex 1	2.47
Unit 55, Review, Ex 6	2.06	Unit 71, Ex 5	2.27	Unit 90, Review, Ex 4	2.48
Unit 55, Review, Ex 9	2.07	Unit 72, Ex 4	2.28	Unit 90, Review, Ex 7	2.49
Unit 56, Ex 3	2.08	Unit 73, Ex 4	2.29	Unit 91, Ex 1	2.50
Unit 57, Ex 2	2.09	Unit 74, Ex 2	2.30	Unit 92, Ex 3	2.51
Unit 58, Ex 2	2.10	Unit 75, Review, Ex 5	2.31	Unit 93, Ex 2	2.52
Unit 59, Ex 2	2.11	Unit 75, Review, Ex 8	2.32	Unit 94, Ex 3	2.53
Unit 60, Review, Ex 5	2.12	Unit 76, Ex 4	2.33	Unit 95, Review, Ex 5	2.54
Unit 60, Review, Ex 8	2.13	Unit 77, Ex 3	2.34	Unit 95, Review, Ex 6	2.55
Unit 61, Ex 3	2.14	Unit 78, Ex 3	2.35	Unit 95, Review, Ex 9	2.56
Unit 62, Ex 4	2.15	Unit 80, Review, Ex 6	2.36	Unit 96, Ex 4	2.57
Unit 63, Ex 3	2.16	Unit 80, Review, Ex 7	2.37	Unit 97, Ex 1	2.58
Unit 64, Ex 2	2.17	Unit 80, Review, Ex 10	2.38	Unit 98, Ex 2	2.59
Unit 65, Review, Ex 7	2.18	Unit 81, Ex 3	2.39	Unit 99, Ex 2	2.60
Unit 65, Review, Ex 9	2.19	Unit 82, Ex 2	2.40	Unit 100, Ex 6	2.61
Unit 66, Ex 2	2.20	Unit 83, Ex 3	2.41	Unit 100, Ex 8	2.62
Unit 67, Ex 2	2.21	Unit 84, Ex 4	2.42		
Unit 68, Ex 3	2.22	Unit 85, Review, Ex 5	2.43		

Practical Grammar is a three-level British English Grammar course for self study or use in the classroom. The series takes students through key aspects of English grammar from Elementary to Upper Intermediate levels.

Levels	General descriptors	CEFR	Cambridge ESOL exams
Level 1	Elementary to Pre-intermediate	A1-A2	KET
Level 2	Low Intermediate to Intermediate	A2-B1	PET
Level 3	Intermediate to Upper Intermediate	B1-B2	FCE

Organisation of *Practical Grammar*

Each level of *Practical Grammar* has 100 units, divided into modules of five units. Each module examines a particular area of grammar. The grammar is set in short, everyday conversations or texts, showing the language in natural situations which students will find engaging and can relate to.

Students then examine the form, meaning and use of the language before practising it in a variety of activity types. A Review section concludes each module and regular tests check students' progress.

Each level comes with two audio CDs and a pin code which allows access to *MyPG* for extensive additional online practice for use at home or in self-access centres.

Key features

Real language in natural situations: exposes students to grammar at work

[See page 72](#)

Listening and pronunciation: two audio CDs provide listen and check support and key pronunciation of the grammar items

[See page 91](#)

Key vocabulary: high frequency words and expressions in each unit

[See page 24](#)

Tips: highlight common errors and characteristics of English Grammar

[See page 56](#)

Regular review and progress tests: give students the opportunity to check their learning

[See page 20 for a review](#)

[See page 230 for a progress test](#)

Each level of *Practical Grammar* is available in two editions: with or without answers.

Level 1 with answers ISBN 978-1-4240-1808-6

Level 1 without answers ISBN 978-1-4240-1677-8

Level 2 with answers ISBN 978-1-4240-1805-5

Level 2 without answers ISBN 978-1-4240-1804-8

Level 3 with answers ISBN 978-1-4240-1807-9

Level 3 without answers ISBN 978-1-4240-1806-2



ISBN-10 1-4240-1677-0
ISBN-13 978-1-4240-1677-8



9 781424 016778 >